This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Class Books for Colleges and Schools

PUBLISHED BY

MACMILLAN AND CO.

MR. AIRY'S (Astronomer Royal) MATHEMATICAL TRACTS. FOURTH EDITION. 15*s.*

PROFESSOR BOOLE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. [*Nearly Ready.*

MR. DREW'S (of Blackheath School) GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS. 4*s.* 6*d.*

MR. GODFRAY'S TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY. 5*s.* 6*d.*

MR. GRANT'S PLANE ASTRONOMY. 6*s.*

MR. HEMMING'S DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS. SECOND EDITION. 9*s.*

MR. PARKINSON'S ELEMENTARY MECHANICS. 9*s.* 6*d.*

MR. PHEAR'S ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS. SECOND EDITION. 5*s.* 6*d.*

MR. PUCKLE'S (Head Master of Windermere College) ELEMENTARY CONIC SECTIONS. SECOND EDITION. 7*s.* 6*d.*

MESSRS. ROUTH AND SMITH'S RIGID DYNAMICS. [*Preparing.*

MR. BARNARD SMITH'S ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA. NEW EDITION. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. BARNARD SMITH'S ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. NEW EDITION. 4*s.* 6*d.*

MR. BARNARD SMITH'S KEY TO THE ABOVE. 8*s.* 6*d.*

MR. BARNARD SMITH'S MECHANICS AND HYDROSTATICS. [*Preparing.*

MR. SNOWBALL'S PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. NINTH EDITION. 7*s.* 6*d.*

MR. SNOWBALL'S INTRODUCTION TO PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. SECOND EDITION. 5*s.*

MR. SNOWBALL'S CAMBRIDGE COURSE OF MECHANICS AND HYDROSTATICS. FOURTH EDITION. 5*s.*

PROF. TAIT'S AND MR. STEELE'S TREATISE ON DYNAMICS. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. TODHUNTER'S DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. SECOND EDITION. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. TODHUNTER'S INTEGRAL CALCULUS. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. TODHUNTER'S ANALYTICAL STATICS. SECOND EDITION. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. TODHUNTER'S CONIC SECTIONS. SECOND EDIT. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. TODHUNTER'S TREATISE ON ALGEBRA. 7*s.* 6*d.*

PROF. WILSON'S TREATISE ON DYNAMICS. 9*s.* 6*d.*

CAMBRIDGE SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS:
1848—51 (PROBLEMS). With Solutions by FERRERS and JACKSON. 15*s.* 6*d.*
1848—51 (RIDERS). With Solutions by JAMESON. 7*s.* 6*d.*
1854 (PROBLEMS AND RIDERS). With Solutions by WALTON and MACKENZIE. 10*s.* 6*d.*
1857 (PROBLEMS AND RIDERS). With Solutions by CAMPION and WALTON. 8*s.* 6*d.*

MR. DRAKE'S EUMENIDES OF ÆSCHYLUS. With English Notes. 7*s.* 6*d.*

MR. DRAKE'S DEMOSTHENES DE CORONA. With English Notes. 5*s.*

MR. FROST'S THUCYDIDES, B. VI. With English Notes. 7*s.* 6*d.*

DR. HUMPHREY'S EXERCITATIONES IAMBICÆ. Or, Exercises in Greek Iambic Verse, with Rules. SECOND EDITION. 5*s.* 6*d.*

MR. MAYOR'S JUVENAL FOR SCHOOLS. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. MERIVALE'S (Historian of Rome) SALLUST FOR SCHOOLS. SECOND EDITION. 4*s.* 6*d.*
THE CATILINE and the JUGURTHA may also be had separately, price 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

MR. THRING'S CONSTRUING BOOK. 2*s.* 6*d.*

MR. WRIGHT'S (Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School) HELLENICA: A FIRST GREEK CONSTRUING BOOK. With English Notes and a Vocabulary. SECOND EDITION. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MR. WRIGHT'S HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR. 4*s.* 6*d.*

MR. WRIGHT'S SEVEN KINGS OF ROME: A FIRST LATIN CONSTRUING BOOK. SECOND EDITION. With English Notes. 3*s.*

MR. WRIGHT'S VOCABULARY and EXERCISES for the above. 2*s.* 6*d.*

MR. PARMINTER'S MATERIALS FOR ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MR. THRING'S (Head Master of Uppingham School) ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. NEW EDITION. 2*s.*

MR. THRING'S CHILD'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR. NEW EDITION. 1*s.*

MR. CROSSE'S ANALYSIS OF PALEY'S EVIDENCES. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MR. HARDWICK'S HISTORY OF THE CHURCH, from A. D. 590 to 1600. 2 Vols. 21*s.*
Each Volume may be had separately, price 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. PROCTER'S MANUAL OF THE PRAYER-BOOK. THIRD EDITION. 10*s.* 6*d.*

MR. RAMSAY'S MANUAL OF THE CHURCH CATECHISM. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MR. SIMPSON'S CHURCH HISTORY OF THE FIRST THREE CENTURIES AND THE REFORMATION. THIRD EDIT. 5*s.*

MR. SWAINSON'S (Prebendary of Chichester) HANDBOOK TO BUTLER'S ANALOGY. 1*s.* 6*d.*

MR. WESTCOTT ON THE NEW TESTAMENT CANON. 12*s.* 6*d.*

MATHEMATICAL TRACTS.

Cambridge:
PRINTED BY C. J. CLAY, M.A.
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

FOR MACMILLAN AND Co.

London: BELL AND DALDY, 186 FLEET STREET.
Oxford: J. H. AND JAMES PARKER.
Edinburgh: EDMONSTON AND DOUGLAS.
Dublin: WILLIAM ROBERTSON.
Glasgow: JAMES MACLEHOSE.

MATHEMATICAL TRACTS

ON

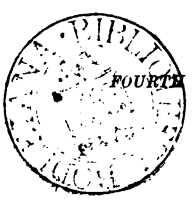
THE LUNAR AND PLANETARY THEORIES,
THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH,
PRECESSION AND NUTATION,
THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS,
AND
THE UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS.

Designed for the use of Students in the University.

BY

GEORGE BIDDELL AIRY, M.A.

ASTRONOMER ROYAL,
FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, AND LATE PLUMIAN PROFESSOR OF
ASTRONOMY AND EXPERIMENTAL PHILOSOPHY IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE.



FOURTH EDITION, CORRECTED AND IMPROVED.

Cambridge:
MACMILLAN AND CO.
1858.

[*The right of Translation is reserved.*]

184. e. 22

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

In presenting to the University a Fourth Edition of these Tracts, I may perhaps with propriety state the fundamental ideas upon which they were composed.

In originally introducing to the notice of the University several subjects which might, in reference to the ordinary pursuits of University students, be considered somewhat abstruse, it was not my intention to offer complete treatises upon any. It appeared to me that the objects of Academical education would be best promoted by giving careful expositions of principles, with rigorous attention to the logic of the reasoning, and with extent of application sufficient to lead to results of interesting character; but not by pursuing each subject to its remote details. I therefore adopted the following rules:—

1. To carry each subject carefully and accurately to a certain point, at which all the characteristic difficulties should have been met and overcome.

2. To indicate briefly the nature of the process to be pursued in going further, but not to go into details.

3. In the selection of methods, to adopt in preference those which carry with them the best geometrical evidence, as distinguished from symbolical operation, which the nature of the investigation may permit. In

cases where geometry is inapplicable or very cumbrous, the processes of simple differentiation and integration might, I considered, be accepted as scarcely inferior in clearness of evidence to those of geometry.

These principles were steadily followed, I believe, in the composition of the several Tracts. In conformity with the third, for instance, I adopted for the Figure of the Earth the admirable geometrical and quasi-geometrical methods of Mac Laurin and Ivory in preference to the more elegant but less convincing method of potentials.

The same ideas have been kept in view in the preparation of successive editions, and finally in that which is now laid before the Public.

The present edition has been revised with care. A few additions have been made, but in such a way as not to disturb the original references to articles, or in any way to modify the original plan.

I am indebted to the kindness of Isaac Todhunter, Esq., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St John's College, for the indication of several errors in the last edition, and for some suggestions in regard to the present publication.

G. B. AIRY.

ROYAL OBSERVATORY, GREENWICH,
June 14, 1858.

ERRATA.

Page 43, line 14, *for* $m's\ \frac{u'^3}{u^4}$ *read* $m's\ \frac{u'^3}{h^2u^4}$.

Plate I., figure 29, between *A* and *K*, *for N read M*.

LUNAR

AND

PLANETARY THEORIES.

INTRODUCTION.

In our succeeding investigations, the following equation will several times occur, and it will therefore be convenient to premise its solution.

As the cases of it which will present themselves are distinguished by some peculiarities, we shall here consider each of them separately.

By the notation $\int_\theta \cos n\theta \,.\, \Theta$, $\int_\theta \cos n\theta \,.\, \cos(m\theta + D)$, &c., we mean what are usually written

$$\int \cos n\theta \,.\, \Theta \,.\, d\theta, \quad \int \cos n\theta \,.\, \cos(m\theta + D) \,.\, d\theta, \text{ &c.;}$$

they are the quantities whose differential coefficients, with respect to θ, are $\cos n\theta \,.\, \Theta$, $\cos n\theta \,.\, \cos(m\theta + D)$, &c.

1. Prop. 1. To solve the equation

$$\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + n^2u + \Theta = 0;$$

Θ being a function of θ and constants only.

Multiply the equation by $\cos n\theta$*,

$$\text{then } \cos n\theta \,.\, \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + n^2 \cos n\theta \,.\, u + \cos n\theta \,.\, \Theta = 0;$$

---

* $\sin n\theta$, $\sin(n\theta + D)$, or $\cos(n\theta + D)$, would have served as well for multiplier.

integrate the first term by parts;

$$\text{then } \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} = \cos n\theta \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta} + n \int_\theta \sin n\theta \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta}$$

$$= \cos n\theta \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta} + n \sin n\theta \cdot u - n^2 \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot u.$$

Hence, the integral of the whole is

$$\cos n\theta \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta} + n \cdot \sin n\theta \cdot u + \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot \Theta = 0,$$

the arbitrary constant being included in the sign of integration. Divide this equation by $\cos^2 n\theta$:

$$\text{then } \frac{\frac{du}{d\theta}}{\cos n\theta} + \frac{n \sin n\theta \cdot u}{\cos^2 n\theta} + \frac{1}{\cos^2 n\theta} \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot \Theta = 0:$$

$$\text{integrating, } \frac{u}{\cos n\theta} + \int_\theta \frac{1}{\cos^2 n\theta} \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot \Theta = 0,$$

$$\text{or } u = -\cos n\theta \int_\theta \frac{1}{\cos^2 n\theta} \cdot \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot \Theta.$$

2. *Case* 1. Let $\Theta = 0$, or $\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + n^2 u = 0$:

$$\text{then } \cos n\theta \cdot \Theta = 0; \quad \int_\theta \cos n\theta \cdot \Theta = -C;$$

$$\therefore u = \cos n\theta \int_\theta \frac{C}{\cos^2 n\theta} = \cos n\theta \left(\frac{C}{n} \tan n\theta + C'\right)$$

$$= \frac{C}{n} \sin n\theta + C' \cos n\theta.$$

This may be put under the form $A \cos(n\theta - B)$,

$$\text{making } A \cos B = C', \; A \sin B = \frac{C}{n}.$$

Or under the form $E \sin(n\theta + F)$,

$$\text{making } E \cos F = \frac{C}{n}, \; E \sin F = C'.$$

3. *Case* 2. Let $\Theta = -a$;

then $\int_\theta \cos n\theta \,.\, \Theta = -\frac{a}{n}\sin n\theta - C$;

$$u = \cos n\theta \int_\theta \left(\frac{a}{n}\,.\,\frac{\sin n\theta}{\cos^2 n\theta} + \frac{C}{\cos^2 n\theta}\right)$$

$$= \cos n\theta \,.\, \left(\frac{a}{n^2}\,.\,\frac{1}{\cos n\theta} + \frac{C}{n}\tan n\theta + C'\right)$$

$$= \frac{a}{n^2} + \frac{C}{n}\sin n\theta + C'\cos n\theta,$$

$$\text{or } = \frac{a}{n^2} + A\cos(n\theta - B).$$

4. *Case* 3. Let $\Theta = b\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D)$:

then $\int_\theta \cos n\theta\,.\,\Theta$, or $b\int_\theta \cos n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D)$, (integrating by parts,)

$$= \frac{b}{n}\sin n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D) + \frac{mb}{n}\int_\theta \sin n\theta\,.\,\sin(m\theta + D)$$

$$= \frac{b}{n}\sin n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D) - \frac{mb}{n^2}\cos n\theta\,.\,\sin(m\theta + D)$$

$$+ \frac{m^2 b}{n^2}\int_\theta \cos n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D).$$

Hence $b\int_\theta \cos n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D)$

$$= \frac{b}{m^2 - n^2}\{m\cos n\theta\,.\,\sin(m\theta + D) - n\sin n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D)\} - C.$$

Then

$$u = \cos n\theta\,.\,\frac{b}{m^2 - n^2}\int_\theta \left\{-\frac{m\sin(m\theta + D)}{\cos n\theta} + \frac{n\sin n\theta\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D)}{\cos^2 n\theta}\right\}$$

$$+ \cos n\theta \int_\theta \frac{C}{\cos^2 n\theta}$$

$$= \frac{b}{m^2 - n^2}\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D) + \frac{C}{n}\sin n\theta + C'\cos n\theta,$$

$$\text{or } = \frac{b}{m^2 - n^2}\,.\,\cos(m\theta + D) + A\cos(n\theta - B).$$

5. *Case* 4. Let $\Theta = b \cdot \cos(n\theta + D)$.

Instead of multiplying by $\cos n\theta$, multiply by $\sin(n\theta + D)$, (which will do equally well)

$$\therefore \sin(n\theta + D) \cdot \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + n^2 \sin(n\theta + D) \cdot u + \frac{b}{2} \sin(2n\theta + 2D) = 0.$$

Integrating by parts, as in (1),

$$\sin(n\theta + D) \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta} - n \cos(n\theta + D) \cdot u - \frac{b}{4n} \cos(2n\theta + 2D) + C = 0,$$

$$\text{or } \sin(n\theta + D) \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta} - n \cos(n\theta + D) \cdot u + \frac{b}{2n} \sin^2(n\theta + D) + C - \frac{b}{4n} = 0.$$

Dividing by $\sin^2(n\theta + D)$, and integrating,

$$\frac{u}{\sin(n\theta + D)} + \frac{b}{2n}\theta - \left(\frac{C}{n} - \frac{b}{4n^2}\right) \cot(n\theta + D) + C' = 0,$$

$$\text{or } u = -\frac{b}{2n}\theta \cdot \sin(n\theta + D) + \left(\frac{C}{n} - \frac{b}{4n^2}\right) \cos(n\theta + D) - C' \sin(n\theta + D),$$

which as before may be put under the form

$$u = -\frac{b}{2n}\theta \cdot \sin(n\theta + D) + A \cos(n\theta - B).$$

6. *Remarks.* If Θ consisted of several terms, the expression for u would contain one term corresponding to each. The part which depends upon the arbitrary constants, is entirely independent of Θ. The process above having shewn what is the form of the expression for u, we may sometimes solve the equation with greater ease, by assuming an expression with indeterminate coefficients. Thus, if we had the equation

$$\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + n^2u + a + b \cos(m\theta + B) + p \cos(q\theta + Q) = 0,$$

we might assume

$$u = -\frac{a}{n^2} + A \cos(n\theta + C) + D \cos(m\theta + B) + E \cos(q\theta + Q),$$

and, substituting this series in the equation, determine the values of D and E.

7. When m does not differ much from n, it appears from (4), that the coefficient of $\cos(m\theta + D)$, in the expression for u, will be much greater than that in the original equation. This remark we shall find to be very important. The solution in the 4th case assumes a form different from any of the others: its peculiarity will materially affect our future operations.

MOTION OF TWO BODIES.

8. If the Sun were supposed to be at rest, the motion of a planet about it might be found by the formulæ for central forces. In the equation $\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u - \frac{P}{h^2u^2} = 0$, where h is a constant and $= \frac{1}{u^2} \cdot \frac{d\theta}{dt}$, (Whewell *on the Free Motion of Points*, Art. 24; Earnshaw's *Dynamics*, Art. 87; Tait and Steele *On the Dynamics of a Particle*, Art. 85; or Art. 32 below, if $T = 0$,) we must put for P the attraction of the Sun on the planet; and by solving the equation, we should find u in terms of θ, and the form of the orbit which the planet describes would then be known.

9. In the actual case of the Sun and a planet, these bodies move about their common center of gravity. But their relative motion will be the same as if we suppose the Sun to be at rest, provided we add to the accelerating forces which really act on the planet, another force equal and opposite to that which acts on the Sun. For if the same accelerating force be supposed to act on both, since the absolute motion which it communicates to both is the same, and in the same direction, their relative motion will be the same as if that force did not act: and if that force be equal and opposite to the force really acting on the Sun, the Sun will be at rest. Or, instead of this, if we add to the forces acting on the Sun, a force equal and opposite to that acting on the planet, the planet will be at rest, and the relative motions will be unaltered. In the Lunar Theory, we shall generally make the latter supposition, as to the motion of the Sun about the Earth (or rather about the center of gravity of the Earth and Moon).

10. PROP. 2. The orbit which the Sun appears to describe about a planet is a conic section.

Let M = mass of Sun (estimated by the accelerating force which its attraction produces at distance 1), M' = that of the planet: let their distance = r: let $u = \frac{1}{r}$. The accelerating force on the Sun, according to the law of gravitation, = $\frac{M'}{r^2}$: that on the planet = $\frac{M}{r^2}$: if then we suppose this force applied in the opposite direction to the Sun, the whole accelerating force on the Sun, supposing the planet at rest, = $\frac{M+M'}{r^2} = (M+M')\,u^2$.

Substituting this for P in the equation cited in Article 8,

$$\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u - \frac{M+M'}{h^2} = 0,$$

the solution of which, by (3), is

$$u = \frac{M+M'}{h^2} + A\cos(\theta - B),$$

$$\text{or } r = \frac{1}{\frac{M+M'}{h^2} + A\cos(\theta - B)},$$

which is the general polar equation to the conic sections, the focus being the pole.

11. The conic section which a planet appears to describe about the Sun, or the Sun about a planet, is found to be an ellipse. Let a and e be the semi-axis-major and eccentricity, B the longitude of the perihelion, then (Hamilton's *Conic Sections*, Art. 115; *Analytical Geometry*, Art. 145; Todhunter's *Plane Coordinate Geometry*, Article 204),

$$r = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{a(1-e^2)} + \frac{e}{a(1-e^2)}\cos(\theta - B)}.$$

Comparing this with the expression above,

$$\frac{M+M'}{h^2} = \frac{1}{a(1-e^2)},$$

$$\text{or } h = \sqrt{\{a(1-e^2)(M+M')\}}.$$

12. PROP. 3. To find the time of describing any part of the ellipse, or to express $nt+\epsilon-B$ (the mean anomaly) in terms of $\theta-B$, (the true anomaly).

By Whewell *On the Free Motion*, Art. 25; or Earnshaw's *Dynamics*, Art. 88; or Tait and Steele *On the Dynamics*, Art. 85;

$\frac{dt}{d\theta} = \frac{r^2}{h}$ = (in the present instance), $\frac{a^{\frac{3}{2}}.(1-e^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{(M+M')}} \cdot \frac{1}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-B)\}^2}$.
The most convenient form into which this can be expanded, is a series of cosines of multiple arcs, as

$$A + C\cos(\theta-B) + D\cos 2(\theta-B) + E\cos 3(\theta-B) + \&c.$$

To a limited number of terms, the expansion is easily effected by putting the second fraction in the form

$$1 - 2e\cos(\theta-B) + 3e^2\cos^2(\theta-B) - 4e^3\cos^3(\theta-B) + \&c.$$

and then expressing each power of a cosine by the cosines of multiple arcs. To effect it in a more general way, we shall first expand $\frac{1}{1+e\cos(\theta-B)}$ in a similar series.

13. If for $\cos(\theta-B)$, we put $\frac{x+\frac{1}{x}}{2}$ (where $x = \epsilon^{(\theta-B)\sqrt{(-1)}}$), we have

$$\frac{1}{1+e\cos(\theta-B)} = \frac{1}{1+\frac{e}{2}\left(x+\frac{1}{x}\right)},$$

$$\text{which will} = \frac{1}{(\alpha+\beta x)\left(\alpha+\frac{\beta}{x}\right)}, \text{ if } \alpha^2+\beta^2=1,\ \alpha\beta=\frac{e}{2}.$$

From these equations $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\{\sqrt{(1+e)}+\sqrt{(1-e)}\}$:

$$\beta = \frac{1}{2}\{\sqrt{(1+e)}-\sqrt{(1-e)}\};$$

$$\therefore\ \alpha^2 = \frac{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{2};\ \frac{\beta}{\alpha} = \frac{e}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}.$$

Put λ for $\frac{\beta}{\alpha}$.

Then $$\frac{1}{1+e\cos(\theta-B)}=\frac{2}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\frac{1}{(1+\lambda x)\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{x}\right)}$$

$$=\frac{2}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\frac{x}{(1+\lambda x)(x+\lambda)}$$

$$=\frac{2}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\frac{1}{1-\lambda^2}\cdot\left(\frac{1}{1+\lambda x}-\frac{\lambda}{x+\lambda}\right)$$

$$=\frac{2}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\frac{1}{1-\lambda^2}\cdot\left\{\frac{1}{1+\lambda x}-\frac{\frac{\lambda}{x}}{1+\frac{\lambda}{x}}\right\}.$$

Expanding these fractions, and observing that

$$x+\frac{1}{x}=2\cos(\theta-B),\quad x^2+\frac{1}{x^2}=2\cos 2(\theta-B),\ \&c.,$$

$$\frac{1}{1+e\cos(\theta-B)}=\frac{2}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\frac{1}{1-\lambda^2}\times$$

$$\{1-2\lambda\cos(\theta-B)+2\lambda^2.\cos 2(\theta-B)-2\lambda^3.\cos 3(\theta-B)+\&c.\}.$$

But $1-\lambda^2=\frac{2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}$; hence

$$\frac{1}{1+e\cos(\theta-B)}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\{1-2\lambda.\cos(\theta-B)+2\lambda^2.\cos 2(\theta-B)-\&c.\}$$

14. Now $\frac{1}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-B)\}^2}=\frac{d}{de}\left\{\frac{e}{1+e\cos(\theta-B)}\right\}$ (see the last paragraph of article 88); observing, then, that

$$\frac{d}{de}\left\{\frac{e}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\lambda^p\right\}=\frac{e^p\{1+p\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}^p.(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}},$$

we have

$$\frac{1}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-B)\}^2}=\frac{1}{(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}\cdot\left[1-2\cdot\frac{e\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cos(\theta-B)\right.$$

$$+2\frac{e^2\{1+2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}^2}\cos 2(\theta-B)$$

$$\left.-2\frac{e^3\{1+3\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}^3}\cos 3(\theta-B)+\&c.\right].$$

15. Hence (12), $\frac{dt}{d\theta}=\frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\sqrt{(M+M')}}\times$

$$\left[1-2e\cos(\theta-B)+\frac{2e^2\{1+2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}^2}\cos 2(\theta-B)-\&c.\right].$$

Put $\frac{\sqrt{(M+M')}}{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}=n$; then integrating and correcting, so as to make $nt+\epsilon-B=0$, when $\theta-B=0$, ϵ being a constant depending on the time when the planet passed the perihelion,

$$nt+\epsilon-B=(\theta-B)-2e\sin(\theta-B)$$

$$+\frac{e^2\{1+2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}^2}\sin 2(\theta-B)-\&c.$$

$$\pm\frac{2e^p.\{1+p\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}}{p\{1+\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\}^p}\sin p(\theta-B)\mp\&c.$$

For a whole revolution, suppose θ increased by 2π: this change makes no alteration in the values of

$$\sin(\theta-B),\quad \sin 2(\theta-B),\ \&c.:$$

then if T be the periodic time, t will be increased by T, and

$$nT=2\pi,\text{ or }T=\frac{2\pi}{n}=\frac{2\pi.a^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\sqrt{(M+M')}}*.$$

16. The term *anomaly* is used generally to denote the angular distance of that body which is supposed to move, from its apse. The true anomaly, then, in the present case, is $\theta-B$.

* It will be remarked that, in (39) and following articles, the letter a is used with a different meaning.

But $nt+\epsilon-B$ is an angle which increases proportionally to the time, and is that which the body would have described at the end of the time t, if, commencing with the angle $\epsilon-B$, it had moved uniformly with such an angular velocity, that it would have performed a revolution in the same time in which it does perform it. It is therefore called the *mean* anomaly.

17. If we expand these coefficients as far as e^3, or if we adopt the method of expansion in article 12,

$$nt+\epsilon=\theta-2e\sin(\theta-B)+\tfrac{5}{4}e^2\sin 2(\theta-B)-\frac{e^3}{3}\sin 3(\theta-B).$$

18. PROP. 4. To find $(\theta-B)$ in terms of $nt+\epsilon-B$, or the true anomaly in terms of the mean.

To a limited number of terms, this may be done by indeterminate coefficients. Put y for $\theta-B$, z for $nt+\epsilon-B$; assume

$$y=z+\alpha\sin z+\beta\sin 2z+\gamma\sin 3z+\&c.:$$

substitute these in the equation

$$z=y-2e\sin y+\tfrac{5}{4}e^2\sin 2y-\frac{e^3}{3}\sin 3y;$$

and expand $\sin y$, $\sin 2y$, &c., as in article 49; the comparison of the coefficients of similar terms will give the values of α, β, &c. To obtain the result generally, Lagrange's theorem must be used. If $y=z+e.\phi(y)$, then

$$y=z+\phi(z).\frac{e}{1}+\frac{d}{dz}\{\overline{\phi(z)}^2\}.\frac{e^2}{1.2}+\frac{d^2}{dz^2}\{\overline{\phi(z)}^3\}.\frac{e^3}{1.2.3}+\&c.$$

Here, carrying the approximation no farther than e^3,

$$y=z+e\left(2\sin y-\frac{3e}{4}\sin 2y+\frac{e^2}{3}\sin 3y\right);$$

$$\therefore\ \phi(z)=2\sin z-\frac{3e}{4}\sin 2z+\frac{e^2}{3}\sin 3z;$$

$$\therefore\ \overline{\phi(z)}^2=\left(2\sin z-\frac{3e}{4}\sin 2z\right)^2$$

$$=2-2\cos 2z-\frac{3e}{2}\cos z+\frac{3e}{2}\cos 3z;$$

in which it is not necessary to include higher powers of e, because it will be multiplied by e^3.

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dz}\{\overline{\phi(z)}^2\} = 4\sin 2z + \frac{3e}{2}\sin z - \frac{9e}{2}.\sin 3z,$$

$$\overline{\phi(z)}^2 = 8\sin^2 z = 6\sin z - 2\sin 3z;$$

$$\therefore \frac{d^2}{dz^2}\{\overline{\phi(z)}^2\} = -6\sin z + 18\sin 3z;$$

in which no powers of e are wanted, because it will be multiplied by e^3.

$$\therefore y = z + (2\sin z - \frac{3e}{4}\sin 2z + \frac{e^2}{3}\sin 3z)\frac{e}{1}$$

$$+ (4\sin 2z + \frac{3e}{2}\sin z - \frac{9e}{2}\sin 3z)\frac{e^2}{2}$$

$$+ (18\sin 3z - 6\sin z)\frac{e^3}{6}$$

$$= z + \left(2e - \frac{e^3}{4}\right)\sin z + \frac{5e^2}{4}\sin 2z + \frac{13}{12}e^3.\sin 3z,$$

carrying the approximation as far as e^3.

$$\text{Or } (\theta - B) = nt + \epsilon - B + \left(2e - \frac{e^3}{4}\right)\sin(nt + \epsilon - B)$$

$$+ \frac{5e^2}{4}\sin(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2B) + \frac{13}{12}e^3\sin(3nt + 3\epsilon - 3B) + \&c.$$

19. The mean anomaly, then, is that part of the true anomaly, which is independent of periodical terms, as sines or cosines. This is the usual signification of the word *mean*, in Astronomy.

The expression for θ is

$$nt + \epsilon + \left(2e - \frac{e^3}{4}\right)\sin(nt + \epsilon - B) + \frac{5e^2}{4}\sin(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2B) + \&c.$$

θ being called the longitude, or the *true* longitude, $nt + \epsilon$ (in conformity with the remark above) is called the *mean* longitude. The aggregate of the terms following $nt + \epsilon$ is called the *equation of the center*.

The expression for r in terms of t is investigated in (87). It is

$$r = a\left\{1 + \frac{e^2}{2} - (e - \frac{3e^3}{8} + \&c.)\cos(nt + \epsilon - B)\right.$$

$$\left. - \left(\frac{e^2}{2} + \&c.\right)\cos(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2B) - \left(\frac{3e^3}{8} + \&c.\right)\cos(3nt + 3\epsilon - 3B) + \&c.\right\}.$$

LUNAR THEORY.

PERTURBATION OF THE EARTH'S MOTION.

20. If the Earth, in its revolution round the Sun, were unaccompanied by any other body, it would accurately describe an ellipse. By the attraction of the Moon, the orbit will be altered: to assist us in the discovery of the orbit really described, the following theorem will be useful.

21. Prop. 5. The center of gravity of the Earth and Moon describes about the Sun, very nearly, an ellipse in one plane, and the area passed over by its radius vector is very nearly proportional to the time.

Let E and M, (fig. 1) be the Earth and Moon, m' the Sun; G the center of gravity of the Earth and Moon; join $m'E$, $m'G$, $m'M$; and draw EH, MK, perpendicular to $m'G$; let

$$m'G = r',\ EM = r,\ m'E = y,\ m'M = y',\ \angle m'GM = \omega.$$

Now the accelerating force of m' on E in the direction Em' is $\frac{m'}{y^2}$; therefore the moving force in that direction $= \frac{m'.E}{y^2}$; therefore the moving force in direction parallel to Gm' is

$$\frac{m'.E}{y^2} \times \frac{m'H}{y}$$

$$= \frac{m'.E}{y^2} \cdot \frac{r' + GE.\cos\omega}{y}$$

$$= \frac{m'.E(r' + GE.\cos\omega)}{y^3}.$$

Similarly, the moving force on M in direction parallel to Gm'

$$= \frac{m'.M}{y'^2} \cdot \frac{m'K}{y'}$$

$$= \frac{m'.M(r' - GM.\cos\omega)}{y'^3};$$

therefore the accelerating force on the center of gravity in the direction Gm' is

$$\frac{m'}{M+E}\left\{\frac{E(r'+GE\cos\omega)}{y^3}+\frac{M(r'-GM\cos\omega)}{y'^3}\right\}.$$

And the moving force of m' on E in direction perpendicular to Gm' is $\frac{m'.E}{y^2}.\frac{EH}{y}$

$$=\frac{m'.E}{y^2}.\frac{GE\sin\omega}{y}$$

$$=\frac{m'.E}{y^3}GE.\sin\omega;$$

that on $M=-\frac{m'.M}{y'^2}.\frac{MK}{y'}$

$$=-\frac{m'.M}{y'^3}GM.\sin\omega;$$

therefore the accelerating force on the center of gravity in direction perpendicular to Gm' is

$$\frac{m'}{M+E}.\left(\frac{E.GE.\sin\omega}{y^3}-\frac{M.GM.\sin\omega}{y'^3}\right).$$

22. Now $\frac{1}{y^3}=\frac{1}{(r'^2+2r'.GE.\cos\omega+GE^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$,

or, putting for $\cos^2\omega$ its equal $\frac{1+\cos 2\omega}{2}$,

$$\frac{1}{y^3}=\frac{1}{r'^3}\left\{1-3\frac{GE}{r'}\cos\omega+\frac{GE^2}{r'^2}\left(\frac{9}{4}+\frac{15}{4}\cos 2\omega\right)+\&c.\right\};$$

$$\therefore\frac{r'+GE.\cos\omega}{y^3}=\frac{1}{r'^3}\left\{1-2\frac{GE}{r'}\cos\omega\right.$$

$$\left.+\frac{GE^2}{r'^2}\left(\frac{3}{4}+\frac{9}{4}\cos 2\omega\right)+\&c.\right\}.$$

Similarly, $\frac{r'-GM\cos\omega}{y'^3}=\frac{1}{r'^3}\left\{1+2\frac{GM}{r'}\cos\omega\right.$

$$\left.+\frac{GM^2}{r'^2}\left(\frac{3}{4}+\frac{9}{4}\cos 2\omega\right)+\&c.\right\}.$$

But $GE=\frac{M}{E+M}r$; $\quad GM=\frac{E}{E+M}r$;

hence, accelerating force on center of gravity in direction Gm'

$$= \frac{m'}{r'^2}\left\{1 + \frac{EM^2 + ME^2}{(E+M)^3} \cdot \frac{r^2}{r'^2}\left(\frac{3}{4} + \frac{9}{4}\cos 2\omega\right) + \&c.\right\}$$

$$= \frac{m'}{r'^2}\left\{1 + \frac{ME}{(E+M)^2} \cdot \frac{r^2}{r'^2}\left(\frac{3}{4} + \frac{9}{4}\cos 2\omega\right) + \&c.\right\}.$$

Now this differs from $\frac{m'}{r'^2}$ only by a quantity which is multiplied by $\frac{r^2}{r'^2}$, and by $\frac{E}{E+M} \cdot \frac{M}{E+M}$, and which, in the lunar theory, $\left(\text{where } \frac{r}{r'} = \frac{1}{400} \text{ nearly, and } \frac{M}{E+M} = \frac{1}{80}\right)$ is quite insensible. In the same manner we find the accelerating force perpendicular to Gm'

$$= -\frac{m'}{r'^2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{EM^2 + ME^2}{(E+M)^3} \cdot \frac{r^2}{r'^2} \sin 2\omega,$$

$$\text{or } -\frac{m'}{r'^2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{ME}{(M+E)^2} \cdot \frac{r^2}{r'^2} \cdot \sin 2\omega,$$

which, for the same reason, is too small to be perceptible in its effects. Hence, the only accelerating force acting on the center of gravity is $\frac{m'}{r'^2}$, and is in the direction of r'; and therefore the center of gravity moves, very nearly, in the same manner in which a body placed at G would move. Similarly it appears, that the force on the Sun, and the motion of the Sun, are the same, as if a mass $= E + M$ were collected at G; therefore the relative motion of the center of gravity about the Sun, is the same as that of a mass $= E + M$; that is, it will very nearly describe an ellipse in one plane, making the areas proportional to the times.

23. Cor. The Sun's apparent longitude, therefore, as viewed from the Earth (which is the longitude of m' as seen from E), is not that found by the elliptic theory, (which is the longitude of m' as seen from G); but must be obtained by add-

ing to the longitude so found, the angle $Em'G$. Now sin $Em'G$ or $Em'G$, (since it is a small angle, never exceeding 10″)

$$= \frac{EG}{y} \sin EGm' = \frac{M}{E+M} \cdot \frac{r}{r'} \sin \omega \text{ very nearly:}$$

and, since the orbits of the Earth and Moon are nearly circular, this angle varies as $\sin \omega$ very nearly. And if the Moon be above the plane of the ecliptic, the Earth will be below it, and the Sun will appear to have a latitude, which can be calculated from the latitude of the Moon.

PERTURBATION OF THE MOON'S MOTION.

24. If the Sun did not attract the Earth and Moon, or if it attracted them equally, their relative motions would not be disturbed; the only force acting on the Moon, as affecting its position in regard to the Earth, would be the Earth's attraction; and the Moon would accurately describe an ellipse about the Earth. But the Sun attracts them unequally, and in different directions; and we can no longer say that the whole force which acts on the Moon, as affecting its position in regard to the Earth, is a force directed towards the Earth and following the law of the inverse square of the distance. The force in the direction of the radius vector (or towards the Earth) is altered, and no longer follows that law; and moreover, there is a force perpendicular to the radius vector. And as the Moon's orbit is inclined to the ecliptic, the disturbing force draws the Moon from the plane in which she is moving, and thus the plane of her orbit is perpetually changing. There appears to be no better mode of estimating the disturbing force, than by resolving it into three parts, one in the direction of the projection of the radius vector on the ecliptic, another in the plane of the ecliptic, perpendicular to this projection, and a third perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic.

25. PROP. 6. To find the resolved part of the Sun's disturbing force on the Moon, in the direction of the projection of the radius vector on the ecliptic.

Let E, M, m' (fig. 2), be the Earth, Moon, and Sun: G the center of gravity of the Earth and Moon, which by (22),

describes an ellipse in one plane about the Sun, or about which the Sun appears to describe an ellipse in one plane: draw MB, EA, perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic; join $m'M$, $m'B$, BGA: let $m'G = r'$, $AB = \rho$, $EM = r$, $m'E = y$, $m'M = y'$, tan $MGB = s$. Then AB is the projection of EM on the plane of the ecliptic. The force of m' upon M is $\frac{m'}{y'^2}$ in the direction Mm', which is equivalent to $\frac{m'}{y'^2} \cdot \frac{MG}{y'}$ in direction MG, and $\frac{m'}{y'^2} \cdot \frac{Gm'}{y'}$ in direction parallel to Gm'.

Resolving the force $\frac{m' \cdot MG}{y'^3}$ into one parallel to MB, and one parallel to BG,

the force parallel to $BG = \frac{m' \cdot MG}{y'^3} \times \cos MGB = \frac{m' \cdot MG}{y'^3\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}$:

and resolving the force $\frac{m' \cdot Gm'}{y'^3}$ into one parallel to BG, and another perpendicular to BG, in the plane of the ecliptic,

$$\text{the force parallel to } BG = -\frac{m' \cdot Gm'}{y'^3} \cdot \cos m'GB.$$

Let θ be the longitude of M, seen from G; θ' the longitude of m': then $\angle m'GB = \theta - \theta'$*: and the part of $\frac{m' \cdot Gm'}{y'^3}$ parallel to BG

$$= -\frac{m' \cdot Gm'}{y'^3} \cos(\theta - \theta').$$

Hence, the whole force on M in the direction BG, produced by the Sun's attraction, is

$$m'\left\{\frac{MG}{y'^3\sqrt{(1+s^2)}} - \frac{Gm'}{y'^3}\cos(\theta - \theta')\right\}.$$

Similarly, the whole force on E, estimated in the same direction, is

---

* It is always to be understood that the orbital motions of the Earth and the Moon, as viewed from the north side, are in the direction opposite to that in which the hands of a watch revolve, and the angles are therefore estimated positive in that direction.

$$m'\left\{-\frac{EG}{y'^3\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}-\frac{Gm'}{y'^2}\cos(\theta-\theta')\right\}.$$

If, then, in the same manner as in (9), we suppose this force applied to M in the opposite direction, we have, for the whole disturbing force on M, in direction of the projection of the radius vector,

$$m'\left\{\frac{MG}{y'^3\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}+\frac{EG}{y^3\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}-Gm'\cos(\theta-\theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^3}-\frac{1}{y^3}\right)\right\}.$$

26. PROP. 7. To find the resolved part of the disturbing force, which is parallel to the plane of the ecliptic, and perpendicular to the projection of the radius vector.

The only force which acts in this direction on M is the resolved part of the force $\frac{m'.Gm'}{y'^2}$ acting parallel to Gm', which

$$=-\frac{m'.Gm'}{y'^2}.\sin(\theta-\theta'),$$

(if we suppose the Moon to move so that the angle θ increases, and if we consider the force as positive when it tends to accelerate the Moon's motion.) And the only force on E, in the same direction, is

$$=-\frac{m'.Gm'}{y^2}\sin(\theta-\theta').$$

Supposing this applied to M in the opposite direction, the whole disturbing force, perpendicular to the projection of the radius vector

$$=-m'.Gm'.\sin(\theta-\theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^3}-\frac{1}{y^3}\right).$$

27. PROP. 8. To find the resolved part of the disturbing force, which is perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic.

The only force on M, perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic, is the resolved part of the force in MG. It is, therefore,

$$=\frac{m'.MG}{y'^3}.\sin MGB$$

$$=\frac{m'.MG}{y'^3}.\frac{s}{\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}.$$

The force on E, in the same direction, is

$$-\frac{m'.EG}{y^3}\cdot\frac{s}{\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}.$$

Applying this to M in the opposite direction, we have, for the whole disturbing force perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic,

$$m'\frac{s}{\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}\left(\frac{MG}{y'^3}+\frac{EG}{y^3}\right).$$

28. PROP. 9. To find the whole force upon M in these directions: or to find P, T, and S.

Besides the disturbing forces, we must also find the forces resulting from the mutual attraction of E and M. The attraction of E upon $M=\frac{E}{r^2}$: that of M upon $E=\frac{M}{r^2}$, in the opposite direction: applying the latter to M with its direction changed, we have, for the whole force on M, $\frac{E+M}{r^2}$ acting in the direction ME. The resolved part of this, in the direction of the projection of the radius vector, is $\frac{E+M}{r^2}\times\cos MGB$

$$=\frac{E+M}{\rho^2(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

The resolved part in the plane of the ecliptic, perpendicular to this projection, $=0$.

The resolved part, perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic,

$$=\frac{(E+M)\,s}{\rho^2(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

If, then, we put P, T, and S, for the whole forces on M, parallel to the projection of the radius, perpendicular to the projection of the radius, and perpendicular to the ecliptic, supposing E at rest, we have

$$P=\frac{E+M}{\rho^2(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

$$+m'\left\{\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}\left(\frac{MG}{y'^3}+\frac{EG}{y^3}\right)-r'.\cos(\theta-\theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^3}-\frac{1}{y^3}\right)\right\};$$

$$T = -m'.r'.\sin(\theta-\theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^2}-\frac{1}{y^3}\right);$$

$$S = \frac{(E+M)s}{\rho^2(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}+\frac{m's}{\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}\left(\frac{MG}{y'^3}+\frac{EG}{y^3}\right).$$

And $MG = \frac{E}{E+M}.\rho\sqrt{(1+s^2)}$; $EG = \frac{M}{E+M}\rho\sqrt{(1+s^2)}$.

29. We have now the values of the forces upon M in three directions, considering E as fixed. We must, therefore, investigate the differential equations, for the motion of a body about a fixed center, acted on by forces in these directions.

30. PROP. 10. To find the differential equations for the motion of M about the fixed center E.

Let $E\Upsilon$, Fig. 3, be a straight line in the plane of the ecliptic, drawn from E towards the first point of Aries: Mb perpendicular to the ecliptic: then, ΥEb = Moon's longitude $= \theta$. Also, if x, y, and z be rectangular co-ordinates (z being perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic, and x measured on the line drawn towards the first point of Aries),

$$x = \rho\cos\theta,\ y = \rho\sin\theta,\ z = \rho s.$$

And X, or the force in direction of x, $= -P\cos\theta - T\sin\theta$,

Y ..... $= -P\sin\theta + T\cos\theta$,

Z ..... $= -S$.

Hence the equations of motion

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = X,\ \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = Y,\ \frac{d^2z}{dt^2} = Z,$$

are changed into the following,

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -P\frac{x}{\rho} - T\frac{y}{\rho},$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = -P\frac{y}{\rho} + T\frac{x}{\rho},$$

$$\frac{d^2z}{dt^2} = -S.$$

Hence $2\frac{dx}{dt}\cdot\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}+2\frac{dy}{dt}\cdot\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}$

$$=-\frac{2P}{\rho}\left(x\frac{dx}{dt}+y\frac{dy}{dt}\right)+\frac{2T}{\rho}\left(x\frac{dy}{dt}-y\frac{dx}{dt}\right).$$

But $2.\frac{dx}{dt}\cdot\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}+2.\frac{dy}{dt}\cdot\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}=\frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2+\left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2\right\}$

$$=\frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\right)^2+\rho^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right\},$$

since $\frac{dx}{dt}=\frac{d\rho}{dt}\cos\theta-\rho\sin\theta\frac{d\theta}{dt}$, $\frac{dy}{dt}=\frac{d\rho}{dt}\sin\theta+\rho\cos\theta\frac{d\theta}{dt}$.

And $x\frac{dx}{dt}+y\frac{dy}{dt}=\rho\frac{d\rho}{dt}$; $x\frac{dy}{dt}-y\frac{dx}{dt}=\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}$;

$$\therefore\ \frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\right)^2+\rho^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right\}=-2P\frac{d\rho}{dt}+2T\rho\frac{d\theta}{dt}\ \ldots\ldots\ (a).$$

Also $x\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}-y\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}=T\frac{x^2+y^2}{\rho}=T\rho.$

But $x\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}-y\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}=\frac{d}{dt}\left(x\frac{dy}{dt}-y\frac{dx}{dt}\right)=\frac{d}{dt}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)$;

$$\therefore\ \frac{d}{dt}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)=T\rho\ \ldots\ldots\ldots\ (b).$$

$$\text{And}\ \frac{d^2(\rho s)}{dt^2}=-S\ \ldots\ldots\ldots\ (c).$$

31. These equations (a), (b), (c), appear to be the simplest equations to which the motion of a point can be reduced. In their present form, however, it is not possible to integrate them: we must obtain equations between ρ, θ, and s, independent of t. This is the object of the next proposition.

32. PROP. 11. To eliminate t from the differential equations.

Since, in their present form, t is the independent variable, we must take some other quantity for the independent variable. Let this be θ.

Now by equation (b), $\frac{d}{dt}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right) = T\rho$;

multiplying each side by $\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}$,

$$\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\cdot\frac{d}{dt}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right) = T\rho^3\frac{d\theta}{dt};$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{d}{dt}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2 = T\rho^3\frac{d\theta}{dt};$$

$$\text{or } \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\cdot\frac{d\theta}{dt} = T\rho^3\frac{d\theta}{dt};$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{d}{d\theta}\left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2 = T\rho^3;$$

$$\therefore \left(\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2 = h^2 + 2\int_\theta T\rho^3,$$

h^2 being a constant quantity;

hence $\rho^2\frac{d\theta}{dt} = (h^2 + 2\int_\theta T\rho^3)^{\frac{1}{2}}$, and $\frac{dt}{d\theta} = \frac{\rho^2}{\sqrt{(h^2 + 2\int_\theta T\rho^3)}}$;

which is another form of equation (b).

Now to transform equation (a), if we multiply both sides by $\frac{dt}{d\theta}$ it becomes

$$\frac{d}{d\theta}\left\{\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\right)^2 + \rho^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right\} = -2P\frac{d\rho}{d\theta} + 2T\rho,$$

$$\text{or } \frac{d}{d\theta}\left[\left\{\left(\frac{d\rho}{d\theta}\right)^2 + \rho^2\right\}\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right] = -2P\frac{d\rho}{d\theta} + 2T\rho,$$

$$\text{or } \frac{d}{d\theta}\left[\left\{\frac{1}{\rho^4}\left(\frac{d\rho}{d\theta}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{\rho^2}\right\}\cdot(h^2 + 2\int_\theta T\rho^3)\right] = -2P\frac{d\rho}{d\theta} + 2T\rho.$$

Let $\rho = \frac{1}{u}$; $\frac{d\rho}{d\theta} = -\frac{1}{u^2}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}$; $\frac{1}{\rho^2}\cdot\frac{d\rho}{d\theta} = -\frac{du}{d\theta}$;

$$\therefore \frac{d}{d\theta}\left[\left\{\left(\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)^2+u^2\right\}\cdot\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)\right]=\frac{2P}{u^3}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}+\frac{2T}{u},$$

or performing the differentiation,

$$2\frac{du}{d\theta}\left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u\right)\cdot\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)+\left\{\left(\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)^2+u^2\right\}\cdot\frac{2T}{u^3}$$

$$=\frac{2P}{u^3}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}+\frac{2T}{u};$$

$$\therefore \left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u\right)\cdot\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)+\frac{T}{u^3}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}=\frac{P}{u^3};$$

$$\therefore \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u-\frac{\frac{P}{u^3}-\frac{T}{u^3}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}}{h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}}=0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (d),$$

which is the equation equivalent to equation (a), but does not contain t.

33. In the same manner, putting u for $\frac{1}{\rho}$ in equation (c),

$$\text{we have } \frac{d^2\left(\frac{s}{u}\right)}{dt^2}=-S.$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{d\left(\frac{s}{u}\right)}{dt}=\frac{d\left(\frac{s}{u}\right)}{d\theta}\cdot\frac{d\theta}{dt}=\frac{1}{u^2}\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)\cdot\frac{d\theta}{dt}$$

$$=\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)}.$$

$$\text{And } \frac{d^2\left(\frac{s}{u}\right)}{dt^2}=\frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)}\right\}$$

$$=\frac{d\theta}{dt}\cdot\frac{d}{d\theta}\left\{\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)}\right\}$$

$$= u^2\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta \frac{T}{u^3}\right)}\cdot\left\{\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)\cdot\frac{\frac{T}{u^3}}{\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)}}\right.$$

$$\left.+\left(u\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}-s\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}\right)\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)}\right\}$$

$$=\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)\frac{T}{u}+\left(u\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}-s\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}\right)u^2\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right);$$

$$\therefore\ u\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}-s\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+\frac{\frac{T}{u^3}\left(u\frac{ds}{d\theta}-s\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)+\frac{S}{u^2}}{h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}}=0.$$

But multiplying equation (d) by s we find

$$s\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+su+\frac{-\frac{Ps}{u^2}+\frac{Ts}{u^3}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}}{h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}}=0.$$

Adding this to the last, and dividing the sum by u

$$\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}+s+\frac{\frac{S-Ps}{u^3}+\frac{T}{u^3}\cdot\frac{ds}{d\theta}}{h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}}=0\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(e),$$

which is the equation equivalent to equation (c), but does not contain t.

34. By the solution of the two equations (d) and (e), we must express u and s in terms of θ, which will give the form and position of the orbit. The time of describing any part will then be found by integrating the equation

$$\frac{dt}{d\theta}=\frac{\rho^2}{\sqrt{(h^2+2\int_\theta T\rho^3)}}=\frac{1}{u^2\sqrt{\left(h^2+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{u^3}\right)}}.$$

35. PROP. 12. To expand the expressions for

$$\frac{P}{u^2},\ \frac{T}{u^3},\ \text{and}\ \frac{S-Ps}{u^3}.$$

The expressions for P and T were found in Article 28: and

$$S - Ps = m'.r'.s.\cos(\theta - \theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^3} - \frac{1}{y^3}\right).$$

Now, $y^2 = (m'A)^2 + (AE)^2$ (fig. 2)

$$= r'^2 + 2r'.GA.\cos(\theta - \theta') + GA^2 + GA^2.s^2.$$

Expanding as far as $\left(\frac{GA}{r'}\right)^2$, and rejecting $\left(\frac{GA}{r'}\right)^2.s^2$,

$$\frac{1}{y^3} = \frac{1}{r'^3}\left[1 - 3\frac{GA}{r'}\cos(\theta - \theta') + \frac{GA^2}{r'^2}\left\{\frac{9}{4} + \frac{15}{4}\cos 2(\theta - \theta')\right\}^*\right].$$

$$\text{But } GA = \frac{M}{E+M}.\rho; \quad \therefore \frac{1}{y^3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{r'^3}\left[1 - 3\frac{M}{E+M}.\frac{\rho}{r'}.\cos(\theta-\theta') + \frac{M^2}{(E+M)^2}.\frac{\rho^2}{r'^2}\left\{\frac{9}{4} + \frac{15}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right].$$

Similarly, $\frac{1}{y'^3}$

$$= \frac{1}{r'^3}\left[1 + 3\frac{E}{E+M}.\frac{\rho}{r'}\cos(\theta-\theta') + \frac{E^2}{(E+M)^2}.\frac{\rho^2}{r'^2}\left\{\frac{9}{4} + \frac{15}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right];$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{y'^3} - \frac{1}{y^3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{r'^3}\left[3\frac{\rho}{r'}\cos(\theta-\theta') + \frac{E-M}{E+M}.\frac{\rho^2}{r'^2}\left\{\frac{9}{4} + \frac{15}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right].$$

Hence, $\cos(\theta - \theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^3} - \frac{1}{y^3}\right)$

$$= \frac{1}{r'^3}\left[\frac{3}{2}\frac{\rho}{r'}\{1 + \cos 2(\theta-\theta')\} + \frac{E-M}{E+M}.\frac{\rho^2}{r'^2}.\left\{\frac{33}{8}\cos(\theta-\theta') + \frac{15}{8}\cos 3(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right];$$

$$\sin(\theta - \theta')\left(\frac{1}{y'^3} - \frac{1}{y^3}\right)$$

---

* The reader who wishes to proceed with the approximation to the Lunar motions no farther than it is *completed* in this Tract may omit the last term in these expansions.

$$= \frac{1}{r'^3}\left[\frac{3}{2}\frac{\rho}{r'}\sin 2(\theta-\theta') + \frac{E-M}{E+M}\cdot\frac{\rho^2}{r'^2}\cdot\left\{\frac{3}{8}\sin(\theta-\theta') + \frac{15}{8}\sin 3(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right].$$

And since $EG = AG\sqrt{(1+s^2)} = \dfrac{M}{E+M}\rho\sqrt{(1+s^2)}$,

$$\text{and } MG = \frac{E}{E+M}\rho\sqrt{(1+s^2)},$$

we find

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+s^2)}}\left(\frac{MG}{y'^3} + \frac{EG}{y^3}\right) = \frac{\rho}{r'^3}\left\{1 + 3\frac{E-M}{E+M}\cdot\frac{\rho}{r'}\cos(\theta-\theta')\right\},$$

neglecting powers of ρ above the square.

Substituting these values, putting $E+M=\mu$, and expanding $\dfrac{1}{(1+s^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ as far as s^4,

$$P = \frac{\mu}{\rho^2}\left(1 - \frac{3}{2}s^2 + \frac{15}{8}s^4\right)$$

$$-m'\left[\frac{\rho}{r'^3}\left\{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\} + \frac{E-M}{\mu}\cdot\frac{\rho^2}{r'^4}\left\{\frac{9}{8}\cos(\theta-\theta') + \frac{15}{8}\cos 3(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right],$$

$$T = -m'\left[\frac{3}{2}\frac{\rho}{r'^3}\cdot\sin 2(\theta-\theta') + \frac{E-M}{\mu}\cdot\frac{\rho^2}{r'^4}\left\{\frac{3}{8}\sin(\theta-\theta') + \frac{15}{8}\sin 3(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right],$$

$$S - Ps = m's\cdot\frac{\rho}{r'^3}\left\{\frac{3}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\},$$

(omitting the products of s by ρ^2).

Now, putting $\dfrac{1}{u}$ for ρ, and $\dfrac{1}{u'}$ for r', we find, at length,

$$\frac{P}{u^3} = \mu\left(1 - \frac{3}{2}s^2 + \frac{15}{8}s^4\right)$$

$$-m'\left[\frac{u'^3}{u^3}\left\{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\} + \frac{E-M}{\mu}\cdot\frac{u'^4}{u^4}\left\{\frac{9}{8}\cos(\theta-\theta') + \frac{15}{8}\cos 3(\theta-\theta')\right\}\right] \ldots (f),$$

$$\frac{T}{u^3} = -m'\left[\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{u'^3}{u^4}\sin 2(\theta-\theta') + \frac{E-M}{\mu}\cdot\frac{u'^4}{u^5}\left\{\frac{3}{8}\sin(\theta-\theta') + \frac{15}{8}\sin 3(\theta-\theta)\right\}\right] \ldots (g),$$

$$\frac{S-Ps}{u^3} = m's\cdot\frac{u'^3}{u^4}\cdot\left\{\frac{3}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\} \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (h).$$

36. It appears, then, that upon substituting these values in the equation (d), it will be reduced to this form, $\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u+\Pi=0$, Π being a complicated function of u, s, and θ. No method of directly solving such an equation is known: but we have seen in Prop. 1, that it could be solved, if Π were a function of θ only. This suggests the method of solving by successive substitution. Find a value of u in terms of θ, which is nearly the true one; substitute this value for u, in the terms of small magnitude; Π will then be a function of θ only, and the equation may be solved, and a more approximate value of u found. Substitute this for u in Π, and again solve the equation, and a value will be found still nearer the truth. Proceed in the same manner to find the value of s.

37. But, in order to carry on this process with facility, it is necessary to establish some rule with regard to the comparative value of small quantities, so that, fixing upon some quantity as a standard, our first approximation may include its first power, and the first powers of quantities nearly as great; our second approximation may comprehend its square, and the squares of the others, and the products of any two, &c. Thus, let e be the eccentricity of the lunar orbit; e' that of the solar orbit; k the tangent of the mean inclination of the lunar orbit to the ecliptic; m the ratio of the Sun's mean motion to the Moon's mean motion*. Here $e=\frac{1}{20}$ nearly; $e'=\frac{1}{60}$; $k=\frac{1}{12}$; $m=\frac{1}{13\cdot5}$: taking e, then, as our standard, e', k, and m, are small quantities, not differing much in magnitude from e, and are therefore said to be small quantities of the first order. But, $\frac{\rho}{r}$ or $\frac{u'}{u}$ is little more than $\frac{1}{400}$, and therefore admits better of being compared with e^2 than with e: it is on that account considered to be a

* By the term *mean motion* is meant, the mean angular motion, or the velocity with which the mean longitude increases. The mean motion varies therefore inversely as the periodic time.

small quantity of the second order: $m^2 e$, $\frac{\rho}{r'} e'$, &c. would be called of the third order; &c.

38. It is of importance to determine what is the order of the disturbing force on the Moon, compared with the force which is independent of the Sun's action. Upon examining the expressions for P, T, and S, it will be seen that the mutual attraction of the Earth and Moon is expressed by $\frac{\mu}{\rho^2}$, while the disturbing force is given by a multiple of $\frac{m'\rho}{r'^3}$. We must therefore find the order of $\frac{m'\rho}{r'^3}$, as compared with $\frac{\mu}{\rho^2}$; or of $\frac{m'}{r'^3}$, compared with $\frac{\mu}{\rho^2}$. Now, by (15), if T be the time of a revolution of the Moon about the Earth, in a circular orbit, (the disturbing force and the ellipticity being very small) $T = \frac{2\pi \cdot \rho^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}}}$ nearly: and, if T' be the time in which the system of the Earth and Moon (supposed very small in comparison with the Sun) revolves round the Sun, $T' = \frac{2\pi \cdot r'^{\frac{3}{2}}}{m'^{\frac{1}{2}}}$ nearly:

$$\text{hence } \frac{m'}{r'^3} : \frac{\mu}{\rho^2} :: \frac{1}{T'^2} : \frac{1}{T^2} :: m^2 : 1 :$$

and the disturbing force is of the second order.

39. PROP. 13. To integrate the differential equations, first approximation.

We propose here to include small terms of the first order. Since the disturbing force is of the second order, we shall not take any terms arising from it. Thus, we have

$$\frac{P}{u^2} = \mu; \quad \frac{T}{u^2} = 0; \quad \frac{S - Ps}{u^2} = 0:$$

and the equations (d) and (e) become

$$\frac{d^2 u}{d\theta^2} + u - \frac{\mu}{h^2} = 0, \qquad \frac{d^2 s}{d\theta^2} + s = 0.$$

The solution of the first is

$$u = \frac{\mu}{h^2}\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \alpha)\};$$

or, putting $\frac{\mu}{h^2} = a$*,

$$u = a\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \alpha)\}.$$

The solution of the second is,

$$s = k\,.\sin(\theta - \gamma).$$

The first shews that the projection of the Moon's orbit is an ellipse; the second, that the tan latitude $= k$. sin longitude from node, and therefore, that she apparently moves in a great circle. For, if we conceive the earth to be in the center of a sphere, and if upon the sphere we describe a spherical right-angled triangle, in which one of the sides including the right angle (and representing the Moon's longitude on the ecliptic as measured from a certain point) is $\theta - \gamma$, and the other side including the right angle (and representing the Moon's latitude) is ϕ, where $\tan\phi = k\,.\sin(\theta - \gamma)$; and if we draw a great circle for the hypothenuse of the triangle; then the angle ψ opposite to the side ϕ is determined by this equation

$$\tan\psi = \frac{\tan\phi}{\sin(\theta - \gamma)}.$$

The value found for s or $\tan\phi$ reduces this equation to the form

$$\tan\psi = k.$$

Therefore, from whatever point of the Moon's path we draw a great circle to a certain point on the ecliptic, the angle at which it meets it is invariable: consequently the same great circle must pass through every point of the Moon's path, or the Moon moves apparently in a great circle.

40. PROP. 14. To integrate the differential equations, second approximation.

---

* It will be remarked that in articles (11) to (15), the letter a is used with a different meaning.

As terms of the second order are to be included, we shall here have the first terms of the disturbing force.

$$\frac{P}{u^2} \text{ therefore} = \mu\left(1-\frac{3}{2}s^2\right) - \frac{m'u'^3}{u^3}\left\{\frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\right\}:$$

$$\frac{T}{u^3} = -\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m'u'^3}{u^4}\sin 2(\theta-\theta'):$$

$$\frac{S-Ps}{u^3} = 0.$$

We have just found for u the expression $a\{1+e\cos(\theta-\alpha)\}$; but it is evident that, in the substitution of this value in terms of the second order, the terms containing e will be of the third order. We shall therefore for u put a: and for u' shall put a' (a' in the Sun's orbit corresponding to a in the Moon's). Also, for θ' we shall put the value which it would have, if the motions of the Sun and Moon were both uniform, that is, $m\theta+\beta$, β being the Sun's mean longitude, when $\theta=0$. Thus,

$$\frac{P}{u^2} = \mu\{1-\frac{3k^2}{4}+\frac{3k^2}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\gamma)\} - \frac{m'a'^3}{a^3}\left[\frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}\right];$$

$$\frac{T}{u^3} = -\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m'a'^3}{a^4}\cdot\sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\};$$

$$\frac{S-Ps}{u^3} = 0.$$

41. In this and succeeding approximations, it will be found most convenient to put the differential equations (d) and (e) into the following form;

$$\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u+\left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u\right)2\int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^3} - \frac{P}{h^2u^2}+\frac{T}{h^2u^3}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta} = 0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(k),$$

$$\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}+s+\left(\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}+s\right)2\int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^3}+\frac{S-Ps}{h^2u^3}+\frac{T}{h^2u^3}\cdot\frac{ds}{d\theta} = 0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(l).$$

Now, with the assumed value of u, $\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u=a$,

$$\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^2a^3} = \frac{3}{2(2-2m)} \cdot \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^4} \cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}$$

$$= \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^4} \cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\},$$

(using $\frac{3}{2}$ instead of $\frac{3}{2-2m}$, because the preservation of m in the denominator, on expanding the fraction, would introduce a term of the third order)

$$\therefore \left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u\right) 2\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^2a^3} = \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^3} \cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}.$$

$$\text{Then } \frac{-P}{h^2u^5} = -a\left\{1 - \frac{3k^2}{4} + \frac{3k^2}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\gamma)\right\}$$

$$+ \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^3}\left[\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}\right].$$

And $\frac{T}{h^2u^3} \cdot \frac{du}{d\theta}$, since $\frac{du}{d\theta}$ involves e, is of the third order.

Hence, the equation becomes

$$0 = \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u - a + \frac{3k^2a}{4} + \frac{m'a'^3}{2h^2a^3} - \frac{3k^2a}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\gamma)$$

$$+ 3\frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^3}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}.$$

The integral of this equation gives, by (4), $u =$

$$a - \frac{3k^2a}{4} - \frac{m'a'^3}{2h^2a^3} + ae\cos(\theta-\alpha) - \frac{3k^2a}{4(2^2-1)}\cos 2(\theta-\gamma)$$

$$+ \frac{3m'a'^3}{h^2a^3\{(2-2m)^2-1\}}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}.$$

Or, taking the last term to the second order only, $u =$

$$a - \frac{3k^2a}{4} - \frac{m'a'^3}{2h^2a^3} + ae\cos(\theta-\alpha) - \frac{k^2a}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\gamma)$$

$$+ \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^3}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}.$$

To take away $\frac{m'}{h^2}$, we observe that a' and a are nearly the reciprocals of r' and ρ, which occur in (38): and, since

$$\frac{m'}{r'^3} = m^2 \cdot \frac{\mu}{\rho^3},$$

we have $m'a'^3 = m^2 \cdot \mu \cdot a^3$; $\quad \therefore \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^3} = m^2 \cdot \frac{\mu}{h^3} = m^2a.$

Thus, the value of u becomes

$$a\left[1 - \frac{3k^2}{4} - \frac{m^2}{2} + e\cos(\theta-\alpha) - \frac{k^2}{4}\cos 2(\theta-\gamma) + m^2\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}\right].$$

The value of s is still $k \sin(\theta-\gamma)$, all the terms of its equation being of the third order.

42. PROP. 15. To integrate the differential equations, third approximation.

Since the disturbing force is now to be taken to the third order, the value of $\frac{m'u'^3}{h^2u^3}$, or $\frac{m'a'^3}{h^3a^3} \cdot \frac{u'^3}{a'^3} \cdot \frac{a^3}{u^3}$, which occurs in $\frac{P}{h^2u^3}$, must be taken to the third order; and as $\frac{m'a'^3}{h^3a^3}$ is of the second order, $\frac{u'^3}{a'^3}$ and $\frac{a^3}{u^3}$ must each be expanded to the first power of e' and e. Putting for u the value found in Article 39, namely, $a\{1 + e\cos(\theta-\alpha)\}$, we find

$$\frac{a^3}{u^3} = 1 - 3e\cos(\theta-\alpha).$$

We will stop a moment to consider the effect of this term.

43. In consequence of the introduction of this term, our equation will have the following form;

$$0 = \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u + \&c. + Ae\cos(\theta-\alpha) + \&c.$$

Its integral therefore, by (5), will contain, in the expression for u, one term of the form $-\frac{Ae}{2}\theta \cdot \sin(\theta-\alpha)$. The peculiarity of this term is, that while all the variable terms which have yet occurred, being sines or cosines, were periodical, and never

exceeded a certain value, this term contains a factor θ, which admits of increase without limit; and the value of the term, instead of being confined within certain limits, may be of any magnitude. Our assumed expression then for u, viz.,

$$a\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \alpha)\},$$

was not an approximate one, since terms will be added to it, whose value may exceed its own; and, as the operations of the last proposition were carried on upon the supposition that the assumed value of u was always near the truth, the results of these operations fall to the ground.

44. But a slight alteration in the form of our assumption will extricate us from this difficulty. If we assume

$$u = a\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\},$$

and suppose c to differ very little from 1,

$$\text{then } \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u = a\{1 + (1 - c^2)\, e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\},$$

which, as far as quantities of the first order, $= a$ (since $1 - c^2$ is very small); and therefore the equation used in (39), is satisfied as well as it was before; and this expression for u may therefore, with propriety, be used for substitution in the equation including terms of the second order. And the equation of this proposition, viz.

$$0 = \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u + \&c. + Ae\cos(c\theta - \alpha) + \&c.$$

or $0 = a\{1 + (1 - c^2)\, e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\} + \&c. + Ae\cos(c\theta - \alpha) + \&c.$ gives, by the comparison of coefficients of the same cosine,

$$1 - c^2 = -\frac{A}{a},$$

and there is now no arc in any part of the expression for u.

*44. It is not however to be imagined, that the peculiar form of the assumption $u = a\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}$ is in any degree left to our choice. If, instead of assuming any specific form, we

make $u = a(1+w)$, and substitute this expression in the differential equation, we shall have

$$\frac{a^3}{u^3} = 1 - 3w,$$

and the equation will therefore have the form

$$0 = a\frac{d^2w}{d\theta^2} + aw + \&c. + Aw + \&c.$$

$$\text{or } 0 = \frac{d^2w}{d\theta^2} + \left(1 + \frac{A}{a}\right)w + \&c.$$

which, solved as in Article (2) or (6), gives

$$w = e\cos\left\{\theta\sqrt{\left(1+\frac{A}{a}\right)} - \alpha\right\} + \&c.$$

$$\text{or } u = a + ae\cos(c\theta - \alpha) + \&c.$$

$$\text{where } c^2 = 1 + \frac{A}{a}, \text{ or } 1 - c^2 = -\frac{A}{a},$$

the same equation as that found in (44).

45. Suppose, now, we substituted $a\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}$ for u, in the expression for $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$ (f) Art. 35. The second term depending on the disturbing force is $-\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m'u'^2}{h^2u^3}\cdot\cos 2(\theta - \theta')$. Now u', being the reciprocal of the radius vector in the elliptical orbit which the Sun appears to describe about the Earth, will be expressed by $a'\{1 + e'\cos(\theta' - \zeta)\}$, ζ being the longitude of the Sun's perigee. And as $\theta' = m\theta + \beta$, nearly, by (40),

$$u' = a'\{1 + e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta)\}, \text{ nearly;}$$

$$\therefore \frac{u'^2}{u^3} = \frac{a'^2\{1 + e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta)\}^2}{a^3\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}^3}$$

$$= \frac{a'^2}{a^3}\{1 + 3e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta) - 3e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\},$$

neglecting e^2, &c. in the expansion. Hence, the term in question

$$=-\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^3}\cdot\{1+3e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)-3e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}.\cos 2(\theta-\theta').$$

Now $\cos 2(\theta-\theta')=\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}$, nearly; and, consequently, the product of $\cos(c\theta-\alpha)$, and $\cos 2(\theta-\theta')$ will contain $\cos\{(2-2m+c)\theta-2\beta-\alpha\}$, and $\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}$. But we have seen in (4), that upon solving the equation

$$0=\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u+\&c.+A\cos(b\theta+B),$$

there will be in the expression for u, a term

$$\frac{A}{b^2-1}\cos(b\theta+B).$$

If then b differs little from 1, there will be a large term in the value of u. Now $2-2m-c$ is in this case; for c very nearly $=1$; $\therefore\ 2-2m-c=1-2m$, nearly; $\therefore\ (2-2m-c)^2-1=-4m$, nearly. And, since the term in the differential equation, depending on $\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}$, is of the third order, it will rise in the value of u to the second order. Our integration therefore to the second order is not correct; and we must repeat it, examining all the terms of the third order, and not rejecting terms depending on $(2-2m-c)\theta$, or any terms in which the coefficient of θ is nearly $=1$.

46. We may also remark, that the first term of $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$ which results from the disturbing force, namely $-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{m'u'^3}{h^2u^3}$ (35), will contain $\cos(\theta'-\zeta)$ or $\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)$, nearly, multiplied by a quantity of the third order. Since m is not nearly $=1$, the resulting term in the expression for u will also be of the third order. But when, after determining u, we proceed to integrate the expression

$$\frac{dt}{d\theta}=\frac{1}{hu^2\left(1+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}},$$

upon expanding this fraction, there will be one term $C\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)$, C being a quantity of the third order;

the integral of which will give, in the expression for t, a term $\frac{C}{m}\sin(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)$, the coefficient of which is of the second order. Now the principal object, in the lunar theory, is to find θ in terms of t; for which purpose, t must be found in terms of θ. In our equation, then, whose result is intended to comprehend all terms of the second order, it is proper to include the term $C\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)$. And, generally, it will be proper to include in our equation all those terms of the third order, in which the coefficient of θ is small, as well as those in which it is nearly $=1$*.

47. Upon examining the equation for s, (l), (Art. 41), and observing that the principal term of $\frac{S-Ps}{u^3}$ is a multiple of s, (Art. 35), it will be seen, that the same remarks apply to it, as to that which determines u. Instead of taking $s=k\sin(\theta-\gamma)$, we must take $s=k\sin(g\theta-\gamma)$: and must preserve, among the terms of the third order, all those in which the coefficient of θ is nearly $=1$. We shall now integrate our equations accurately to the second order.

48. Prop. 16. To find the value of $\theta-\theta'$, $\sin 2(\theta-\theta')$, and $\cos 2(\theta-\theta')$, to the first order.

Since these, in every place in which they occur, are multiplied by a quantity of the second order; and since the products are to be retained only to the third order; we do not want to find the values of $\theta-\theta'$ &c. beyond the first order. And to find θ' in terms of θ to this order, we must find t in terms of θ, and θ' in terms of t.

$$\text{Now } \frac{dt}{d\theta}=\frac{1}{hu^2\left(1+2\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^3u^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}};$$

* If the expression for $\frac{T}{h^3u^3}$ contained the sine of an arc with a small multiple of θ, this term would be twice integrated $\left(\text{first in forming } \int_\theta \frac{T}{h^3u^3}, \text{ secondly in integrating } \frac{dt}{d\theta}\right)$, and would thus be twice multiplied: and it would be necessary to look still further into the development of the equation. No such term, however, occurs in this part of the Lunar Theory.

which to the first order $= \frac{1}{hu^2}$

$$= \frac{1}{ha^2} \frac{1}{\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}^2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{ha^2}\{1 - 2e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}:$$

integrating, and supposing $t = 0$, when the Moon's mean longitude $= 0$,

$$t = \frac{1}{ha^2}\{\theta - \frac{2e}{c}\sin(c\theta - \alpha)\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{ha^2}\{\theta - 2e\sin(c\theta - \alpha)\}.$$

Also, as the Sun's mean motion, since t was $= 0$, is nt, and therefore his mean longitude $= nt + \beta$ (β being his mean longitude, when $t = 0$), and his mean anomaly, consequently, $= nt + \beta - \zeta$, we have, by (19), θ' = Sun's true longitude

$$= nt + \beta + 2e'\sin(nt + \beta - \zeta).$$

Now $nt + \beta = \frac{n}{ha^2}\{\theta - 2e\sin(c\theta - \alpha)\} + \beta$:

or, since the coefficient of θ must be m,

$$nt + \beta = m\theta + \beta,$$

{neglecting $-2me\sin(c\theta - \alpha)$, which is of the second order;}

$$\therefore \sin(nt + \beta - \zeta) = \sin(m\theta + \beta - \zeta);$$

$$\theta' = (m\theta + \beta) + 2e'\sin(m\theta + \beta - \zeta),$$

$$\text{and } (\theta - \theta') = \{(1 - m)\theta - \beta\} - 2e'\sin(m\theta + \beta - \zeta):$$

$$2(\theta - \theta') = \{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} - 4e'\sin(m\theta + \beta - \zeta),$$

which we shall call $\{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} - p$.

49. We have now to find to the first order

$\sin[\{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} - p]$, and $\cos[\{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} - p]$, p being of the first order.

Now $\sin[\{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} - p]$

$= \sin\{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} \cdot \cos p - \cos\{(2 - 2m)\theta - 2\beta\} \cdot \sin p.$

But cos p, or $1-\frac{p^2}{2}+$ &c., differs from 1 only by a quantity of the second order; and sin p, or $p-\frac{p^3}{6}+$ &c., differs from p only by a quantity of the third order;

$$\therefore \sin[\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-p]$$
$$=\sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-p\,.\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}:$$

which, putting for p its value $4e'\sin(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)$, gives

$$\sin 2(\theta-\theta') = \sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}$$
$$-4e'\sin(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)\,.\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}$$
$$=\sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-2e'\sin\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}$$
$$+2e'\sin\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}.$$

Similarly,

$$\cos 2(\theta-\theta')=\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-2e'\cos\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}$$
$$+2e'\cos\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}.$$

50. Prop. 17. To find the value of $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$ to the third order.

The first part is $\frac{\mu}{h^2}(1-\frac{3}{2}s^2)$,

$$\text{or } a\{1-\frac{3k^2}{4}+\frac{3k^2}{4}\cos(2g\theta-2\gamma)\}.$$

The second part is $-\frac{m'u'^2}{2h^2u^3}$,

$$\text{or } -\frac{m'a'^3}{2h^2a^3}\{1+e'\cos(\theta'-\zeta)\}^2\,.\,\{1+e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}^{-3}$$

$$=-\frac{m'a'^3}{2h^2a^3}\{1+3e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)-3e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}$$

$$=\text{as in (41)},\ -\frac{m'^2a}{2}\{1+3e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)-3e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}.$$

Since the coefficient of θ in the first arc is small, and in the second is nearly = 1, all the terms must be preserved.

The third part is

$$-\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m'u'^2}{h^2u^3}\cdot\cos 2(\theta-\theta'),$$

$$\text{or } -\frac{3}{2}m^2a\{1+3e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta\}-3e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}$$

$$\times[\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-2e'\cos\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}$$

$$+2e'\cos\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}].$$

Multiplying together these series, and setting down all the terms of the third order, we have

$$-\frac{3}{2}m^2a\begin{cases}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}+\frac{3e'}{2}\cos\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}\\ +\frac{3e'}{2}\cos\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}\\ -\frac{3e}{2}\cos\{(2-2m+c)\theta-2\beta-\alpha\}\\ -\frac{3e}{2}\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}\\ -2e'\cos\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}\\ +2e'\cos\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\},\end{cases}$$

Of this the only part which must be preserved, is

$$-\frac{3}{2}m^2a\left[\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-\frac{3e}{2}\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}\right],$$

because the coefficients of θ in the other terms (all which are of the third order), namely $2-m$, $2-3m$, $2-2m+c$, are neither small nor nearly equal to 1.

The remaining terms of $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$ are of the fourth order.

Hence our value of $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$ is

$$a\{1-\frac{3k^2}{4}+\frac{3k^2}{4}\cos(2g\theta-2\gamma)\}$$

$$-\frac{m^2a}{2}[1+3e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)-3e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)+3\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}$$

$$-\frac{9e}{2}\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}].$$

51. PROP. 18. To find the values of

$$\frac{T}{h^2u^2},\ \int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^2},\ \left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u\right)2\int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^2},\ \text{and}\ \frac{T}{h^2u^2}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta},$$

to the third order.

The only term of $\frac{T}{h^2u^2}$ to be taken here, is

$$-\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m'u'^2}{h^2u^4}\cdot\sin 2(\theta-\theta'),$$

(the others being of the fourth order), or, as in (50),

$$-\frac{3}{2}m^2\{1+3e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)-4e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}\times$$

$$[\sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-2e'\sin\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}$$

$$+2e'\sin\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}],$$

which

$$=-\frac{3}{2}m^2\begin{cases}\sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}+\frac{3e'}{2}\sin\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}\\ \quad+\frac{3e'}{2}\sin\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}\\ \quad-2e\sin\{(2-2m+c)\theta-2\beta-\alpha\}\\ \quad-2e\sin\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}\\ \quad-2e'\sin\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\}\\ \quad+2e'\sin\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\}.\end{cases}$$

52. Now, since $u=a\{1+e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\}$,

$$\frac{du}{d\theta}=-cae\sin(c\theta-\alpha)=-ae\sin(c\theta-\alpha),\ \text{very nearly.}$$

As this is a quantity of the first order, we shall use only the first term of $\frac{T}{h^2u^2}$ to multiply with it (because the product of ae by the other terms would be of the fourth order);

$$\therefore \frac{T}{h^2u^2}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta} = \frac{3}{4}m^2ae\left[\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}\right.$$
$$\left.-\cos\{(2-2m+c)\theta-2\beta-\alpha\}\right].$$

The only term to be preserved, is

$$\frac{3}{4}am^2e\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}.$$

53. Also $\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^2u^2}$

$$= \frac{3}{2}m^2\left\{\begin{array}{l} \frac{1}{2-2m}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\} \\ -\frac{e'}{4-2m}\cos\{(2-m)\theta-\beta-\zeta\} \\ +\frac{7e'}{4-6m}\cos\{(2-3m)\theta-3\beta+\zeta\} \\ -\frac{2e}{2-2m+c}\cos\{(2-2m+c)\theta-2\beta-\alpha\} \\ -\frac{2e}{2-2m-c}\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}, \end{array}\right.$$

where the first term is of the second order, and all the others are of the third order.

And $\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u$, to the first order, is a;

$$\therefore 2\left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2}+u\right)\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^2u^2},$$

retaining only that term of the third order which will be increased on integration, and putting $\frac{1}{2}$ for $\frac{1}{2-2m}$ in the coefficient of the term of the second order, and $2e$ for $\frac{2e}{2-2m-c}$ (45) in the last term, becomes

$$3m^2a\left[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}-2e\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}\right].$$

54. PROP. 19. To form the differential equation for u.

Collecting the terms, and substituting them in the equation of (41), we have

$$\text{First, } \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u$$

$$= \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u.$$

$$\text{Second, } \left(\frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u\right) 2\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^2u^2}$$

$$= 3m^2a\left[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta\}\right.$$

$$\left. - 2e\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\}\right]. \quad \text{(Article 53.)}$$

$$\text{Third, } -\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$$

$$= -a\left\{1 - \frac{3k^2}{4} + \frac{3k^2}{4}\cos(2g\theta - 2\gamma)\right\} + \frac{m^2a}{2}$$

$$+ \frac{m^2a}{2}\{3e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta) - 3e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}$$

$$+ \frac{m^2a}{2}\left[3\cos\{(2-2m)\,\theta - 2\beta\} - \frac{9e}{2}\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\}\right]$$

(Article 50).

$$\text{Fourth, } + \frac{T}{h^2u^2}\cdot\frac{du}{d\theta}$$

$$= +\frac{3}{4}m^2ae\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\}. \quad \text{(Article 52.)}$$

Taking the sum, by (41),

$$0 = \frac{d^2u}{d\theta^2} + u - a\left(1 - \frac{3k^2}{4} - \frac{m^2}{2}\right)$$

$$- \frac{3m^2ae}{2}\cos(c\theta - \alpha) - \frac{3k^2a}{4}\cos(2g\theta - 2\gamma)$$

$$+ 3m^2a\cos\{(2-2m)\,\theta - 2\beta\} - \frac{15}{2}m^2ae\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\}$$

$$+ \frac{3}{2}m^2ae'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta).$$

55. PROP. 20. To integrate accurately to the second order the differential equation for u.

$$\text{Assume } u = a\left[1 - \frac{3k^2}{4} - \frac{m^2}{2} + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\right.$$

$$+ A\cos(2g\theta - 2\gamma) + B\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}$$

$$\left. + C\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\} + D\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta)\right],$$

according to the direction in (6).

Substituting this value in the differential equation, and making $= 0$ the coefficient of each cosine,

$$ae(1-c^2) - \frac{3m^2ae}{2} = 0;$$

$$\therefore\ c^2 = 1 - \frac{3m^2}{2},\quad c = 1 - \frac{3m^2}{4},\ \text{nearly.}$$

$$aA(1-4g^2) - \frac{3k^2a}{4} = 0;$$

$$\therefore\ A = \frac{3k^2}{4(1-4g^2)} = -\frac{k^2}{4},\ \text{nearly, since } g \text{ nearly} = 1.$$

$$aB\{1-(2-2m)^2\} + 3m^2a = 0;$$

$$\therefore\ B = \frac{3m^2}{(2-2m)^2 - 1} = m^2,\ \text{nearly.}$$

$$aC\{1-(2-2m-c)^2\} - \frac{15}{2}m^2ae = 0;$$

$$\therefore\ C = \frac{15}{2}\cdot\frac{m^2e}{1-(2-2m-c)^2} = \frac{15}{2}\cdot\frac{m^2e}{1-(1-2m)^2},\ \text{nearly,}$$

$$(\text{since } c \text{ nearly} = 1) = \frac{15}{8}me,\ \text{nearly,}$$

$$aD(1-m^2) + \frac{3}{2}m^2ae' = 0;$$

$$\therefore\ D = -\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m^2e'}{1-m^2} = -\frac{3}{2}m^2e',\ \text{nearly.}$$

And u therefore $= a\,[1 - \frac{3k^2}{4} - \frac{m^2}{2} + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)$

$$- \frac{k^2}{4}\cos(2g\theta - 2\gamma) + m^2\cos\{(2-2m)\,\theta - 2\beta\}$$

$$+ \frac{15}{8}me\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\} - \frac{3}{2}m^2e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta)].$$

56. PROP. 21. To form the differential equation for s.

First, s, as we have observed, will be approximately represented by $k\sin(g\theta - \gamma)$, where g differs little from 1; the difference, which is caused entirely by the disturbing force, being of the second order. Hence,

$$\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2} + s, \text{ or } k(1-g^2)\sin(g\theta - \gamma),$$

will be small, of the third order: consequently, the term

$$\left(\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2} + s\right) 2\int_\theta \frac{T}{h^2u^3},$$

in equation (l) of Art. 41, will be of the fifth order, and is not to be considered.

$$\text{Second, } \frac{S - Ps}{h^2u^3}, \text{ or } m's\frac{u'^3}{u^4}\left\{\frac{3}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta - \theta')\right\}$$

$$= \frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^4}\cdot\frac{\{1 + e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta)\}^3}{\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\}^4}k\sin(g\theta - \gamma)\left\{\frac{3}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta - \theta')\right\}.$$

Now $\frac{m'a'^3}{h^2a^4}k$ or m^2k, form a product of the third order: hence, in the quantities which multiply them, all small terms are to be rejected;

$$\therefore \frac{S - Ps}{h^2u^3} = m^2k\sin(g\theta - \gamma)\left[\frac{3}{2} + \frac{3}{2}\cos\{(2-2m)\,\theta - 2\beta\}\right]$$

$$= m^2k\left[\frac{3}{2}\sin(g\theta - \gamma) + \frac{3}{4}\sin\{(2-2m+g)\,\theta - 2\beta - \gamma\}\right.$$

$$\left. - \frac{3}{4}\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta - 2\beta + \gamma\}\right].$$

The only terms to be preserved are

$$m^2k\left[\frac{3}{2}\sin(g\theta-\gamma)-\frac{3}{4}\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\}\right];$$

because g is very nearly $=1$, and $2-2m-g=1-2m$, nearly, and therefore differs little from 1: and therefore, by (45) and (47), both these terms, on integration, will be important.

Third, $\frac{ds}{d\theta}=kg\cos(g\theta-\gamma)=k\cos(g\theta-\gamma)$ nearly,

which is of the first order; taking therefore the first term only of the expression for $\frac{T}{h^2u^5}$, that is, (51)

$$-\frac{3}{2}m^2\sin\{(2-2m)\,\theta-2\beta\},$$

we have

$$\frac{T}{h^2u^5}\cdot\frac{ds}{d\theta}=-\frac{3}{2}m^2k\,.\cos(g\theta-\gamma)\,.\sin\{(2-2m)\,\theta-2\beta\}$$

$$=-\frac{3}{4}m^2k\left[\sin\{(2-2m+g)\,\theta-2\beta-\gamma\}+\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\}\right].$$

The only term to be preserved is

$$-\frac{3}{4}m^2k\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\}.$$

Collecting these parts, the equation (l) of (41) becomes

$$0=\frac{d^2s}{d\theta^2}+s+\frac{3}{2}m^2k\sin(g\theta-\gamma)-\frac{3}{2}m^2k\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\}.$$

57. PROP. 22. To integrate the differential equation for s.

Assume $s=k\left[\sin(g\theta-\gamma)+A\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\}\right]$, and substitute in the equation above: then, making $=0$ the coefficient of each sine,

$$k(1-g^2)+\frac{3}{2}m^2k=0\,;\qquad\therefore\ g^2=1+\frac{3}{2}m^2;$$

$$kA\{1-(2-2m-g)^2\}-\frac{3}{2}m^2k=0;$$

$$\therefore\ A=\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m^2}{1-(2-2m-g)^2}$$

$$=\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m^2}{1-(1-2m)^2}\text{ nearly}=\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{m^2}{4m}\text{ nearly}=\frac{3m}{8};$$

$$\therefore\ s=k\left[\sin(g\theta-\gamma)+\frac{3m}{8}\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\}\right],$$

to the second order.

58. Prop. 23. To find t in terms of θ to the second order.

We must expand $\frac{dt}{d\theta}$ or $\frac{1}{hu^2\left(1+2\int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$ to the second order, preserving those terms of the third order in which the coefficient of θ is small. Putting then for u the value found in Article 55, and for $\int_\theta\frac{T}{h^2u^3}$ the first term of its value in Article 53,

$$\frac{dt}{d\theta}=\frac{1}{ha^2}\left[1+\frac{3k^2}{2}+m^2-2e\cos(c\theta-\alpha)\right.$$

$$+\frac{3e^2}{2}+\frac{3e^2}{2}\cos(2c\theta-2\alpha)+\frac{k^2}{2}\cos(2g\theta-2\gamma)$$

$$-2m^2\cos\{(2-2m)\,\theta-2\beta\}-\frac{15}{4}me\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}$$

$$\left.+3m^2e'\cos(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)-\frac{3}{4}m^2\cos\{(2-2m)\,\theta-2\beta\}\right].$$

Integrating this, and taking the coefficients to the second order only,

$$t=\frac{1}{ha^2}\left[\left(1+\frac{3k^2}{2}+m^2+\frac{3e^2}{2}\right)\theta-2e\sin(c\theta-\alpha)\right.$$

$$+\frac{3e^2}{4}\sin(2c\theta-2\alpha)+\frac{k^2}{4}\sin(2g\theta-2\gamma)$$

$$-\frac{11}{8}m^2\sin\{(2-2m)\,\theta-2\beta\}$$

$$\left.-\frac{15}{4}me\sin\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}+3me'\sin(m\theta+\beta-\zeta)\right].$$

$$\text{Let } \frac{ha^2}{1+\frac{3k^2}{2}+m^2+\frac{3e^2}{2}} = p: \text{ then}$$

$$pt = \theta - 2e\sin(c\theta-\alpha) + \frac{3e^2}{4}\sin(2c\theta-2\alpha)$$

$$+\frac{k^2}{4}\sin(2g\theta-2\gamma) - \frac{11}{8}m^2\sin\{(2-2m)\theta-2\beta\}$$

$$-\frac{15}{4}me\sin\{(2-2m-c)\theta-2\beta+\alpha\} + 3me'\sin(m\theta+\beta-\zeta),$$

omitting the divisor $1+\frac{3k^2}{2}+m^2+\frac{3e^2}{2}$ in all the terms after the first, as their value is not sensibly altered by it.

59. PROP. 24. To find θ in terms of t to the second order.

This must be done by Lagrange's theorem. Applying it,

$$\theta = pt + 2e\sin(cpt-\alpha) + \frac{5e^2}{4}\sin(2cpt-2\alpha)$$

$$-\frac{k^2}{4}\sin(2gpt-2\gamma) + \frac{11}{8}m^2\sin\{(2-2m)pt-2\beta\}$$

$$+\frac{15}{4}me\sin\{(2-2m-c)pt-2\beta+\alpha\} - 3me'\sin(mpt+\beta-\zeta).$$

60. PROP. 25. To find expressions for the reciprocal of the Moon's distance, and for the Moon's parallax.

The reciprocal of the Moon's distance

$$= \frac{1}{r} = \frac{1}{\rho(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{u}{(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = u\left(1-\frac{s^2}{2}\right),$$

$$\text{or } = u\{1-\frac{k^2}{4}+\frac{k^2}{4}\cos(2g\theta-2\gamma)\}.$$

Taking for u the expression found in Article 55, the reciprocal of the Moon's distance

$$= a\left[1 - k^2 - \frac{m^2}{2} + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha) + m^2\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}\right.$$

$$\left. + \frac{15}{8}me\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\}\right]:$$

omitting the term $-\frac{3}{2}m^2e'\cos(m\theta + \beta - \zeta)$ which is of the third order.

The Moon's parallax varies inversely as her distance from the Earth, or $\propto u$, and therefore is expressed by a formula similar to that above, with a different factor before the bracket. If P be the mean parallax, that is, that part of the expression independent of cosines, the parallax

$$= P\left[1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha) + m^2\cos\{(2-2m)\theta - 2\beta\}\right.$$

$$\left. + \frac{15}{8}me\cos\{(2-2m-c)\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\}\right].$$

*60. The constant term of the reciprocal of the Moon's distance is $a\left(1 - k^2 - \frac{m^2}{2}\right)$. Now in an ellipse whose semiaxis major $= A$, the constant term of reciprocal of Moon's distance is $\frac{1}{A(1-e^2)}$ (11). Therefore the semiaxis major A of the ellipse which differs from the Moon's orbit only by periodic terms, is

$$\frac{1}{a}\left(1 + e^2 + k^2 + \frac{m^2}{2}\right).$$

The value of p in (58), substituting for h its value from (39), becomes

$$\mu^2 . a^2\left\{1 - \frac{3k^2}{2} - m^2 - \frac{3e^2}{2}\right\}.$$

$$\text{Consequently } A^2p^2 = \mu\left(1 - \frac{m^2}{2}\right).$$

But by (15), observing that $M + M'$, a, n, there, correspond to μ, A, p, here, we should have in an undisturbed orbit

$$A^2p^2 = \mu.$$

Hence, the relation between the Moon's mean distance and mean angular motion, as disturbed, is not the same as in an undisturbed orbit; for a given mean distance the mean motion is less, or for a given mean motion the mean distance is less, than in an undisturbed orbit.

61. PROP. 26. To explain the effect of the different terms in the expression for the reciprocal of the Moon's distance.

The first and greatest inequality of the reciprocal of the Moon's distance is

$$ae \cos c\left(\theta - \frac{\alpha}{c}\right).$$

This, though similar to the inequality which would exist in an elliptic orbit, is not exactly the same, but it would be the same if it depended on the angle $\theta - \frac{\alpha}{c}$ instead of $c\left(\theta - \frac{\alpha}{c}\right)$. Let then EA, fig. 4, be the Moon's least distance: EM any other distance: $\angle AEM = \theta - \frac{\alpha}{c}$: let AmB be an ellipse, whose semi-latus rectum is $\frac{1}{a}$, and eccentricity e: take $\angle AEm = c \times \angle AEM$ (c being < 1): then, EM will $= Em$. For

$$\frac{1}{Em} = a\,(1 + e\cos AEm) = a\,\{1 + e\cos(c\theta - \alpha)\} = \frac{1}{EM}.$$

If now an ellipse aMb be described similar and equal to AmB, whose major axis ab is inclined to AB at an angle equal to mEM, or $(1-c)\left(\theta - \frac{\alpha}{c}\right)$, M will evidently be found in its circumference, and the arc aM will be $= Am$. Hence, the motion of M may be represented by supposing it to move in an ellipse, and supposing that ellipse to revolve in the same direction, with an angular velocity which is to the whole angular velocity of M as $1-c : 1$; or which is to the angular velocity of M in that moveable orbit as $1-c$ to c. The perigee of the Moon's orbit therefore is not fixed, but (while we neglect the other terms of the parallax) moves almost uniformly in the direction of the Moon's motion. (*Newton*, Lib. I. Prop. 66, Cor. 7.)

Or we may state the matter thus,

$$e \cos (c\theta - \alpha) = e \cos [\theta - \{(1-c)\,\theta + \alpha\}]:$$

and this expression is similar to the expression in an elliptic orbit with purely elliptic elements, provided that the longitude of perigee is not the invariable constant α, but is the slowly varying quantity $\{(1-c)\,\theta + \alpha\}$: that is, provided that the longitude of perigee increases with an angular velocity $= (1-c)$ $\times$ whole angular velocity of the Moon.

62. For the explanation of the next term,

$$m^2 \cos \{(2-2m)\,\theta - 2\beta\},$$

we observe that $\{(1-m)\,\theta - \beta\}$ (Article 48) is nearly the difference of longitude of the Sun and Moon, and consequently,

$$\cos \{(2-2m)\,\theta - 2\beta\}$$

is greatest, when the Moon is in syzygies, and least (or has its greatest negative value), when she is in quadratures; and between these situations, it has all the intermediate values. The Moon's parallax therefore, setting aside the elliptic inequality, is greatest in syzygies, and least in quadratures; and therefore her distance is least in syzygies, and greatest in quadratures. (*Newton*, Prop. 66, Cor. 5.)

63. The next term,

$$\frac{15}{8} me \cos \{(2-2m-c)\,\theta - 2\beta + \alpha\},$$

shews its influence by the alteration of the eccentricity of the Moon's orbit. To prove this, let us suppose that when $\theta = 0$, the Moon, and the axis of the Moon's orbit, were in syzygies: that is, suppose $\alpha = 0$ (which makes the anomaly or $c\theta - \alpha = 0$ when $\theta = 0$); and suppose $\beta = 0$, or 180°, (which makes the Sun's longitude, or $m\theta + \beta$, $= 0$ or 180°, when $\theta = 0$): then, (considering only the elliptic inequality, and the present one) parallax

$$= P[1 + e \cos c\theta + \frac{15}{8} me \cos \{(2-2m-c)\,\theta\}]:$$

and, since c and $2-2m-c$ each nearly $= 1$, the Moon's parallax, for one revolution, will be nearly represented by the expression

$$P\{1 + (e + \frac{15}{8} me) \cos \theta\},$$

which is the same as in an orbit, whose eccentricity

$$= e\,(1 + \frac{15}{8} m).$$

Again, suppose that, when $\theta = 0$, the Moon is at her apse, and the Sun's longitude $= -90^\circ$, or $\beta = -90^\circ$: then, when the Moon's longitude $= \theta$, her parallax

$$= P[1 + e \cos c\theta + \frac{15}{8} me \cos \{(2 - 2m - c)\,\theta + 180^\circ\}]:$$

which, for a single revolution, is nearly represented by

$$P\{1 + e \cos \theta + \frac{15}{8} me \cos (\theta + 180^\circ)\},$$

$$\text{or } P\{1 + (e - \frac{15}{8} me) \cos \theta\}:$$

and here the apparent eccentricity is

$$e\,(1 - \frac{15}{8} m).$$

The eccentricity therefore is increased by this term when the axis of the Moon's orbit is in syzygies, and diminished when it is in quadratures (*Newton*, Prop. 66, Cor. 9): its effect in intermediate situations we shall consider presently.

64. Corresponding to these inequalities of parallax, there are, in the expression for the Moon's longitude, the terms

$$2e \sin (cpt - \alpha) + \frac{5e^2}{4} \sin (2cpt - 2\alpha),$$

$$\frac{11}{8} m^2 \sin \{(2 - 2m)\,pt - 2\beta\},$$

$$\text{and } \frac{15}{4} me \sin \{(2 - 2m - c)\,pt - 2\beta + \alpha\}, \text{ (Article 59).}$$

The first two depend on the eccentricity e and the mean distance from the perigee $cpt - \alpha$: their sum constitutes the *elliptic inequality* in longitude. Its maximum is about 22692″. The next term, which is called the *variation*, is proportional to

$$\sin 2\,\{pt - (mpt + \beta)\},$$

or sin 2 (Moon's mean longitude – Sun's mean longitude). It is therefore = 0 when the Moon is in conjunction; it is greatest and positive when the difference of longitudes = 45°; it is again = 0 when the difference = 90°, or when the Moon is at quadrature: it has its greatest negative value when that difference = 135°; and is again = 0 when the difference of longitudes = 180°, or when the Moon is in opposition. The maximum value of this inequality is 2138″. The Moon's true place therefore is before the mean place from syzygy to quadrature, and behind it from quadrature to syzygy. (*Newton*, Lib. III. Prop. 29.) The last term, depending on

$$\sin\{(2-2m-c)\,pt-2\beta+\alpha\},$$

is called the *evection:* its maximum (when carefully computed from a rather slowly converging series) is 4825″; it appears to increase the elliptic inequality when the axis of the Moon's orbit is in syzygies, and to diminish it when that axis is in quadratures: the reasoning of the last article applies to it in every respect.

There are, besides, (Article 59) these terms,

$$-\frac{k^2}{4}\sin(2gpt-2\gamma), \text{ and } -3me'\sin(mpt+\beta-\zeta).$$

The former of these, whose maximum is 412″, depends upon the Moon's distance from the mean place of her node, and is nearly the difference between her longitude, measured on her orbit*, and her longitude, measured on the ecliptic: it is called the *reduction.* The latter depends on the Sun's mean anomaly: its maximum is 659″; it appears that, while the Sun (apparently) goes from perigee to apogee, the Moon's true place is behind her mean place: while the Sun goes from apogee to perigee, the Moon's true place is before her mean place. (*Newton*, Prop. 66, Cor. 6.) This is called the *annual equation.* The alteration in the parallax, from this cause, is very small, being of the third order (see the last term in the expression for u, Art. 55).

* That is, measured from the first point of Aries upon the plane of the ecliptic to the node of the Moon's orbit, and then from the node upon the plane of the orbit to the Moon.

65. In respect of magnitude, the evection is far the most important of the inequalities which are produced by the disturbing force of the Sun. And its effect on the position and eccentricity of the Moon's orbit is so remarkable, that we shall here consider it a little more generally than in Art. 63.

66. PROP. 27. To determine the change in the position of the axis, and in the eccentricity of the Moon's orbit, produced by the evection.

The elliptic inequality and evection, in the expression for u, are together represented by

$$e\,[\cos(c\theta-\alpha)+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\{(2-2m-c)\,\theta-2\beta+\alpha\}].$$

Put ϵ for $\{(2-2m-2c)\,\theta-2\beta+2\alpha\}$; then the expression becomes

$$e\,\{\cos(c\theta-\alpha)+\frac{15}{8}m\cos(\epsilon+c\theta-\alpha)\}$$

$$=e\,\{1+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\epsilon\}\cos(c\theta-\alpha)-e\frac{15}{8}m\sin\epsilon\,.\sin(c\theta-\alpha).$$

This may be put under the form $E\cos(c\theta-\alpha+\delta)$, if

$$E\cos\delta=e\,(1+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\epsilon),\quad E\sin\delta=e\frac{15}{8}m\sin\epsilon.$$

From these equations,

$$\delta \text{ or } \tan\delta=\frac{\frac{15}{8}m\sin\epsilon}{1+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\epsilon}=\frac{15}{8}m\sin\epsilon,\text{ nearly};$$

$$E=e\sqrt{\left\{\left(1+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\epsilon\right)^2+\left(\frac{15}{8}m\sin\epsilon\right)^2\right\}}$$

$$=e\,(1+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\epsilon),\text{ nearly.}$$

And the united inequalities are represented by

$$e(1+\frac{15}{8}m\cos\epsilon).\cos(c\theta-\alpha+\frac{15}{8}m\sin\epsilon).$$

This is the same as the expression for the elliptic inequality in an orbit whose eccentricity

$$= e\,(1 + \frac{15}{8} m \cos \epsilon),$$

and in which the longitude of perigee

$$= \alpha - \frac{15}{8} m \sin \epsilon.$$

Now $\epsilon = (2 - 2m)\,\theta - 2\beta - 2\,(c\theta - \alpha)$

$= 2$ (excess of Moon's longitude over Sun's longitude)

$- 2$ (angle AEm or aEM in (61))

$= 2$ (excess of Moon's longitude over Sun's longitude)

$- 2$ (excess of Moon's longitude over longitude of momentary place of perigee)

$= 2$ (longitude of perigee $-$ Sun's longitude).

Hence, to find the Moon's place, when we have found the longitude of the perigee on the supposition of its uniform progression, we must subtract from that longitude

$$\frac{15}{8} m \sin 2 \text{ (long. perigee} - \text{long. Sun)},$$

and we must apply the equation due to an elliptic orbit, whose eccentricity

$$= e\,\{1 + \frac{15}{8} m \cos 2 \text{ (long. perigee} - \text{long. Sun)}\}.$$

(*Newton*, Lib. III. *Scholium to the Lunar Theory*).

67. PROP. 28. To explain the effect of the terms in the expression for s.

The first of these is $k \sin g\left(\theta - \frac{\gamma}{g}\right)$. If this depended on $\theta - \frac{\gamma}{g}$, it would shew that the Moon moved in a plane (39). But, as it depends on $g\theta - \gamma$, or $\theta - \{\gamma - (g-1)\,\theta\}$, the Moon's motion in latitude may be represented by supposing her to move in a plane, the tangent of whose inclination to the ecliptic is k, (the inclination is 18518″ nearly), and supposing the intersection

of this plane with the ecliptic to move with a retrograde motion which is to the whole motion of the Moon as $g-1 : 1$, and which therefore is nearly uniform. This is exactly analogous to the motion of the perigee in (61), with the single difference, that c being <1, and $g>1$, the motion in one case is direct, and in the other, retrograde.

68. The second term

$$k\frac{3m}{8}\sin\{(2-2m-g)\,\theta-2\beta+\gamma\},$$

whose coefficient is 526″ nearly, has precisely the same relation to the first, which the evection has to the elliptic inequality; and the alteration which it produces in the place of the node and the inclination of the orbit, may be found in the same manner. Thus, put η for $\{(2-2m-2g)\,\theta-2\beta+2\gamma\}$: then the sum of the two terms for s becomes

$$k\{\sin(g\theta-\gamma)+\frac{3m}{8}\sin(\eta+g\theta-\gamma)\}$$

$$=k(1+\frac{3m}{8}\cos\eta)\,.\,\sin(g\theta-\gamma)+k\frac{3m}{8}\sin\eta\,.\,\cos(g\theta-\gamma).$$

This may be put under the form $K\sin(g\theta-\gamma+\kappa)$, if

$$K\sin\kappa=k\frac{3m}{8}\sin\eta,\quad K\cos\kappa=k(1+\frac{3m}{8}\cos\eta).$$

These equations give

$$\kappa \text{ or } \tan\kappa=\frac{3m}{8}\sin\eta,$$

$$K=k(1+\frac{3m}{8}\cos\eta).$$

And the sum of the two terms is represented by

$$k(1+\frac{3m}{8}\cos\eta)\,.\,\sin(g\theta-\gamma+\frac{3m}{8}\sin\eta).$$

This is the same as the expression for the tangent of latitude in an orbit, in which the tangent of the inclination of the orbit

$$=k(1+\frac{3m}{8}\cos\eta),$$

and in which the longitude of the node

$$= \gamma - \frac{3m}{8} \sin \eta.$$

Now $\eta = (2 - 2m)\,\theta - 2\beta - 2\,(g\theta - \gamma)$

$= 2$ (excess of Moon's longitude over Sun's longitude)

$- 2$ (angle upon which the Moon's latitude depends)

$= 2$ (excess of Moon's longitude over Sun's longitude)

$- 2$ (excess of Moon's longitude over longitude of momentary place of node)

$= 2$ (longitude of node $-$ Sun's longitude).

When therefore the longitude of the node is found on the supposition of its uniform retrogradation, we must subtract from it

$$\frac{3m}{8} \sin 2 \text{ (long. node} - \text{long. Sun)};$$

and, taking that for the true longitude of the node, we must suppose the tangent of inclination

$$= k\,\{1 + \frac{3m}{8} \cos 2 \text{ (long. node} - \text{long. Sun)}\}.$$

(*Newton*, Lib. III. Prop. 33, and 35.)

69. From this expression it is evident that the inclination of the orbit is greatest when $\gamma - \beta = 0$ or 180°, that is, when the line of nodes is in syzygies; and least, when $\gamma - \beta = 90^\circ$ or 270°, that is, when the line of nodes is in quadratures. (*Newton*, Prop. 66, Cor. 10.)

70. In the same manner in which we have approximated to the values of u and θ to the second order, we might go on to the third and higher orders. For the third order, it would be necessary to examine the terms of the equation to the fourth order; and thus the last terms, in the expressions for $\frac{P}{h^2 u^2}$, &c., in Art. 35, would be employed. As the method of conducting all these approximations must be the same, we shall here mention the several steps.

(1) From the last approximate value, find t in terms of θ.

(2) Since θ' is, by the elliptic theory, found in terms of t, it can be expressed in terms of θ; and $\theta - \theta'$, $2(\theta - \theta')$, &c. can be expressed. u' also, which is known in terms of θ', can be expressed in terms of θ.

(3) Find expressions for $\sin 2(\theta - \theta')$, $\cos 2(\theta - \theta')$, &c. to as many orders as may be necessary.

(4) Substitute these values, and the last approximate value of u, in the expressions for $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$, &c.

(5) When these are substituted in the equation, integrate it, as for the second order.

(6) Proceed in the same way in every respect, for the determination of s.

71. In carrying the approximation to higher orders, it sometimes happens, that a term will rise, by integration, two orders*; as for instance, a term of the sixth order in the equation may rise to the fourth order in the solution. Now, to form the equation completely to the sixth order, it is necessary to employ the value of u, &c., accurate to the fourth order: and consequently we ought to have used the very term which we are seeking. It is evident that this will be done by the following process. As soon as the operations have shewn that such a term of the sixth order will be produced in the equation, a similar term with indeterminate coefficient must be introduced in the value of u, which is intended to be used as complete to the fourth order: and when the equation is solved, the comparison of similar terms will determine the value of the indeterminate coefficient.

72. We shall here mention some of the most interesting results of the next approximation. (1) The last terms in the expressions for $\frac{P}{h^2u^2}$, &c. introduce into the equation for u

* An instance of this will be seen in the Tract on the Figure of the Earth, Art. 71.

multiples of $m^2 . \frac{a'}{a} . \frac{E-M}{\mu} . \cos\{(1-m)\theta - \beta\}$, of the fourth order; which, upon integration, rise to the third order (the coefficient of θ differing little from 1); and the corresponding inequality in longitude is of the third order. The comparison of the value of this inequality as observed (amounting, at its maximum, to 122″) with its computed value, gives us the means of determining $\frac{a'}{a}\left(\frac{M}{E}\right.$ being known pretty exactly, and therefore, $\frac{E-M}{\mu}$ or $\frac{E-M}{E+M}$ being known$\left.\right)$, that is, the ratio of the Sun's parallax to the Moon's. The latter of these is very well known from observation: hence, the former can be found. Its quantity thus determined agrees very exactly with that determined by transits of Venus.

In consequence of the applicability of this equation to determination of the Sun's parallax, it is usually called the *parallactic* equation. It was discovered by Newton, and in his *Theoria Lunæ* is called the 7th equation.

(2) The value of c, found by the second approximation, is $1 - \frac{3m^2}{4}$, which gives, for the progression of the perigee in a revolution of the Moon, $\frac{3m^2}{4} . 2\pi = 1^\circ . 30'$. This is about half its true quantity, which is $3^\circ . 2' . 22''$. By continuing the approximation, we find that c is expressed by a slowly converging series, of which the first terms are

$$1 - \frac{3}{4}m^2 - \frac{225}{32}m^3,$$

and the progression of the perigee in one revolution is

$$2\pi\left(\frac{3}{4}m^2 + \frac{225}{32}m^3 + \&c.\right).$$

On calculating a sufficient number of terms, the theoretical value of the progression of the perigee is found to agree most accurately with the observed value.

The series for g, on the contrary, converges fast; it is

$$1 + \frac{3}{4}m^2 - \frac{9}{32}m^3 + \&c.$$

and the regression of the node in one revolution is

$$2\pi\left(\frac{3}{4}m^2-\frac{9}{32}m^3+\&c.\right),$$

the computed value of which also agrees well with the observed value. The regression of the node is about half as rapid as the progression of the perigee. The ratio of the motion of the perigee to the motion of the node, which is expressed by the fraction

$$\frac{\frac{3}{4}m^2+\frac{225}{32}m^3+\&c.}{\frac{3}{4}m^2-\frac{9}{32}m^3+\&c.}, \text{ or } \frac{1+\frac{75}{8}m+\&c.}{1-\frac{3}{8}m+\&c.},$$

is much greater for the Moon, where $m=\frac{1}{13}$, than for one of Jupiter's satellites*, where m is extremely small. This is alluded to by *Newton*, Lib. III. Prop. 23.

73. Upon continuing the approximations, it appears that p, the coefficient of t in the Moon's mean longitude, depends upon e', and consequently, an alteration in e' produces an alteration in the Moon's mean motion. Now e', the eccentricity of the Sun's or Earth's orbit, is slowly diminishing from the attraction of the other planets, and this causes an increase in the Moon's mean motion. It is remarkable, that the indirect effect on the Moon is much greater than the direct effect on the Earth.

It is also found that small inequalities of very long period in u' and θ' (caused by the disturbing forces of planets upon the Earth) produce sensible effects of corresponding periods in the motion of the Moon.

*73. PROP. *28. To explain the method of computing the perturbations of the Moon's longitude† produced by the attraction of a planet.

---

* That is, supposing the motions of the perigee and node of Jupiter's satellites to be caused by the disturbing force of the Sun. In reality, the principal part of these motions is occasioned by the oblate form of Jupiter.

† No writer has thought it necessary to investigate the perturbations of the Moon in latitude produced by the planets.

Let Δ be the distance of the planet from the Earth, ψ its longitude as viewed from the Earth. Let Γ be the radius vector and ϕ the longitude of the Earth as viewed from the Sun: Γ' and ϕ' similar quantities for the disturbing planet. For simplicity, let the movements be supposed to be all in one plane.

The methods used for the perturbation of the Moon by the Sun will apply to the perturbation by a planet, provided that we can give the proper values to the expressions

$$\frac{1}{\Delta^3}\left\{\frac{1}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta-\psi)\right\},$$

$$\frac{1}{\Delta^3}\sin 2(\theta-\psi),$$

which correspond to the first parts of (f) and (g) in Article 35.

Now $\Delta\cos\psi=\Gamma'\cos\phi'-\Gamma\cos\phi$,

$\Delta\sin\psi=\Gamma'\sin\phi'-\Gamma\sin\phi$;

$\therefore\ \Delta^2=\Gamma'^2-2\Gamma\Gamma'\cos(\phi'-\phi)+\Gamma^2$,

and $\dfrac{1}{\Delta^3}=\dfrac{1}{\{\Gamma'^2-2\Gamma\Gamma'\cos(\phi'-\phi)+\Gamma^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}$,

which can be developed in terms of t by the processes to be explained in the Planetary Theory, Article 129.

Again, $\dfrac{1}{\Delta^5}\cos 2(\theta-\psi)$

$$=\frac{1}{\Delta^5}(\Delta^2\cos 2\psi\,.\cos 2\theta+\Delta^2\sin 2\psi\,.\sin 2\theta)$$

$$=\frac{1}{\Delta^5}\{(\Delta^2\cos^2\psi-\Delta^2\sin^2\psi)\cos 2\theta+2\Delta\cos\psi\,.\,\Delta\sin\psi\,.\sin 2\theta\}$$

$$=\frac{1}{\Delta^5}[\{\Gamma'^2\cos 2\phi'-2\Gamma\Gamma'\cos(\phi'+\phi)+\Gamma^2\cos 2\phi\}\cos 2\theta$$
$$+\{\Gamma'^2\sin 2\phi'-2\Gamma\Gamma'\sin(\phi'+\phi)+\Gamma^2\sin 2\phi\}\sin 2\theta]$$

$$=\frac{1}{\Delta^5}\{\Gamma'^2\cos 2(\theta-\phi')-2\Gamma\Gamma'\cos(2\theta-\phi-\phi')+\Gamma^2\cos 2(\theta-\phi)\},$$

all which can be developed in terms of t and θ. The expression for $\frac{1}{\Delta^3} \sin 2(\theta - \psi)$ is similar.

The process, after this, presents no difficulty, though it is extremely troublesome.

The introduction of the inclination of the planet's orbit to the ecliptic adds much to the complexity, even for perturbations in longitude only: as it affects the investigation of (f) and (g), and also modifies the expression for Δ.

74. It was supposed by Laplace and others that the coefficients of inequalities of a high order could never (practically) be deduced from theory, on account of the extreme labour of the investigations. Later writers, however, (Damoiseau, Plana, Lubbock, and Hansen) have in all cases calculated their terms from theory; and have thus succeeded in shewing that several terms, whose magnitude was supposed to be considerable, are in fact totally insensible. On the other hand, Hansen has thus brought to light two most remarkable inequalities in the Moon's motion, both produced by the action of Venus. One depends on

8 × mean anomaly of Venus − 13 × mean anomaly of Earth.

The other depends on

18 × mean anomaly of Venus − 16 × mean anomaly of Earth
− mean anomaly of Moon.

In both, the coefficients differ little from 25″; and in both, the periodic time of the inequality is between 200 and 300 years. The introduction of these inequalities has removed some well-marked discordances in the comparison of lunar theory with the lunar observations made from 1750 to the present time.

75. In the preceding investigations, we have supposed the Sun's perigee, or the Earth's perihelion, to be stationary. It has in reality a slow progressive motion, which will be represented by putting in all the expressions $c'\theta' - \zeta$ for $\theta' - \zeta$, where $c' = 0{,}999990779$.

PLANETARY THEORY.

76. In the same manner in which the Sun, revolving (apparently) round the Earth, disturbs the Moon revolving round the Earth, each of the planets revolving round the Sun disturbs every other planet revolving round the Sun. But though the principle of perturbation is the same in both cases, the circumstances upon which the nature and magnitude of its effect depend are so different as to require investigations very different in form.

The disturbing force on the Moon is a resolved part of the Sun's attraction, that is, of the attraction of the largest body in the solar system. The disturbing force on a planet is the attraction of another planet, and the largest of these is very inconsiderable when compared with the Sun. The perturbations of the Moon are consequently very much greater than those of any planet: and this circumstance alone makes an important difference in the process of calculation. For, the disturbing force depends itself upon the situation of the disturbed body. Now the disturbance of a planet is so small that for all ordinary purposes we may, in calculating the disturbing force, use the place in which the planet would have been if not disturbed, instead of that where it really is, without producing any sensible error. But we should in the lunar theory obtain most inaccurate results, if we expressed the forces in terms of any thing but the *true* co-ordinates of the Moon. The motion of the perihelion of a planet is scarcely sensible in ten years: the Moon's perigee has in that time gone through every sign of the zodiac. In this respect then the planetary theory is simpler than the lunar theory.

On the other hand, the expansions of P, T, S, or the equivalent expressions, are much shorter in the lunar than in the planetary theory. For, these expansions proceed by powers

of $\frac{\rho}{r}$ (35): now $\frac{\rho}{r}$ in the lunar theory is about $\frac{1}{400}$, but in the planetary theory it sometimes approaches to $\frac{3}{4}$. And while two terms are sufficient in the former case, thirteen or more are necessary in the latter. Here then the planetary theory is much more complicated than the lunar theory.

In following for this investigation a process somewhat different from that of the former, we shall introduce the reader to some of the most remarkable methods of modern analysts. To avoid complexity, we shall suppose that all the planets move in the same plane.

77. PROP. 29. To express the disturbing force of one planet upon another, by partial differential coefficients (taken with respect to the co-ordinates of the disturbed planet) of a function of their co-ordinates.

Let x and y be the co-ordinates of the disturbed planet (which we shall call m,) the Sun being the origin, and x being measured towards the first point of Aries: x' and y' those of the disturbing planet: m' the mass of the latter (expressed by the acceleration which it would produce at distance 1 in the unit of time). The difference of the co-ordinates of the two planets is $x'-x$ and $y'-y$ in the directions of x and y: and their distance is

$$\sqrt{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}}.$$

The accelerating force of m' upon m is

$$\frac{m'}{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2}$$

in the direction of the line joining them: the resolved parts of which are

$$\frac{m'(x'-x)}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} \text{ and } \frac{m'(y'-y)}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

in the directions of x and y. These however are not the forces which *disturb* the planet. To obtain these, we must, as in (9)

and (25), find the forces which m' exerts upon the Sun, and apply them with sign changed to the disturbed planet: the expressions will then represent the forces which disturb the *relative* motions of the Sun and disturbed planet, and which are in fact the objects of this investigation. The forces exerted by the disturbing planet on the Sun are; in the direction of x, $\frac{m'x'}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$, and in the direction of y, $\frac{m'y'}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$. Hence the disturbing forces on m are,

$$\text{in } x, \quad \frac{m'(x'-x)}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{m'x'}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

$$\text{in } y, \quad \frac{m'(y'-y)}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{m'y'}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

$$\text{Now let } R = \frac{-m}{\sqrt{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}}} + \frac{m'(x'x+y'y)}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

$$\text{then } \frac{dR}{dx} = \frac{-m'(x'-x)}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} + \frac{m'x'}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

$$\frac{dR}{dy} = \frac{-m'(y'-y)}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} + \frac{m'y'}{(x'^2+y'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

Consequently the disturbing force in $x = -\frac{dR}{dx}$

..... in $y = -\frac{dR}{dy}$,

in which expressions the differential coefficients are to be taken as if x and y were independent of each other, and x' and y' did not vary when x and y varied.

78. If we put μ for the sum of the masses of the Sun and the disturbed planet, the force arising from their mutual attraction, as in (9), is $-\frac{\mu x}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ in the direction of x, and $-\frac{\mu y}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ in the direction of y. Hence the whole force acting on m is,

$$\text{in } x, \quad -\frac{\mu x}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{dR}{dx} = X,$$

$$\text{in } y, \quad -\frac{\mu y}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{dR}{dy} = Y.$$

79. PROP. 30. To transform the equations for rectangular co-ordinates into equations for polar co-ordinates.

The differential equations of motion are,

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = X, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = Y.$$

Multiplying the former by $2\frac{dx}{dt}$, the latter by $2\frac{dy}{dt}$, and adding them, and putting for X and Y their values,

$$0 = \frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2\right\} + \frac{2\mu}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\left(x\frac{dx}{dt} + y\frac{dy}{dt}\right)$$

$$+ 2\left(\frac{dR}{dx}\cdot\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{dR}{dy}\cdot\frac{dy}{dt}\right).$$

Again, subtracting the product of the first by y from that of the second by x,

$$0 = \frac{d}{dt}\left(x\frac{dy}{dt} - y\frac{dx}{dt}\right) + x\frac{dR}{dy} - y\frac{dR}{dx}.$$

Let $r_{,}$ be the true radius vector of m: $\theta_{,}$ its true longitude; r' and θ' those of m'.

Then $x = r_{,}\cos\theta_{,}$: $y = r_{,}\sin\theta_{,}$: $x' = r'\cos\theta'$: $y' = r'\sin\theta'$: and these equations become,

$$0 = \frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^2 + r_{,}^2\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^2\right\} + \frac{2\mu}{r_{,}^2}\cdot\frac{dr_{,}}{dt} + 2\left(\frac{dR}{dx}\cdot\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{dR}{dy}\cdot\frac{dy}{dt}\right),$$

$$0 = \frac{d}{dt}\left(r_{,}^2\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right) + x\frac{dR}{dy} - y\frac{dR}{dx}.$$

80. Now it must be remarked that the only way in which R can depend on the position of m is by depending on the two co-ordinates which determine the place of m. If then the place of

m be defined by rectangular co-ordinates, the complete differential coefficient of R with respect to t, as depending on the position of m only, is

$$\frac{dR}{dx}\cdot\frac{dx}{dt}+\frac{dR}{dy}\cdot\frac{dy}{dt}.$$

If it were defined by polar co-ordinates, the complete differential coefficient would be

$$\frac{dR}{dr_{,}}\cdot\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\theta_{,}}\cdot\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}.$$

Either of these equivalent quantities may be expressed by $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$, where it must be distinctly remarked that the differentiation is to be performed with respect to t, only upon all those parts of R (in whatever form it may be expressed), which are functions of t in consequence of their depending on the position of m. Those terms which depend only on the position of m' must not be subjected to this differentiation. We shall hereafter find a shorter method of expressing this restriction.

Substituting in the first equation,

$$0=\frac{d}{dt}\left\{\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2}+r_{,}^{2}\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2}\right\}+\frac{2\mu}{r_{,}^{2}}\cdot\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}+2\frac{d(R)}{dt}.$$

Integrating, $C_{,}=\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2}+r_{,}^{2}\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2}-\frac{2\mu}{r_{,}}+2\int_{t}\frac{d(R)}{dt}$.

81. Here it must be observed that $\int_{t}\frac{d(R)}{dt}$ is not the same thing as R. For R is an artificial quantity, a pure symbolical fiction, introduced as a matter of convenience, but possessing a real value when it is used under this condition only, that its differential coefficient with respect to t, not as contained in all its terms, but only as contained in those terms depending on the position of m, shall stand in the place of a larger expression. But when the expression $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$ is formed in conformity with this condition, and therefore possessing a real value, it must be treated in integration like other real functions of t; whatever be the origin of any of the terms depending on t, the same respect must

be had to all those terms in the integration; there is not and cannot be any such limitation in the integration as there was in the formation of $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$. The equation must therefore remain in the form in which we have put it.

82. For changing the other equation we must remark that, as R is now to be considered a function of $r_,$ and $\theta_,$, both of which depend on x and y, we must put

$$\text{for } \frac{dR}{dx}, \quad \frac{dR}{dr_,}\cdot\frac{dr_,}{dx}+\frac{dR}{d\theta_,}\cdot\frac{d\theta_,}{dx};$$

$$\text{and for } \frac{dR}{dy}, \quad \frac{dR}{dr_,}\cdot\frac{dr_,}{dy}+\frac{dR}{d\theta_,}\cdot\frac{d\theta_,}{dy};$$

where in obtaining $\frac{dr_,}{dx}$, $\frac{d\theta_,}{dx}$, &c. we must be careful to express $r_,$ in terms of x and y only without $\theta_,$: and $\theta_,$ in terms of x and y only, without $r_,$.

$$\text{Thus } r_,^2=x^2+y^2. \qquad 2r_,\frac{dr_,}{dx}=2x;$$

$$\text{or } \frac{dr_,}{dx}=\frac{x}{r}=\cos\theta_,. \qquad \text{Similarly } \frac{dr_,}{dx}=\sin\theta_,.$$

$$\text{And } \tan\theta_,=\frac{y}{x};\ \text{whence } \frac{1}{\cos^2\theta_,}\cdot\frac{d\theta_,}{dx}=-\frac{y}{x^2}=-\frac{1}{r_,}\cdot\frac{\sin\theta_,}{\cos^2\theta_,},$$

$$\text{or } \frac{d\theta_,}{dx}=-\frac{\sin\theta_,}{r_,}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } \frac{1}{\cos^2\theta}\cdot\frac{d\theta_,}{dy}=\frac{1}{x}=\frac{1}{r_,\cos\theta_,};$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{d\theta_,}{dy}=\frac{\cos\theta_,}{r_,}.$$

Consequently

$$\frac{dR}{dx}=\frac{dR}{dr_,}\cos\theta_,-\frac{dR}{d\theta_,}\cdot\frac{\sin\theta_,}{r_,},$$

$$\frac{dR}{dy}=\frac{dR}{dr_,}\sin\theta_,+\frac{dR}{d\theta_,}\cdot\frac{\cos\theta_,}{r_,},$$

and the second equation becomes,

$$0 = \frac{d}{dt}\left(r_{,}^{2} \cdot \frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right) + \frac{dR}{d\theta_{,}},$$

where it must be recollected that $\frac{dR}{d\theta_{,}}$ means the differential coefficient with respect to $\theta_{,}$ only so far as $\theta_{,}$ is *explicitly* contained in R, and not considering $r_{,}$ as depending on $\theta_{,}$.

83. These two equations (analogous to those employed in the elliptic theory and in the lunar theory) are sufficient for solution of the problem, but the following is convenient. Since $r_{,}^{2} = x^{2} + y^{2}$, we find by differentiating twice,

$$\frac{d^{2}(r_{,}^{2})}{dt^{2}} = 2\left(x\frac{d^{2}x}{dt^{2}} + y\frac{d^{2}y}{dt^{2}}\right) + 2\left\{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^{2} + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^{2}\right\}.$$

$$\text{But } x\frac{d^{2}x}{dt^{2}} + y\frac{d^{2}y}{dt^{2}} = xX + yY$$

$$= -\frac{\mu}{r_{,}} - \frac{dR}{dx}r_{,}\cos\theta_{,} - \frac{dR}{dy}r_{,}\sin\theta_{,}$$

$$= -\frac{\mu}{r_{,}} - r_{,}\frac{dR}{dr_{,}};$$

$$\text{and } \left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^{2} + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^{2} = \left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2} + r_{,}^{2}\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2};$$

$$\therefore \frac{d^{2}(r_{,}^{2})}{dt^{2}} = -\frac{2\mu}{r_{,}} - 2r_{,}\frac{dR}{dr_{,}} + 2\left\{\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2} + r_{,}^{2}\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^{2}\right\} \ldots\ldots (k).$$

Substituting for the last term its value from (80),

$$\frac{d^{2}(r_{,}^{2})}{dt^{2}} = 2C_{,} + \frac{2\mu}{r_{,}} - 4\int_{t}\frac{d(R)}{dt} - 2r_{,}\frac{dR}{dr_{,}};$$

a very convenient equation, inasmuch as it contains $r_{,}$ only without $\theta_{,}$.

84. The value of R, as will be found on substituting for x, y, x', and y', their values, is

$$= \frac{-m'}{\sqrt{\{r'^{2} - 2r'r_{,}\cos(\theta' - \theta_{,}) + r_{,}^{2}\}}} + \frac{m'r_{,}\cos(\theta' - \theta_{,})}{r'^{2}}.$$

85. There are two methods of deriving a result from these equations. One consists in obtaining immediately the alterations in the radius vector and the longitude produced by the disturbing force: this is the method commonly used for the periodical terms of short period. The other consists in obtaining the variation of the elements of the orbit: it is best adapted to the discovery of secular terms, whether periodical or permanent. We shall at present proceed with the former.

PERTURBATIONS OF RADIUS VECTOR AND LONGITUDE.

86. PROP. 31. To investigate very approximately the equation for the perturbation of the radius vector.

Let r be the length of the radius vector, and θ the longitude, in an elliptic orbit not differing much from the orbit which is actually described; r and θ being the radius vector and longitude in the supposed elliptic orbit, for the same instant for which $r_,$ and $\theta_,$ are the radius vector and longitude in the true or disturbed orbit. And let $r_, = r + \delta r$: $C_, = C + \delta C$. Substituting in the last equation,

$$\frac{d^2(r+\delta r)^2}{dt^2} = 2C + 2\delta C + \frac{2\mu}{r+\delta r} - 4\int_t \frac{d(R)}{dt} - 2(r+\delta r)\frac{dR}{dr_,}.$$

Now δr is supposed to be so small that we may neglect its square. Also $\frac{dR}{dr_,}$ is itself a quantity depending on the disturbing force, and therefore we may neglect the product of δr and $\frac{dR}{dr_,}$. Again, as we have stated (76) the effect of the disturbing force in altering the body's place is so small that in calculating R (the function whose differential coefficients express its value), we may take the undisturbed place of the body instead of the true one: that is, we may now suppose

$$R = \frac{m'r\cdot\cos(\theta'-\theta)}{r'^2} - \frac{m'}{\sqrt{\{r'^2 - 2r'r\cos(\theta'-\theta)+r^2\}}},$$

and for $\frac{dR}{dr_,}$ we may put $\frac{dR}{dr}$.

The equation now becomes

$$\frac{d^2(r^2+2r\delta r)}{dt^2}=2C+2\delta C+2\mu\left(\frac{1}{r}-\frac{\delta r}{r^3}\right)-4\int_t\frac{d(R)}{dt}-2r\frac{dR}{dr}.$$

But in the supposed elliptic orbit, in which the planet might have moved without disturbance, the equation would have been

$$\frac{d^2.r^2}{dt^2}=2C+\frac{2\mu}{r},$$

where r has the same value as in the last equation.

Taking the remaining parts which relate to the disturbing force and the disturbance,

$$2\frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2}=2\delta C-2\mu\frac{\delta r}{r^3}-4\int_t\frac{d(R)}{dt}-2r\frac{dR}{dr},$$

$$\text{or } \frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2}+\frac{\mu}{r^3}r\delta r-\delta C+2\int_t\frac{d(R)}{dt}+r\frac{dR}{dt}=0.$$

The term δC might be conceived as included in the sign of integration. But as it will evidently depend, not only on the elements of the disturbed orbit, but also on those of the undisturbed orbit in which r and θ are co-ordinates, it will be proper to retain it.

87. PROP. 32. To solve the equation for the perturbation of the radius vector.

Let* a be the semi-major axis of the approximate orbit of

---

* The equation may be completely integrated in the following manner. In an undisturbed orbit,

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2}+\frac{\mu}{r^3}x=0, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dt^2}+\frac{\mu}{r^3}y=0.$$

The form of these equations is nearly similar to that for $r\delta r$. Assume therefore $r\delta r=Mx+Ny$: and as there are two quantities M and N to be determined, assume

$$\frac{d(r\delta r)}{dt}=M\frac{dx}{dt}+N\frac{dy}{dt}:$$

$$\text{and let } 2\int_t\frac{d(R)}{dt}+r\frac{dR}{dr}=S.$$

Then, from our last assumption, (since the complete expression for $\frac{d(r\delta r)}{dt}$ is $M\frac{dx}{dt}+x\frac{dM}{dt}+N\frac{dy}{dt}+y\frac{dN}{dt}$),

$$x\frac{dM}{dt}+y\frac{dN}{dt}=0:$$

m: e its eccentricity: ϖ the longitude of the perihelion: ϵ the mean longitude of m when $t=0$: $n=\left(\frac{\mu}{a^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ (15).

Then, by (16) and (19), $nt+\epsilon$ is the mean longitude of m at the time t: $nt+\epsilon-\varpi$ is its mean anomaly; also $\theta-\varpi$ is the true anomaly; and the formula of (19) becomes

$$\theta = nt+\epsilon+\left(2e-\frac{e^3}{4}+\&c.\right)\sin(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$$
$$+\left(\frac{5e^2}{4}+\&c.\right)\sin(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)+\&c.$$

$$\text{Also } r=\frac{a(1-e^2)}{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)}.$$

Putting in $\theta-\varpi$ the value found above for θ, and taking its cosine, as in (49) or (130), we get at length

$$r=a\left\{1+\frac{e^2}{2}+\&c.-\left(e+\&c.\right)\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\right.$$
$$\left.-\left(\frac{e^2}{2}+\&c.\right)\cos(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)+\&c.\right\},$$

which we shall call $a+v$. Similar expressions hold for the place of m'.

---

also by again differentiating $\frac{d(r\delta r)}{dt}$, and substituting in the equation

$$\frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2}+\frac{\mu}{r^3}r\delta r+S=0,$$

$$\text{we obtain}\quad \frac{dx}{dt}\cdot\frac{dM}{dt}+\frac{dy}{dt}\cdot\frac{dN}{dt}+S=0.$$

From these $\left(\text{as } x\frac{dy}{dt}-y\frac{dx}{dt}=r^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}=h\right)$, $\quad \frac{dM}{dt}=\frac{1}{h}yS, \quad \frac{dN}{dt}=-\frac{1}{h}xS;$

$$\text{and as } x=r\cos\theta, \qquad y=r\sin\theta,$$

$$\text{we get } \delta r=\frac{1}{h}(\cos\theta\int r\sin\theta\,.\,S-\sin\theta\int r\cos\theta\,.\,S),$$

where the elliptical values are to be substituted for r and θ. It will easily be seen that we might have put

$$r\delta r=M(x\cos\varpi+y\sin\varpi)+N(y\cos\varpi-x\sin\varpi),$$

and this would have given

$$\delta r=\frac{1}{h}\{\cos(\theta-\varpi)\int r\sin(\theta-\varpi)\,.\,S-\sin(\theta-\varpi)\int r\cos(\theta-\varpi)\,.\,S\},$$

which in actual computation would be rather more convenient. The method in the text is the most practicable.

$$\text{Also } \frac{\mu}{r^3} = \frac{n^2a^3}{r^3} = n^2 + n^2 \{3e \cos (nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$$

$$+ \frac{3e^2}{2} + \frac{2e^2}{2} \cos (2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.\}.$$

88. Before proceeding with the solution of our equation, we shall make one important remark. R, so far as it depends on the place of m, is a function of r and θ. Now r, when given in terms of no variable but t, is expressed entirely by constants and by cosines of multiples of $(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$: θ is $nt + \epsilon +$ a series depending on constants and on sines of multiples of $(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$. Consequently, whether we suppose R completely expanded or not, if it be expressed in terms of t, wherever we find nt we shall find ϵ*. Suppose then

$$R = A + B \cos (nt + \epsilon - E) + C \cos (2nt + 2\epsilon - F) + \&c.,$$

where A, B, C, &c. are any functions whatever of the co-ordinates of m': then taking $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$ with the restriction imposed on it in (80) and (81),

$$\frac{d(R)}{dt} = -nB \sin (nt + \epsilon - E)$$

$$- 2nC \sin (2nt + 2\epsilon - F) - \&c.$$

$$\text{But } \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} = -B \sin (nt + \epsilon - E)$$

$$- 2C \sin (2nt + 2\epsilon - F) - \&c.$$

$$\text{therefore } \frac{d(R)}{dt} = n \frac{dR}{d\epsilon},$$

where it is supposed† that, in order to take $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$, both r and θ have been expressed in terms of $nt + \epsilon$; which is in fact the

* This is also true, if the inclinations of the orbits be taken into account.

† From this and other instances, the reader will observe the importance (in giving the partial differential coefficient of a function which admits of being expanded in terms of different quantities) of stating distinctly the supposition made relative to the expansion.

easiest method for the planets. We have now got rid of the restriction with which we were before incumbered (80).

If we had developed A, B, C, &c. we should have had for each a series of such terms as $L\cos q\,(n't+\epsilon'-E')$ which when multiplied by one of the terms depending on $nt+\epsilon-E$ would have produced such terms as

$$P.\cos\{p\,(nt+\epsilon-E)\pm q\,(n't+\epsilon'-E')\}.$$

The equation $\frac{d(R)}{dt}=n\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$ would still have been found true, as the term $n't$ depends on t only because the place of m' varies with t, and therefore for our restricted value of $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$ it must not be differentiated.

Should the reader find any difficulty in conceiving a differential coefficient taken with regard to one of the quantities commonly considered constant, we beg him to observe that the variation of value, used in the definition at least of a differential coefficient, is hypothetical only and not necessarily true. We state that *if* we alter the value of one quantity, and *if* we find the corresponding alteration of the function, and *if* we divide the latter alteration by the former, and *if* we find the limit to which the quotient approaches on diminishing the former indefinitely, this limit is the differential coefficient. The whole of this operation can be performed equally well, whether the quantity be in the nature of things variable, or we be compelled to conceive a variation where none really exists.

89. To return to our equation: we may now put it under the form

$$0=\frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2}+n^2.r\delta r-\delta C+2n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+r\frac{dR}{dr}$$

$$+n^2.r\delta r\{3e\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)+\frac{3e^2}{2}+\frac{9e^2}{2}\cos(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)+\&c.\}.$$

This is most easily solved by approximation: neglecting first

the terms which are multiplied by e and its powers, which reduces the equation to

$$0 = \frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2} + n^2 . r\delta r - \delta C + 2n\int_t \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + r\frac{dR}{dr},$$

then substituting the value so found in the terms multiplied by e and solving again, &c. The process is exactly similar to that for determining u in the Lunar Theory: the equations being in both cases of the form of that treated in (1) and (4).

90. Suppose for instance in the expansion of

$$2n\int_t \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + r\frac{dR}{dr}$$

one term is $P\cos(pnt - qn't + Q)$. This will represent every term, p and q being whole numbers, (as we shall shew when we treat of the expansion of R, &c.). The equation, deprived of terms depending on e, is

$$\frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2} + n^2 . r\delta r + P\cos(pnt - qn't + Q) = 0.$$

The general solution, by (4), is

$$r\delta r = A\cos(nt - B) + \frac{P}{(pn - qn')^2 - n^2}\cos(pnt - qn't + Q).$$

The first or arbitrary term of this is to be rejected. For, considering that first term only,

$$\delta r = \frac{A}{r}\cos(nt - B) = \frac{A}{a}\cos(nt - B) + \text{smaller terms},$$

and consequently r or $a\{1 - e\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + \text{&c.}\}$ is reduced to

$$a\{1 - e\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + \frac{A}{a^2}\cos(nt - B) + \text{&c.}\}.$$

The variable part under the bracket, which is the sum of the principal term of the eccentricity and of the arbitrary part, is

$$\{-e + \frac{A}{a^2}\cos(e - \varpi + B)\}\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$$

$$+\frac{A}{a^2}\sin(\epsilon-\varpi+B)\,.\,\sin(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$$

$$=-\sqrt{\left\{e^2-\frac{2Ae}{a^2}\cos(\epsilon-\varpi+B)+\frac{A^2}{a^4}\right\}}\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi+\Pi),$$

$$\text{where } \tan\Pi=\frac{A\sin(\epsilon-\varpi+B)}{a^2e-A\cos(\epsilon-\varpi+B)}.$$

That is, the eccentricity and the place of the perihelion are altered, in consequence of this term, by *constant* quantities. As the alteration may be comprehended in the values of e and ϖ, this term may be neglected without any loss of results. The approximate value of $r\delta r$ is therefore

$$\frac{P}{(pn-qn')^2-n^2}\cos(pnt-qn't+Q).$$

Now the term multiplying e is $3n^2e\,.\,r\delta r\,.\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$: or, substituting the value just found for $r\delta r$,

$$\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{n^2eP}{(pn-qn')^2-n^2}[\cos\{(p+1)nt-qn't+Q+\epsilon-\varpi\}$$

$$+\cos\{(p-1)nt-qn't+Q-\epsilon+\varpi\}].$$

Adding these two terms to the equation of the last paragraph, and integrating it, we find

$$r\delta r=\frac{P}{(pn-qn')^2-n^2}[\cos(pnt-qn't+Q)$$

$$+\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{n^2e}{\{(p+1)n-qn'\}^2-n^2}\cos\{(p+1)nt-qn't+Q+\epsilon-\varpi\}$$

$$+\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{n^2e}{\{(p-1)n-qn'\}^2-n^2}\cos\{(p-1)nt-qn't+Q-\epsilon+\varpi\}].$$

In the same manner we might proceed to a more approximate value. The value of $r\delta r$ being found, that of δr is found by multiplying it by the value of $\frac{1}{r}$, namely,

$$\frac{1}{a}\{1+e\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)+e^2\,.\cos(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)+\&c.\}.$$

91. One important remark must not be omitted. In the development of

$$2n\int_t \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + r\frac{dR}{dr},$$

there will be one term $P\cos(nt+Q)$, introduced by the first term of v. The equation for $r\delta r$, considering this term only, will be

$$0 = \frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2} + n^2 . r\delta r + P\cos(nt+Q).$$

The solution of the equation in this form, as in (5) and (43), would have terms depending on an arc, which would admit of unlimited increase, and therefore our original supposition of elliptic motion would not be even an approximation. To avoid this difficulty, we must, as in (44) and (*44), suppose the first term of v to depend on $\cos c(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$, which will change the term in the equation to $P\cos(cnt+Q)$. This amounts to supposing, as in (61), that the perihelion has a constant motion. We shall not in this place proceed further with the investigation of its motion, as it will be better found by the method of *variation of elements*, to be explained hereafter.

There will also be one constant term in $r\delta r$; depending upon δC, upon the constant which is introduced by the integration of $2n\int_t \frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$, and upon the constant in $r\frac{dR}{dr}$; and expressed in value by $\frac{1}{n^2}\times$ the aggregate of those constants. It indicates the amount of the non-periodic difference between the values of $\frac{r^2}{2}$ in the assumed elliptic orbit and in the disturbed orbit. We shall advert to this hereafter. $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$ contains no constant term, and we may suppose its integral taken so as to contain no constant term: if K be the constant term of $r\frac{dR}{dr}$, then the constant term of $r\delta r$ will be

$$\frac{1}{n^2}(\delta C - K).$$

92. Prop. 33. To examine the terms of R which are increased most in integrating the equation for $r\delta r$.

It is evident that the terms which are most increased by the integration are those in which

$$(pn-qn')^2-n^2, \text{ or } \{(p+1)n-qn'\}.\{(p-1)n-qn'\},$$

is small; that is, those in which one of the quantities

$$\{(p+1)n-qn'\}, \quad \{(p-1)n-qn'\},$$

is small: where p and q are whole numbers, and may be positive or negative. Consequently, if we can find two numbers $p+1$ and q, or $p-1$ and q, which make

$$(p+1)n-qn', \text{ or } (p-1)n-qn'$$

very small, we may expect that the term of δr depending on $\cos(pnt-qn't+Q)$ will be large. The train of terms introduced with it will all be affected by the same divisor, and therefore, though multiplied by e, e^2, &c. may be sensible.

This consideration saves much trouble, in the selection of the terms of R which are to be retained for integration: for, among the terms multiplied by e and e' or their powers, there are few that become sensible, except those which have a very small divisor. For instance, the periodic times of Jupiter and Saturn are very nearly in the ratio of 2 to 5. Consequently, supposing Jupiter to be disturbed by Saturn, as n is the angle described in the unit of time by Jupiter, and n' that described by Saturn,

$n : n' :: 5 : 2$ nearly, and therefore $2n-5n'$ is very small.

If $2=p+1$, and $5=q$, the term $\cos(pnt-qn't+Q)$ is $\cos(nt-5n't+Q)$.

If $2=p-1$, and $5=q$, the term $\cos(pnt-qn't+Q)$ is $\cos(3nt-5n't+Q)$.

The terms of these two forms must be carefully sought out, as in the integration they will be divided by $2n-5n'$. The terms of the latter form, however (for a reason which we shall explain hereafter), are much more important than those of the former.

The coefficient of the cosine of $(pnt-qn't+Q)$ is only *once* divided by the small quantity

$$(p+1).n-qn', \text{ or } (p-1).n-qn'.$$

If $pn-qn'$ be small, the terms divided by

$$\{(p+1).n-qn'\}^2-n^2 \text{ and } \{(p-1).n-qn'\}^2-n^2$$

will be much increased. The same remarks apply in all respects to them.

93. PROP. 34. To investigate the equation for the perturbation in longitude.

Our object is, if possible, to find an expression for $\frac{d.\delta\theta}{dt}$. For this purpose, we shall use the equation of (80), putting $n\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$ for $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$. Substituting $C+\delta C$, $r+\delta r$, and $\theta+\delta\theta$, for C_1, r_1, θ_1, expanding to the first power of the quantities marked with δ, and deducting the equation which would exist in the assumed orbit where there is no perturbation,

$$\delta C=2\frac{dr}{dt}.\frac{d.\delta r}{dt}+2r\delta r\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2+2r^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}.\frac{d.\delta\theta}{dt}+\frac{2\mu\delta r}{r^3}+2n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}.$$

But $r^2\frac{d\theta}{dt}=h=\sqrt{\{a(1-e^2)\mu\}}\ (11)=a^2n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\ (15)$;

$$\therefore a^2n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}.\frac{d.\delta\theta}{dt}=\frac{\delta C}{2}-\frac{dr}{dt}.\frac{d.\delta r}{dt}-r\delta r\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2-\frac{\mu\delta r}{r^3}-n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}.$$

To eliminate $r\delta r\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2$, take the equation (k) of (83), omit the perturbations, and differentiate the first term: then

$$r\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2=\frac{d^2r}{dt^2}+\frac{\mu}{r^2};$$

$$\therefore a^2n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}.\frac{d.\delta\theta}{dt}=\frac{\delta C}{2}-\frac{dr}{dt}.\frac{d.\delta r}{dt}-\frac{d^2r}{dt^2}\delta r-\frac{2\mu\delta r}{r^3}-n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$$

$$=\frac{\delta C}{2}-\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{dr}{dt}.\delta r\right)-\frac{2\mu\delta r}{r^3}-n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}.$$

To eliminate $\frac{2\mu\delta r}{r^3}$, take the equation of (86) which gives

$$-2\mu\frac{\delta r}{r^3}=2\frac{d^2(r\delta r)}{dt^2}-2\delta C+4n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+2r\frac{dR}{dr};$$

$$\therefore\ a^3n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\cdot\frac{d\cdot\delta\theta}{dt}=$$

$$-\frac{3}{2}\delta C+\frac{d}{dt}\left\{2\frac{d(r\delta r)}{dt}-\frac{dr}{dt}\delta r\right\}+3n\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+2r\frac{dR}{dr}.$$

Integrating, and omitting the arbitrary constant (which would only imply a constant difference of longitude in the two orbits)

$$\delta\theta=\frac{-3\delta C}{2a^3n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}t+\frac{1}{a^2n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\left\{\frac{d(2r\delta r)}{dt}-\frac{dr}{dt}\delta r\right\},$$

$$+\frac{3}{a^2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\int_t\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+\frac{2}{a^2n\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\int_t r\frac{dR}{dr}.$$

It will be remembered (91), that $r\frac{dR}{dr}$ contains a constant term K, the integration of which will produce the term Kt.

*93. Prop. *34. To explain the effect of the constant δC introduced in the expressions for $r\delta r$ and $\delta\theta$.

Omitting, for convenience, the terms depending on e, it appears from (91) that δr contains the term $\frac{1}{n^2a}(\delta C-K)$, and from (93) that $\delta\theta$ contains the term

$$\frac{1}{na^2}\left(-\frac{3}{2}\delta C+2K\right)\times t.$$

Now we might leave δC quite undetermined; or we might make $\delta C=K$, which would destroy the term in δr, and would produce in $\delta\theta$ the term $\frac{1}{na^2}\cdot\frac{K}{2}\cdot t$. But either of these would have the following fault. The term left in $\delta\theta$ would increase uniformly with the time, and therefore, after the lapse of a considerable time, the co-ordinates in the two orbits would differ so much that we should not be justified in neglecting superior powers of $\delta\theta$,

and our whole approximation would fail. We must therefore make the coefficient of $t=0$. This gives $\delta C=\frac{4K}{3}$, and the constant term in $\delta r=\frac{K}{3n^2a}$. If K be positive, as when the orbit of the disturbing body is interior to the other [see the development in (131) and (141), section 4], the constant term in δr is positive; that is, the radius vector and semi-axis-major are greater in the disturbed orbit than in an undisturbed orbit with the same periodic time.

94. PROP. 35. To examine the terms of R which are increased most in integrating the equation for $\delta\theta$.

For the complete calculation of $\delta\theta$, the value of $r\delta r$ found in (89) and (90) is necessary. The terms which have been increased in the integration for $r\delta r$ will not have their value materially altered in the integration for $\delta\theta$. For, let $\cos(pnt-qn't+Q)$ be one of these; then (92) $pn-qn'$ does not differ much from $\pm n$: and therefore the first term in the value of $\delta\theta$ will not be altered by the differentiation.

95. But the terms which are most important in $\delta\theta$ are those which depend upon terms in R of the form

$$P.\cos\{p(nt+\epsilon)-q(n't+\epsilon')+Q\},$$

where $pn-qn'$ is very small. For with respect to this term,

$$\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}=-pP.\sin\{p(nt+\epsilon)-q(n't+\epsilon')+Q\};$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{3}{a^2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\int_t\int_t\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$$

$$=\frac{p}{(pn-qn')^2}\cdot\frac{3P}{a^2\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\cdot\sin\{p(nt+\epsilon)-q(n't+\epsilon')+Q\}.$$

Here the coefficient is divided *twice* by $pn-qn'$: and of course if that quantity is small, the coefficient is very much increased in magnitude. The numbers p and q must always be integers; if then two integers p and q can be found nearly in the

proportion of the mean motions of m' and m, there will be a large term in the perturbation of m depending on the argument

$$\{p(nt+\epsilon) - q(n't+\epsilon') + Q\}.$$

There is no difficulty in finding, among the planetary motions, proportions nearly coinciding with those of two numbers. The most remarkable is that of Jupiter and Saturn, where, the proportions of the mean motions being nearly 5 : 2, and the masses being large, although the term in question (as we shall shew hereafter) is a multiple of the cube of the eccentricities, yet the inequality depending on the term

$$\cos\{5(nt+\epsilon) - 2(n't+\epsilon') + Q\}$$

amounts to nearly fifty minutes. A singular instance has also been lately discovered in the perturbation of the Earth by Venus: eight times the mean motion of Venus is *very* nearly equal to thirteen times the mean motion of the Earth: and though (as we shall shew) this term

$$\cos\{13(nt+\epsilon) - 8(n't+\epsilon') + Q\}$$

must be multiplied by the fifth powers of the eccentricities, &c. which are very small, and though the disturbing mass is very small, this inequality is sensible*, amounting to nearly 3″.

96. There are, in the value of $r\delta r$, terms of the same form, produced originally by the terms

$$\cos\{(p \pm 1)(nt+\epsilon) - q(n't+\epsilon') + Q\},$$

which are *once* divided by

$$(pn \pm n - qn')^2 - n^2, \quad \text{or} \quad (pn \pm 2n - qn')(pn - qn').$$

These terms then may be considerable in δr, but by no means so conspicuous as in $\delta\theta$. There are others introduced by the terms

$$\cos\{(p \pm 2)(nt+\epsilon) - q(n't+\epsilon') + Q\}, \text{ &c.:}$$

the same remark applies to them.

---

* The coefficient of the term $\{\cos 13(nt+\epsilon) - 8(n't+\epsilon') + Q\}$ in R is in this instance multiplied in the integration by a number exceeding two millions.

97. PROP. 36. To describe the nature of the forces which produce the most striking inequalities in the radius vector, and to investigate their periodic times.

If τ be the time in which the term

$$P\cos(pnt - qn't + Q)$$

goes through all its possible changes of sign and magnitude and returns again to the same value (which we shall call the period), it is evident that by adding τ to t, $pnt - qn't$ must have increased or decreased by 2π, and consequently

$$\tau = \frac{2\pi}{pn - qn'}, \quad \text{or} = \frac{2\pi}{qn' - pn}.$$

Now as the disturbing force is expressed by means of R, we may conceive each term of R (or some function of each term, having the same period) to represent a part of the disturbing force. The period of the force depending on the term

$$P\cos(pnt - qn't + Q)$$

is therefore

$$\frac{2\pi}{pn - qn'}, \quad \text{or} \frac{2\pi}{qn' - pn}.$$

Now the greatest terms (*cæteris paribus*) in δr or $r\delta r$ are those in which $pn - qn' \pm n$ is small (92); $\pm(pn - qn')$ therefore for these terms is nearly $= n$, and therefore the period of these terms is nearly $\frac{2\pi}{n}$, the periodic time of revolution. A force therefore which goes through all its periodic values nearly in the same time as the time of revolution will produce in the radius vector a considerable inequality. And the inequality will be expressed by a multiple of $\cos(pnt - qn't + Q)$: its period will be $\pm\frac{2\pi}{pn - qn'}$: and it will therefore go through all its values *nearly* in one revolution of the planet. This would amount to the same as altering the eccentricity and perihelion of the planet.

98. But because the period is not *exactly* equal to the revolution of the planet, the alteration of eccentricity and perihelion will not be constant but will vary slowly. For suppose

$pn - qn' - n$ to be small: δr will have a considerable term of the form

$$aN\cos(pnt - qn't + Q):$$

and adding this to the first variable term of r in (87), the principal inequality of r is

$$a\{-e\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi) + N\cos(pnt - qn't + Q)\}$$

$$= a[-e\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$$

$$+ N\cos\{(pnt - qn't - nt + Q - \epsilon + \varpi) + (nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}]$$

$$= -\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\{ae - aN\cos(pnt - qn't - nt + Q - \epsilon + \varpi)\}$$

$$- \sin(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\,.\,aN\sin(pnt - qn't - nt + Q - \epsilon + \varpi).$$

As in (66) and (68), this may be put under the form

$$-aE\cos(nt+\epsilon-\varpi-K),$$

where $E = e - N\cos(pnt - qn't - nt + Q - \epsilon + \varpi)$,

$$K = \frac{N}{e}\sin(pnt - qn't - nt + Q - \epsilon + \varpi).$$

This is the same as the elliptic inequality in an orbit where E is the eccentricity and $\varpi + K$ the longitude of the perihelion. The alterations then both in the eccentricity and in the longitude of the perihelion are periodical: and their common period is $\frac{2\pi}{pn - qn' - n}$, which is very long.

99. The same term of R will also produce considerable terms in $r\delta r$ whose period is $\frac{2\pi}{pn - qn' - n}$: but they will be multiplied by e (see Art. 90). Hence there will be in δr no terms whose period is long that are comparable in magnitude to those whose period is nearly the same as the periodic time of the disturbed planet.

100. PROP. 37. To describe the nature of the forces which produce the most striking inequalities in the longitude, and to investigate their periodic times.

We have already remarked (94) that the terms of $\delta\theta$ produced by the considerable terms of $r\delta r$ will have a value only

commensurate with their value in $r\delta r$, and consequently, though considerable, they cannot rise to first-rate importance. We shall therefore confine our attention to the term depending on

$$\cos(pnt - qn't + Q)$$

where $pn - qn'$ is very small. The period of the force which produces this term is $\frac{2\pi}{pn - qn'}$, and is therefore very great. The period of the inequality is the same. It appears then that the terms which become very great are those which occupy a very long period, and which in consequence can hardly be discovered from observations that extend through a short time. Thus the inequality of Saturn produced by Jupiter (and a corresponding one of Jupiter) depending on

$$\cos\{5(nt + \epsilon) - 2(n't + \epsilon') + Q\},$$

has a period exceeding 900 years, or 30 revolutions of the exterior planet. The inequality of the Earth alluded to in (94) has a period of about 240 years, or 240 revolutions of the exterior planet. There are many similar terms in the theory of the different planets, but no others so remarkable as these.

101. The increase of the coefficient from integration is inversely as $(pn - qn')^2$, or directly as $\left(\frac{2\pi}{pn - qn'}\right)^2$, or directly as the square of the period of the inequality. Of this, the following popular explanation may be offered. If we conceive a force to urge the planet in the same direction for a long time, or if we conceive the preponderance of forces acting in one direction over those acting in the opposite direction to be of the same kind for a long time, (which may be the case when $pn - qn'$ is small, because then the periodic times of the two planets are in the proportion of $p : q$ very nearly, and therefore after q revolutions of one planet or p revolutions of the other, they will again be in nearly the same relative situation at the same parts of their orbits, and thus the actions of the same kind are repeated over and over again for a long time), the velocity of the planet may be increased so that it describes a larger orbit than before, and its periodic time will therefore be increased, and

that by a quantity proportional to the time of action of these forces. During another equally long time, the periodic time may be diminished. During the former of these portions the planet will be dropping behind its mean place in longitude by an angle which is proportional to the product of the change in periodic time by the number of revolutions through which that change is of the same kind: and as each of these is proportional to the time expressed by $\frac{2\pi}{pn-qn'}$, the planet will have dropped behind its mean place by a quantity proportional to $\frac{1}{(pn-qn')^2}$. During the latter portion it will regain the same quantity. The whole inequality therefore, or the difference between its actual place and the place computed on the supposition of mean motion in longitude, will be proportional to $\frac{1}{(pn-q'n)^2}$. On this and similar points the reader is referred to the author's treatise entitled *Gravitation*.

PERTURBATIONS OF THE ELLIPTIC ELEMENTS.

102. PROP. 38. To explain algebraically the variation of parameters.

This artifice of solution is founded entirely upon the obvious fact, that any equation between two (or more) quantities (as x and y, or r and θ) may be changed into any other equation, provided that instead of the constant quantities we put functions of x and y properly chosen. For instance, we may change the equation $ax+by=c$ into the equation $(x-e)^2+(y-f)^2=c$, provided that instead of a we put $\frac{(x-e)^2}{x}$, and instead of b, $\frac{(y-f)^2}{y}$: or provided that instead of a we put $\frac{2(x-e)^2+(y-f)^2}{2x}$, and instead of b, $\frac{(y-f)^2}{2y}$: or in an infinite number of ways. The constants a and b being sometimes called *parameters*, the artifice which puts variable quantities in their places is generally called the *variation of parameters*.

103. But it must not be supposed that we are often required to make such violent changes as that in the instance above given. In general, the principle is used when an equation, which is easily integrable, receives the addition of some small term which renders the form of the solution more complicated. It is then thought more simple and more intelligible to put the solution in a form exactly similar to that of the solution of the unaugmented equation, with the understanding that the parameters are now not constant but subject to a small variation. And it generally happens that, among the infinite number of ways of effecting this, we may choose one which will possess some other convenient property. Suppose, for instance, we had the equation

$$\frac{d^2z}{dt^2} + n^2z = 0.$$

The solution of this equation is $z = A\cos(nt - B)$, where A and B are constants, of the kind called arbitrary: that is, they are to be determined so as to suit some known properties of particular values of z and t. Now suppose we had the equation

$$\frac{d^2z'}{dt^2} + n^2z' + \alpha\cos(pt - Q) = 0$$

where α is small. The solution of this will contain only one term more than the former. But for many purposes it is more convenient that this solution should stand in the form

$$z' = A'\cos(nt - B'),$$

where A' and B' have only small variations depending on the additional term: the use of the solution of the simpler equation being only to *suggest* a form for this solution. Among the infinite number of ways in which this can be done, it may be convenient to select that which shall give for $\frac{dz'}{dt}$ an expression of exactly the same form as the expression for $\frac{dz}{dt}$ deduced from the solution of the unaugmented equation. Assuming then $z' = A'.\cos(nt - B')$, we have

$$\frac{dz'}{dt} = -nA'\sin(nt - B') + \cos(nt - B')\frac{dA'}{dt}$$

$$+ A'\sin(nt - B').\frac{dB'}{dt}.$$

But $\frac{dz}{dt} = -nA \sin(nt - B)$: and $\frac{dz'}{dt}$ is to have the same form: therefore we must have

$$\frac{dz'}{dt} = -nA' \sin(nt - B').$$

Consequently the remaining terms of the complete expression for $\frac{dz'}{dt}$ must $= 0$; or

$$0 = \cos(nt - B') \cdot \frac{dA'}{dt} + A' \sin(nt - B') \cdot \frac{dB'}{dt}.$$

Differentiating $\frac{dz'}{dt}$, and substituting in the given equation,

$$0 = -\sin(nt - B') \cdot \frac{dA'}{dt} + A' \cos(nt - B') \cdot \frac{dB'}{dt} + \frac{\alpha}{n} \cos(pt - Q).$$

From this equation and the last we find

$$\frac{dA'}{dt} = \frac{\alpha}{n} \sin(nt - B') \cdot \cos(pt - Q),$$

$$\frac{dB'}{dt} = -\frac{\alpha}{nA'} \cos(nt - B') \cdot \cos(pt - Q).$$

The values of A' and B' will be readily found, if we suppose their difference from some constants A and B to be so small that in the terms multiplied by α we may put A for A', and B for B'. Then we have

$$z' = A' \cos(nt - B'),$$

$$\text{where } A' = A - \frac{\alpha}{2n(n+p)} \cos(nt + pt - B - Q)$$

$$- \frac{\alpha}{2n(n-p)} \cos(nt - pt - B + Q),$$

$$B' = B - \frac{\alpha}{2n(n+p)A} \sin(nt + pt - B - Q)$$

$$- \frac{\alpha}{2n(n-p)A} \sin(nt - pt - B + Q),$$

a form which is sometimes more convenient than that obtained by direct solution.

104. PROP. 39. To explain geometrically the variation of parameters.

This can be done most readily by reference to some instance: for example, that of the last Article. The equation

$$\frac{d^2z}{dt^2} + n^2z = 0,$$

is the equation corresponding to the motion of a simple pendulum whose length is $\frac{g}{n^2}$ in a cycloidal arc. The equation

$$\frac{d^2z'}{dt^2} + n^2z' + \alpha \cos(pt - Q) = 0$$

represents the motion of the same pendulum, supposing that besides the force of gravity there is a disturbing force $\alpha \cos(pt - Q)$ acting upon it in the direction of a tangent to the curve. The solution $z' = A' \cos(nt - B')$, if we look no further, merely asserts that the *place* of the pendulum at the time t may be expressed by means of the same formula as that which expresses the place in undisturbed vibration. Of this there is no doubt, as the same thing might be expressed in the same form with a hundred different values of the parameters. But if we differentiate it, we find (by the assumption of last Article) that the velocity, with the values of A' and B' that we have found, is $-nA' \sin(nt - B')$: that is, that the *velocity* of the pendulum also is expressed by the same formula as if its vibration were not disturbed by the additional force. Consequently the *place* and *velocity* of the disturbed pendulum at the time t are the same as those of an undisturbed pendulum, whose arc of vibration on each side of the vertical is the value of A' at that instant, and which was at the extremity of its vibration at the time $\frac{B'}{n}$, giving B' the value corresponding to the same instant. Now we see a distinct and tangible meaning in the expression. If at any instant t the disturbing force should cease

to act, the pendulum would go on vibrating so that its arc of vibration on each side would be the value which A' had at the instant t, and as if it had been at the extremity of a vibration at the time $\frac{B'}{n}$ where B' preserves constant the value which it had at the instant t. These two elements (the length of the arc of vibration, and the time at which the pendulum was at the extremity of the arc) may, if no disturbing force acts, be found from a knowledge of the place and the velocity of the pendulum at any instant: and therefore the variable elements in the disturbed motion (which, for the instant, are the same) may be inferred from the place and velocity of the disturbed pendulum, and may be considered as contained in them.

105. In exactly the same manner we may represent the motion of a disturbed planet by finding the values of the elliptic elements, which would represent the place of the planet at any time t, and which would also give the velocity and direction of motion of the planet at that time; the velocity being calculated from those elements as if they were the invariable elements of an undisturbed body. And if the disturbing force should at any instant cease to act, the planet would go on describing the ellipse whose elements are the values of the elements which correspond to that particular instant. And the elliptic instantaneous elements at any time may be inferred from the place and velocity and direction of motion of the planet at that time, and may be conceived as contained in them.

106. This method may be used for finding any of the inequalities produced by perturbation. But it is best adapted to those which result from changes in the elements whose period is very long. For though these changes may be considerable, so that in a century the orbit of a planet is most materially changed, yet their value may not sensibly change from one year to another, so that a single revolution (so far as these long inequalities alone are concerned) may be *very exactly* represented by the ellipse whose elements are the values of the elements corresponding to any instant of that revolution. For the same reasons it is particularly well adapted to the discovery of those

changes which continue constantly in the same direction, as for instance, the motion of the perihelion.

107. PROP. 40. To investigate the alteration of the semi-major axis in a disturbed orbit.

We shall, as before, put a, e, ϖ, for the invariable elements in an ellipse nearly coinciding with the curve described, and $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, $\varpi_{,}$, for the variable elements which will represent the place and velocity of the planet in the curve described, provided the calculation be made for any instant as if they were invariable. Now upon examining the process above, it will be seen that the *place* and *velocity* or *first differential coefficient* in the real curve are the same as in this instantaneous ellipse: but there is no such condition respecting the *second differential coefficient.* We must then use the equations which have been once integrated. Now in an undisturbed elliptic orbit this equation is easily found, by the same process as in (79) and (80),

$$C=\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^2+r_{,}^2\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^2-\frac{2\mu}{r_{,}}.$$

If we make this

$$=\left\{\frac{1}{r_{,}^4}\cdot\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{d\theta_{,}}\right)^2+\frac{1}{r_{,}^2}\right\}r_{,}^4\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^2-\frac{2\mu}{r_{,}}$$

$$=\left\{\left(\frac{du}{d\theta}\right)^2+u^2\right\}h^2-2\mu u$$

as in (10) and (11), and put for u and h the values there given, the semi-major axis being $a_{,}$, we find $C=-\frac{\mu}{a_{,}}$. Thus in undisturbed motion in our fictitious orbit,

$$-\frac{\mu}{a_{,}}=\left(\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}\right)^2+r_{,}^2\left(\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}\right)^2-\frac{2\mu}{r_{,}}.$$

This equation may be regarded as an instance of what we have said (105), that the instantaneous elliptic elements may be inferred from the place and motion of the planet at any instant. For we here have $\frac{\mu}{a_{,}}$ absolutely expressed in terms of the polar

co-ordinates and their differentials. In order then to express $\frac{\mu}{a_,}$ for every instant in terms of the disturbing forces, we have merely to express

$$\left(\frac{dr_,}{dt}\right)^2 + r_,^2\left(\frac{d\theta_,}{dt}\right)^2 - \frac{2\mu}{r_,}$$

in terms of those forces. This we can easily do by means of the equation of (80), which gives

$$\left(\frac{dr_,}{dt}\right)^2 + r_,^2\left(\frac{d\theta_,}{dt}\right)^2 - \frac{2\mu}{r_,} = C_, - 2\int_t \frac{d(R)}{dt} = C_, - 2n\int_t \frac{dR}{d\epsilon}.$$

$$\text{Consequently } -\frac{\mu}{a_,} = C_, - 2n\int_t \frac{dR}{d\epsilon}:$$

$$\text{and differentiating, } \frac{da_,}{dt} = -\frac{2na_,^2}{\mu}\cdot\frac{dR}{d\epsilon},$$

$$\text{or nearly} = -\frac{2na^2}{\mu}\cdot\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}.$$

108. PROP. 41. To investigate the alteration of the eccentricity in a disturbed orbit.

Let h be twice the area described in 1″ in the ellipse whose elements are a, e, ϖ: $h_,$ that in the disturbed orbit, or in the fictitious instantaneous ellipse: then $h_, = r_,^2\frac{d\theta_,}{dt}$.

$$\text{But, by (82), } \frac{d}{dt}\left(r^2\frac{d\theta_,}{dt}\right) = -\frac{dR}{d\theta_,};$$

$$\text{hence } \frac{dh_,}{dt} = -\frac{dR}{d\theta_,} = -\frac{dR}{d\theta}, \text{ as in (86),}$$

in which equation it is supposed (82) that R is expressed in terms of r and θ.

109. This expression requires an alteration of form. For, as in (88), &c., we propose to express R entirely in terms of t, and therefore there will not be any explicit expression of R in terms of θ, from which $\frac{dR}{d\theta}$ can be found. We may thus find its

value in terms of $\frac{dR}{de}$ and $\frac{dR}{d\varpi}$. R, as in (86), is a function of r and θ: also r is expressed, see (87) and (88), by a series of the form

$$A + B\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + C\cos(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.;$$

and $\theta = nt + \epsilon + M\sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + N\sin(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.$

Hence $\frac{dR}{d\varpi}$, which $= \frac{dR}{dr}\cdot\frac{dr}{d\varpi} + \frac{dR}{d\theta}\cdot\frac{d\theta}{d\varpi}$, will be

$$= \frac{dR}{dr}\{B\sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + 2C\sin(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.\}$$

$$+ \frac{dR}{d\theta}\{-M\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) - 2N\cos(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) - \&c.\}.$$

Similarly $\frac{dR}{de}$, which $= \frac{dR}{dr}\cdot\frac{dr}{de} + \frac{dR}{d\theta}\cdot\frac{d\theta}{de}$, will be

$$= \frac{dR}{dr}\{-B\sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) - 2C\sin(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) - \&c.\}$$

$$+ \frac{dR}{d\theta}\{1 + M\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + 2N\cos(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.\}.$$

Adding these, $\frac{dR}{d\varpi} + \frac{dR}{de} = \frac{dR}{d\theta}$*.

Substituting, $\frac{dh_1}{dt} = -\left(\frac{dR}{d\varpi} + \frac{dR}{de}\right)$.

110. Now by (11) $h_1 = \sqrt{\{\mu a_1(1 - e_1^2)\}}$:

whence $\frac{dh_1}{dt} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\left\{\frac{\mu(1 - e_1^2)}{a_1}\right\}}\frac{da_1}{dt} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{\mu a_1}{1 - e_1^2}\right)}e_1\frac{de_1}{dt}$,

and $e_1\frac{de_1}{dt} = \frac{1 - e_1^2}{2a_1}\cdot\frac{da_1}{dt} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{1 - e_1^2}{\mu a_1}\right)}\frac{dh_1}{dt}$.

Substituting the values of $\frac{da_1}{dt}$ and $\frac{dh_1}{dt}$,

$$\frac{de_1}{dt} = \frac{-na}{\mu e}(1 - e^2)\frac{dR}{de} + \frac{na\sqrt{(1 - e^2)}}{\mu e}\left(\frac{dR}{de} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right).$$

* This is also true if the orbits of the two planets are inclined, provided that the original plane of the disturbed planet's orbit be taken for the plane of xy.

111. PROP. 42. To investigate the alteration of the longitude of perihelion in a disturbed orbit.

The radius vector $r_{,}$ or $\frac{a_{,}(1-e_{,}^{2})}{1+e_{,}\cos(\theta_{,}-\varpi_{,})}$ is a function of $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, and $\varpi_{,}$, as well as of $\theta_{,}$. And to represent correctly the place of the body in the orbit really described, $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, and $\varpi_{,}$, must all be considered variable; and therefore to find the correct value of $\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}$, we must differentiate considering $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, $\varpi_{,}$, all as functions of t. The correct value of $\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}$ in the real orbit is therefore

$$\frac{dr_{,}}{d\theta_{,}}\cdot\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dr_{,}}{da_{,}}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dr_{,}}{de_{,}}\cdot\frac{de_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dr_{,}}{d\varpi_{,}}\cdot\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt}.$$

But if the disturbing force should cease to act, the body would describe the ellipse (105) of which the elements are $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, $\varpi_{,}$, and therefore in that ellipse $\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}=\frac{dr_{,}}{d\theta_{,}}\cdot\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}$. And by the suppositions of (105), the velocities and directions of motion in the two cases are to be the same, and consequently $\frac{dr_{,}}{dt}$, $\frac{dr_{,}}{d\theta_{,}}$, and $\frac{d\theta_{,}}{dt}$, are to be the same in both. Making the two expressions equal,

$$0=\frac{dr_{,}}{da_{,}}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dr_{,}}{de_{,}}\cdot\frac{de_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dr_{,}}{d\varpi_{,}}\cdot\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt},$$

$$\text{or } 0=\frac{1-e_{,}^{2}}{1+e_{,}\cos(\theta_{,}-\varpi_{,})}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}-a_{,}\frac{2e_{,}+(1+e_{,}^{2})\cos(\theta_{,}-\varpi_{,})}{\{1+e_{,}\cos(\theta_{,}-\varpi_{,})\}^{2}}\cdot\frac{de'}{dt}$$

$$-a_{,}\frac{(1-e_{,}^{2})\,e_{,}\sin(\theta_{,}-\varpi_{,})}{\{1+e_{,}\cos(\theta_{,}-\varpi_{,})\}^{2}}\cdot\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt};$$

whence, putting a, e, &c. for $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, &c.

$$\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt}=\frac{1}{e\sin(\theta-\varpi)}\left\{\frac{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)}{a}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}\right.$$

$$\left.-\frac{2e+(1+e^{2})\cos(\theta-\varpi)}{1-e^{2}}\cdot\frac{de_{,}}{dt}\right\}$$

$$= \frac{na}{\mu e \sin(\theta - \varpi)} \left\{ \frac{1-e^2}{e} \cos(\theta - \varpi) \cdot \frac{dR}{de} \right.$$

$$\left. - \frac{2e + (1+e^2)\cos(\theta - \varpi)}{e\sqrt{(1-e^2)}} \left(\frac{dR}{de} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi} \right) \right\}.$$

We shall soon find a method of simplifying this expression.

112. PROP. 43. To find the values of $\frac{d\theta}{de}$ and $\frac{dr}{de}$ in an elliptic orbit.

By (12) $\frac{dt}{d\theta} = \frac{a^{\frac{3}{2}}(1-e^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^2}$.

For e put $e + \delta e$, and expand as far as the first power of δe:

then $\frac{dt}{d\theta} = \frac{a^{\frac{3}{2}}(1-e^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^2}$

$$- \frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}} \cdot \frac{3e + (2+e^2)\cos(\theta - \varpi)}{\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^3} \delta e.$$

Integrating, $t = \int_\theta \frac{a^{\frac{3}{2}}(1-e^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^2}$

$$- \frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}} \cdot \frac{\sin(\theta - \varpi)\{2 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}}{\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^2} \cdot \delta e,$$

the constant, in the integration of the term multiplying δe, being made $= 0$, because, whatever be the value of e, we always make the equation of the center $= 0$ when $nt + \epsilon - \varpi = 0$ (19), or when $\theta - \varpi = 0$: and the same must therefore hold for δe.

And $t + \frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}} \cdot \frac{\sin(\theta - \varpi)\{2 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}}{\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^2} \delta e$

$$= \int_\theta \frac{a^{\frac{3}{2}}(1-e)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}\{1 + e\cos(\theta - \varpi)\}^2}.$$

The second side will be some function of θ which we will call $\phi(\theta)$. For convenience, put t' for the second term on the first side, then

$$\phi(\theta) = t + t',$$

and consequently

$$\phi(\theta + \theta') = t + t' + \phi'(\theta) \cdot \theta',$$

θ' being supposed small. Here the longitude $\theta + \theta'$ corresponds to the time $t + t' + \phi(\theta) \cdot \theta'$, on the same suppositions as those on which the investigation preceding has been made, namely, that the eccentricity is $e + \delta e$. Make

$$t' + \phi'(\theta) \cdot \theta' = 0, \qquad \text{or } \theta' = -\frac{t'}{\phi'(\theta)};$$

then the longitude $\theta - \frac{t'}{\phi'(\theta)}$ corresponds to the time t; or the longitude at the time t = longitude as usually expressed

$$+\frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{\sqrt{(\mu)}} \cdot \frac{\sin(\theta-\varpi)\{2+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}\delta e \cdot \frac{\sqrt{(\mu)} \cdot \{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

= longitude as usually expressed

$$+\frac{\sin(\theta-\varpi)\{2+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}}{1-e^2}\delta e,$$

and hence by the definition of the differential coefficient,

$$\frac{d\theta}{de} = \frac{\sin(\theta-\varpi)\{2+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}}{1-e^2}.$$

113. For $\frac{dr}{de}$ we must observe that the value of r at a given time depends on e, partly because it contains e explicitly, and partly because it contains θ which depends on e. Thus

$$\frac{d(r)}{de} = \frac{dr}{de} + \frac{dr}{d\theta} \cdot \frac{d\theta}{de} = -a \cdot \frac{2e + (1+e^2)\cos(\theta-\varpi)}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}$$

$$+\frac{a(1-e^2)e\sin(\theta-\varpi)}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2} \cdot \frac{\sin(\theta-\varpi)\{2+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}}{1-e^2}$$

$$= -a\cos(\theta-\varpi).$$

*113. *PROP. 43. To find an expression for $\frac{dR}{dr}$ in terms of $\frac{dR}{de}$ and $\frac{dR}{d\varpi}$.

Remarking that, when R is supposed to be expanded in terms of r and θ, R depends upon t only because r and θ depend upon t,

$$\frac{d(R)}{dt} = \frac{dR}{dr} \cdot \frac{dr}{dt} + \frac{dR}{dt} \cdot \frac{d\theta}{dt}.$$

But by (88) $\frac{d(R)}{dt} = n\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$;

also if r be expressed in terms of θ without t, r is a function of t only because θ is a function of t, and therefore

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{dr}{d\theta}\cdot\frac{d\theta}{dt}.$$

Hence we have

$$n\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} = \left(\frac{dR}{dr}\cdot\frac{dr}{d\theta} + \frac{dR}{d\theta}\right)\cdot\frac{d\theta}{dt}$$

$$= \left(\frac{dR}{dr}\cdot\frac{a(1-e^2)e\sin(\theta-\varpi)}{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2} + \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right)\frac{\sqrt{(\mu)}\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

Observing that $\frac{\sqrt{(\mu)}}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}} = n$, this becomes

$$\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} = \frac{dR}{dr}\cdot\frac{ae\sin(\theta-\varpi)}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}} + \left(\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right)\cdot\frac{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}{(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}},$$

whence

$$\frac{dR}{dr} = \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{ae\sin(\theta-\varpi)}\left[\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} - \left(\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right)\cdot\frac{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}{(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right].$$

114. PROP. 44. To find an expression for $\frac{dR}{de}$ in terms of $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$ and $\frac{dR}{d\varpi}$, R being supposed expanded in terms of t.

R is expressed originally in terms of r and θ: and r and θ, when expanded in terms of t, introduce e in the terms of the expansion. Hence

$$\frac{dR}{de} = \frac{dR}{dr}\cdot\frac{dr}{de} + \frac{dR}{d\theta}\cdot\frac{d\theta}{de},$$

where $\frac{dr}{de}$ and $\frac{d\theta}{de}$ are taken on the supposition that both r and θ are expanded in terms of t.

Taking $\frac{dr}{de}$ and $\frac{d\theta}{de}$ from (113) and (112), and $\frac{dR}{dr}$ from (*113), and giving to $\frac{dR}{d\theta}$ its well known value $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi}$, and substituting in the expression above, we find $\frac{dR}{de} =$

$$-\frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e\sin(\theta-\varpi)}\left[\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}-\left(\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right)\cdot\frac{\{1+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}^2}{(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right]\cos(\theta-\varpi)$$

$$+\left(\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right)\cdot\frac{\sin(\theta-\varpi)\{2+e\cos(\theta-\varpi)\}}{1-e^2}$$

$$=-\frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}\cdot\cos(\theta-\varpi)}{e\sin(\theta-\varpi)}\cdot\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$$

$$+\frac{(1+e^2)\cos(\theta-\varpi)+2e}{(1-e^2)\,e\sin(\theta-\varpi)}\left(\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right).$$

115. Comparing this with the value of $\frac{d\varpi_1}{dt}$ in (111),

$$\frac{d\varpi_1}{dt}=-\frac{na\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{\mu e}\cdot\frac{dR}{de}.$$

116. We have now obtained the variations of the elements a_1, e_1, and ϖ_1, upon which the dimensions and position of the imaginary elliptic orbit at any instant depend. Another parameter however is necessary to determine the body's place in the instantaneous orbit, namely the epoch, or the mean longitude when $t=0$, which we have called ϵ. We now proceed to find its variation.

117. PROP. 45. To find the variation of the epoch in a disturbed orbit.

By assuming that the planet moves for an instant in a part of an elliptic orbit, we assume that all the expressions for the longitude and the radius vector and their first differentials with respect to t, whether expressed in terms of θ or of t, are the same as if the elements of the elliptic motion were for an instant invariable. Yet it is plain that the differentials will be correctly found by considering those elements as variable, since they *must* be varied to represent the motion from any point to any distant point. And all that applies to both r_1 and θ_1 will apply to any function of r_1 and θ_1, as for instance R, which depends on m only by being a function of r_1 and θ_1. Now suppose r_1 and θ_1 expanded as in (87): they will be functions of a_1, e_1, ϖ_1, and $n_1t+\epsilon_1$, where it must be remarked that n_1 or $\frac{\sqrt{(\mu)}}{a_1^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ is variable

if $a_{,}$ is variable. Consequently R, supposed to be expanded in the same way, is a function of $a_{,}$, $e_{,}$, $\varpi_{,}$, and $n_{,}t+\epsilon_{,}$. Hence $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$ (observing that $n_{,}t$ and $\epsilon_{,}$ always go together) is

$$\frac{dR}{da_{,}}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{de_{,}}\cdot\frac{de_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi_{,}}\cdot\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\epsilon_{,}}\cdot\frac{d(n_{,}t+\epsilon_{,})}{dt},$$

or nearly

$$\frac{dR}{da}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{de}\cdot\frac{de_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi}\cdot\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}\left(n_{,}+t\frac{dn_{,}}{dt}+\frac{d\epsilon_{,}}{dt}\right).$$

But if the elements were for an instant invariable, $\frac{d(R)}{dt}$ would be $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}n_{,}$. Making these equal, we get this equation

$$0=\frac{dR}{da}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{de}\cdot\frac{de_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi}\cdot\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt}+\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}\left(t\frac{dn_{,}}{dt}+\frac{d\epsilon_{,}}{dt}\right).$$

Substituting the values of $\frac{da_{,}}{dt}$, $\frac{de_{,}}{dt}$, $\frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt}$, from (107), (110), and (115), and putting for $\frac{dn_{,}}{dt}$ its value $-\frac{3n_{,}}{2a_{,}}\cdot\frac{da_{,}}{dt}$, or $\frac{3n^{2}a}{\mu}\cdot\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$, and dividing the whole by $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$,

$$\frac{d\epsilon_{,}}{dt}=-\frac{3n^{2}a}{\mu}\cdot\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}t+\frac{2na^{2}}{\mu}\cdot\frac{dR}{da}$$

$$-\frac{na}{\mu e}\{\sqrt{(1-e^{2})}-(1-e^{2})\}\frac{dR}{de}.$$

118. PROP. 46. To calculate the longitude of a disturbed planet.

For convenience of reference, we will collect here the expressions for the variations of the elements.

$$\frac{da_1}{dt} = -\frac{2na^2}{\mu} \cdot \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} \quad (107);$$

$$\frac{dn_1}{dt} = \frac{3n^2a}{\mu} \cdot \frac{dR}{d\epsilon};$$

$$\frac{de_1}{dt} = -\frac{na}{\mu e}(1-e^2)\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + \frac{na(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\mu e}\left(\frac{dR}{d\epsilon} + \frac{dR}{d\varpi}\right) \quad (110);$$

$$\frac{d\varpi_1}{dt} = -\frac{na}{\mu e}(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \cdot \frac{dR}{de} \quad (115);$$

$$\frac{d\epsilon_1}{dt} = -\frac{3n^2a}{\mu} \cdot \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} t + \frac{2na^2}{\mu} \cdot \frac{dR}{da} - \frac{na}{\mu e}\{\sqrt{(1-e^2)} - (1-e^2)\}\frac{dR}{de} \quad (117).$$

When R is developed, the values of a_1, n_1, e_1, ϖ_1, and ϵ_1, are to be found from these expressions: and they are then to be substituted in the series

$$\theta_1 = n_1 t + \epsilon_1 + (2e_1 - \frac{e_1^3}{4} + \&c.) \sin(n_1 t + \epsilon_1 - \varpi_1)$$

$$+ \left(\frac{5e_1^2}{4} + \&c.\right) \sin(2n_1 t + 2\epsilon_1 - 2\varpi_1) + \&c.$$

which applies to an elliptic orbit of which they are the elements (87).

119. Ex. Suppose one term in the development of R to be

$$P \cdot e^3 e'^2 \cdot \cos\{13(nt+\epsilon) - 8(n't+\epsilon') - 3\varpi - 2\varpi'\},$$

where P is a function of a and a'. (We shall for abbreviation call this $Pe^3e'^2 \cos T$).

$$\text{Here } \frac{dR}{d\epsilon} = -13\, Pe^3e'^2 \sin T,$$

$$\frac{dR}{d\varpi} = 3Pe^3e'^2 \sin T,$$

whence $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}+\frac{dR}{d\varpi}=-10Pe^2e'^2\sin T,$

$$\frac{dR}{de}=3Pe^2e'^2\cos T,$$

$$\frac{dR}{da}=\frac{dP}{da}e^2e'^2\cos T.$$

Hence $\frac{da_1}{dt}=\frac{26na^2}{\mu}Pe^2e'^2\sin T$:

integrating, $a_1=a-\frac{26na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^2e'^2\cos T.$

$$\frac{dn_1}{dt}=-\frac{39n^2a}{\mu}Pe^2e'^2\sin T:$$

$$n_1=n+\frac{39n^2a}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^2e'^2\cos T.$$

$$\frac{de_1}{dt}=\frac{13na}{\mu}(1-e^2)Pe^2e'^2\sin T-\frac{10na(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\mu}Pe^2e'^2\sin T:$$

$$e_1=e-\frac{13na(1-e^2)}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^2e'^2\cos T+\frac{10na(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^2e'^2\cos T.$$

$$\frac{d\varpi_1}{dt}=-\frac{3na(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\mu}Pee'^2\cos T:$$

$$\varpi_1=\varpi-\frac{3na(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pee'^2\sin T.$$

$$\frac{d\epsilon_1}{dt}=\frac{39n^2a}{\mu}Pe^2e'^2.t.\sin T+\frac{2na^2}{\mu}.\frac{dP}{da}e^2e'^2\cos T$$

$$-\frac{3na}{\mu}\{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}-(1-e^2)\}Pee'^2\cos T:$$

$$\epsilon_1 = \epsilon - \frac{39n^2a}{\mu(13n-8n')} Pe^2e'^2 . t . \cos T + \frac{39n^2a}{\mu(13n-8n')^2} Pe^2e'^2 \sin T$$

$$+ \frac{2na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')} \cdot \frac{dP}{da} e^2e'^2 \sin T$$

$$- \frac{3na}{\mu(13n-8n')} \{\sqrt{(1-e^2)} - (1-e^2)\} Pee'^2 \sin T.$$

Hence, expanding $\sqrt{(1-e^2)}$, and retaining in the substitutions no power of e beyond e^2,

$$n_1 t + \epsilon_1 = nt + \epsilon$$

$$+ \left\{ \frac{39n^2aP}{\mu(13n-8n')^2} + \frac{2na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')} \cdot \frac{dP}{da} - \frac{3naP}{2\mu(13n-8n')} \right\} e^2e'^2 \sin T$$

$$n_1 t + \epsilon_1 - \varpi_1 = nt + \epsilon - \varpi$$

$$+ \left[\left\{ \frac{39n^2aP}{\mu(13n-8n')^2} + \frac{2na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')} \frac{dP}{da} - \frac{3naP}{\mu(13n-8n')} \right\} e^2e'^2 \right.$$

$$\left. + \frac{3na}{\mu(13n-8n')} Pee'^2 \right] \sin T,$$

(which we shall call $nt + \epsilon - \varpi + x$)

$$e_1 = e - \frac{3naP}{\mu(13n-8n')} e^2e'^2 \cos T.$$

Substituting these in the series for θ_1, and observing that

$$\sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi + x) = \sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) + x \cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi),$$

and neglecting products which produce higher powers than $e^2e'^2$,

$$\theta_1 = nt + \epsilon + \left(2e - \frac{e^3}{4} + \&c.\right) \sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$$

$$+ \left(\frac{5e^2}{4} + \&c.\right) \sin(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.$$

$$+ \left\{ \frac{39n^2aP}{\mu(13n-8n')^2} + \frac{2na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')} \cdot \frac{dP}{da} - \frac{3naP}{2\mu(13n-8n')} \right\} e^2e'^2 \sin T$$

$$+ \frac{3naP}{\mu(13n-8n')} e^2e'^2 [\sin\{T - (nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\} + \sin\{T + (nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}]$$

$$+\frac{3naP}{\mu(13n-8n')}e^2e'^2[\sin\{T-(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}-\sin\{T+(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}]$$

$$+\frac{15naP}{4\mu(13n-8n')}e^2e'^2[\sin\{T-(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)\}+\sin\{T+(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)\}]$$

$$+\frac{15naP}{4\mu(13n-8n')}e^2e'^2[\sin\{T-(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)\}-\sin\{T+(2nt+2\epsilon-2\varpi)\}].$$

The first two lines are the longitude calculated with invariable elements. The additional terms are

$$\left\{\frac{39n^2aP}{\mu(13n-8n')^2}+\frac{2na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')}\cdot\frac{dP}{da}-\frac{3naP}{2\mu(13n-8n')}\right\}$$

$$\times e^2e'^2\sin\{13(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')-3\varpi-2\varpi'\}$$

$$+\frac{6naP}{\mu(13n-8n')}e^2e'^2\sin\{12(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')-2\varpi-2\varpi'\}$$

$$+\frac{15naP}{2\mu(13n-8n')}e^2e'^2\sin\{11(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')-\varpi-2\varpi'\},$$

constituting three distinct inequalities. The value of these has been adverted to in (100) &c. supposing $13n-8n'$ small. We may remark that in this case the first inequality is twice divided by $13n-8n'$: the second, though only once divided by $13n-8n'$, is multiplied only by $e^2e'^2$ instead of $e^3e'^2$: the comparative magnitude of the terms depends then on the proportion of $\frac{13n-8n'}{n}$ to e.

120. PROP. 47. To calculate the radius vector of a disturbed planet.

This must be done by substituting for $a_,$, $e_,$, &c. in the expression

$$r_,=a_,\{1+\frac{e_,^2}{2}+\&c.-(e_,+\&c.)\cos(n_,t+\epsilon_,-\varpi_,)$$

$$-\left(\frac{e_,^2}{2}+\&c.\right)\cos(2n_,t+2\epsilon_,-2\varpi_,)+\&c.\}$$

Proceeding in the same manner as in the last Article, and using the same instance, we find for the additional terms in r_1,

$$-\frac{29na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^3e'^2\cos\{13(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')-3\varpi-2\varpi'\}$$

$$+\frac{3na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^3e'^2\cos\{12(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')-2\varpi-2\varpi'\}$$

$$+\frac{3na^2}{\mu(13n-8n')}Pe^3e'^2\cos\{11(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')-\varpi-2\varpi'\}.$$

The second of these is generally the most important.

DEVELOPMENT OF R.

121. PROP. 48. Supposing $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)}}$ expanded in a series of the form

$$\tfrac{1}{2}C^{(0)}+C^{(1)}\cos\omega+C^{(2)}\cos 2\omega+\&c.:$$

to calculate numerically the values of $C^{(0)}$ and $C^{(1)}$.

Case 1. Let a and a' be very unequal: suppose for instance that a' is much less than a. Then the fraction

$$=\frac{1}{a}\left(1-2\frac{a'}{a}\cos\omega+\frac{a'^2}{a^2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}.$$

For $2\cos\omega$ put $\epsilon^{\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\epsilon^{-\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}$ (ϵ being here the base of Napierian logarithms) then the fraction

$$=\frac{1}{a}\{1-\frac{a'}{a}\epsilon^{\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}\}^{-\frac{1}{2}}.\{1-\frac{a'}{a}\epsilon^{-\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}\}^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$=\frac{1}{a}\{1+\frac{1a'}{2a}\epsilon^{\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\frac{1.3a'^2}{2.4a^2}\epsilon^{2\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\frac{1.3.5a'^3}{2.4.6a^3}\epsilon^{3\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\&c.\}$$

$$\times\{1+\frac{1a'}{2a}\epsilon^{-\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\frac{1.3a'^2}{2.4a^2}\epsilon^{-2\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\frac{1.3.5a'^3}{2.4.6a^3}\epsilon^{-3\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+\&c.\}$$

$$=\frac{1}{a}\{1+\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2\frac{a'^2}{a^2}+\left(\frac{1.3}{2.4}\right)^2\frac{a'^4}{a^4}+\left(\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6}\right)^2\frac{a'^6}{a^6}+\&c.\}$$

$$+\frac{1}{a}\left\{\frac{1}{2}\frac{a'}{a}+\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1.3}{2.4}\cdot\frac{a'^3}{a^3}+\frac{1.3}{2.4}\cdot\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6}\cdot\frac{a'^5}{a^5}+\&c.\right\}\times$$

$$\{e^{\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+e^{-\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}\}$$

$$+(\&c.)\{e^{2\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}+e^{-2\omega\sqrt{(-1)}}\}+\&c.$$

$$=\frac{1}{a}\left\{1+\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2\cdot\frac{a'^2}{a^2}+\left(\frac{1.3}{2.4}\right)^2\cdot\frac{a'^4}{a^4}+\left(\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6}\right)^2\cdot\frac{a'^6}{a^6}+\&c.\right\}$$

$$+\frac{2}{a}\left\{\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{a'}{a}+\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1.3}{2.4}\cdot\frac{a'^3}{a^3}+\frac{1.3}{2.4}\cdot\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6}\cdot\frac{a'^5}{a^5}+\&c.\right\}\cos\omega+\&c.$$

As $\frac{a'}{a}$ is small, these series converge very rapidly.

122. *Case* 2. Suppose that a' is not very much less than a. Put α for $\frac{a'}{a}$ and $\pi-2\psi$ for ω: then

$$\frac{1}{a\sqrt{(1+2\alpha\cos 2\psi+\alpha^2)}}=\tfrac{1}{2}C^{(0)}-C^{(1)}\cos 2\psi+C^{(2)}\cos 4\psi-\&c.$$

Integrating both sides with respect to ψ from $\psi=0$ to $\psi=\frac{\pi}{2}$,

$$\text{we get } \frac{\pi}{4}C^{(0)}=\int_\psi \frac{1}{a\sqrt{(1+2\alpha\cos 2\psi+\alpha^2)}}:$$

and the problem is now reduced to finding the value of this definite integral. Now let

$$\sin\psi'=\frac{\sin 2\psi}{\sqrt{(1+2\alpha\cos 2\psi+\alpha^2)}};$$

$$\cos\psi'=\frac{\cos 2\psi+\alpha}{\sqrt{(1+2\alpha\cos 2\psi+\alpha^2)}}:\ \tan\psi'=\frac{\sin 2\psi}{\cos 2\psi+\alpha}.$$

It is plain that as ψ increases from 0 till $\cos 2\psi=-\alpha$, ψ' increases from 0 to 90°; and as ψ increases to 90°, ψ' increases to 180°.

By differentiating the equation $\tan\psi'(\cos 2\psi+\alpha)=\sin 2\psi$, we get

$$\frac{\cos 2\psi+\alpha}{\cos^2\psi'}\cdot\frac{d\psi'}{d\psi}-2\tan\psi'\cdot\sin 2\psi=2\cos 2\psi;$$

$$\text{or } \frac{\cos 2\psi + \alpha}{\cos \psi'} \cdot \frac{d\psi'}{d\psi} = 2\,(\cos 2\psi \,.\, \cos \psi' + \sin 2\psi \,.\, \sin \psi').$$

On substituting the values of $\cos \psi'$ and $\sin \psi'$, this becomes

$$\sqrt{(1 + 2\alpha \cos 2\psi + \alpha^2)} \,.\, \frac{d\psi'}{d\psi} = 2\,\frac{1 + \alpha \cos 2\psi}{\sqrt{(1 + 2\alpha \cos 2\psi + \alpha^2)}}$$

$$= 2\sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{\alpha^2 \sin^2 2\psi}{1 + 2\alpha \cos 2\psi + \alpha^2}\right)} = 2\sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2 \sin^2 \psi')},$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 + 2\alpha \cos 2\psi + \alpha^2)}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2 \sin^2 \psi')}} \cdot \frac{d\psi'}{d\psi},$$

$$\text{hence } \frac{\pi}{4}\, C^{(0)} = \frac{1}{2a} \int_{\psi} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2 \sin^2 \psi')}} \cdot \frac{d\psi'}{d\psi} \left(\text{from } \psi = 0 \text{ to } \psi = \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2a} \int_{\psi} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2 \sin^2 \psi')}} \text{ (from } \psi' = 0 \text{ to } \psi' = \pi)$$

$$= \frac{1}{a} \int_{\psi'} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2 \sin^2 \psi')}} \left(\text{from } \psi' = 0 \text{ to } \psi' = \frac{\pi}{2}\right).$$

$$\text{Let } \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2 \sin^2 \psi')}} = \frac{P}{\sqrt{\{(1 + \alpha')^2 - 4\alpha' \sin^2 \psi'\}}}:$$

$$\text{then } P = 1 + \alpha' : \text{ and } \frac{4\alpha'}{(1 + \alpha')^2} = \alpha^2, \text{ or } \alpha' = \frac{1 - \sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2)}}{1 + \sqrt{(1 - \alpha^2)}} :$$

$$\text{and thus } \frac{\pi}{4}\, C^{(0)} = \frac{1 + \alpha'}{a} \int_{\psi} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 + 2\alpha' \cos 2\psi' + \alpha'^2)}}$$

from $\psi' = 0$ to $\psi' = \frac{\pi}{2}$; where α' is smaller than α. If we proceed, forming ψ'' from ψ', ψ''' from ψ'', &c. α'' from α', α''' from α'', &c. by the same law, it is plain that we shall get $\frac{\pi}{4}\, C^{(0)}$

$$= \frac{1}{a} \,.\, (1 + \alpha') \,.\, (1 + \alpha'') \,.\, (1 + \alpha''') \ldots\ldots \{1 + \alpha^{(n)}\} \times$$

$$\int_{\psi^{(n)}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\{1 + 2\alpha^{(n)} \cos 2\,\psi^{(n)} + \alpha^{(n)2}\}}}.$$

And as α', α'', α''', &c. diminish very rapidly, we may soon find one of them $\alpha^{(m)}$ so small that the term under the integral sign will not differ sensibly from $\int_{\psi^{(m)}} . 1 = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

$$\text{Then } C^{(0)} = \frac{2}{a}(1+\alpha').(1+\alpha'').(1+\alpha''').\&c.$$

The calculation of this is very easy:

$$\text{for if } \alpha = \sin\phi,\ \alpha' = \frac{1-\cos\phi}{1+\cos\phi} = \tan^2\frac{\phi}{2};\ \therefore (1+\alpha') = \sec^2\frac{\phi}{2}.$$

And if α' or $\tan^2\frac{\phi}{2} = \sin\phi'$, $(1+\alpha'')$ is found similarly to be $= \sec^2\frac{\phi'}{2}$: &c. Thus the rule is simply this:

$$\text{Make } \sin\phi = \alpha:\ \sin\phi' = \tan^2\frac{\phi}{2}:\ \sin\phi'' = \tan^2\frac{\phi'}{2}:\ \&c.:$$

then $C^{(0)} = \frac{2}{a}\sec^2\frac{\phi}{2}.\sec^2\frac{\phi'}{2}$. &c. as far as the secant differs sensibly from 1.

123. $C^{(1)}$ may be thus calculated. Multiply both sides of the equation at the beginning of (122) by $\cos 2\psi$ and integrate:

$$\text{then } \frac{\pi}{4}C^{(1)} = -\frac{1}{a}\int_{\psi}\frac{\cos 2\psi}{\sqrt{\{1+2\alpha\cos 2\psi+\alpha^2\}}} \text{ from } \psi = 0 \text{ to } \psi = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

By making the same assumption as in (122) and by solving the equation

$$\frac{\cos 2\psi + \alpha}{\sqrt{(1+2\alpha\cos 2\psi+\alpha^2)}} = \cos\psi',$$

which gives

$$\cos 2\psi = -\alpha\sin^2\psi' + \cos\psi'\sqrt{(1-\alpha^2\sin^2\psi')},$$

this may be converted into

$$\frac{1}{a}\int_{\psi'}\left\{-\frac{1}{2}\cos\psi' + \frac{\alpha(2\sin^2\psi'-1)}{4\sqrt{(1-\alpha^2\sin^2\psi')}} + \frac{\alpha}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-\alpha^2\sin^2\psi')}}\right\}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{a}\cdot\frac{\alpha.(1+\alpha')}{2}\int_{\psi'}\cdot\frac{\cos 2\psi'}{\sqrt{(1+2\alpha'\cos 2\psi'+\alpha'^2)}}\begin{Bmatrix}\psi'=0\\ \psi'=\frac{\pi}{2}\end{Bmatrix}$$

$$+\frac{\pi}{2}.\alpha C^{(0)}.$$

Continuing the process we find

$$\frac{\pi}{4} C^{(1)} = \frac{\pi}{4} C^{(0)} \left\{ \frac{\alpha}{2} + \frac{\alpha\alpha'}{2.2} + \frac{\alpha\alpha'\alpha''}{2.2.2} + \&c. \right\},$$

$$\text{or } C^{(1)} = C^{(0)} \left\{ \frac{\sin\phi}{2} + \frac{\sin\phi}{2} \cdot \frac{\sin\phi'}{2} + \&c. \right\},$$

which is very easily calculated.

124. PROP. 49. Given the numerical values of two consecutive coefficients $C^{(k-1)}$, $C^{(k)}$, to find the numerical value of the next $C^{(k+1)}$.

$$\text{Since } \frac{1}{(a^2 - 2aa'\cos\omega + a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \tfrac{1}{2} C^{(0)} + C^{(1)} \cos\omega + \&c.$$

$$+ C^{(k-1)} \cos\{(k-1)\omega\} + C^{(k)} \cos k\omega + C^{(k+1)} \cos\{(k+1)\omega\} + \&c.$$

differentiating the logarithm of each side with respect to ω

$$\frac{aa' \sin\omega}{(a^2 + a'^2) - 2aa'\cos\omega}$$

$$= \frac{C^{(1)}\sin\omega + \&c. + (k-1)\, C^{(k-1)}\sin\{(k-1)\omega\} + k C^{(k)}\sin k\omega + (k+1)\, C^{(k+1)}\sin\{(k+1)\omega\} + \&c.}{\tfrac{1}{2} C^{(0)} + C^{(1)}\cos\omega + \&c. + C^{(k-1)}\cos\{(k-1)\omega\} + C^{(k)}\cos k\omega + C^{(k+1)}\cos\{(k+1)\omega\} + \&c.}$$

Multiplying cross-wise, and taking the coefficient of $\sin k\omega$,

$$(a^2 + a'^2)\, k\, C^{(k)} - aa'\,(k-1)\, C^{(k-1)} - aa'\,(k+1)\, C^{(k+1)}$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2} aa' C^{(k-1)} - \tfrac{1}{2} aa'\, C^{(k+1)},$$

$$\text{whence } C^{(k+1)} = \frac{2k}{2k+1} \cdot \frac{a^2 + a'^2}{aa'} C^{(k)} - \frac{2k-1}{2k+1} C^{(k-1)}.$$

125. This formula includes (as will be seen on trial) $C^{(0)}$, $C^{(1)}$, $C^{(2)}$. And as the first two are calculated, all the others may be calculated from them by this formula.

126. In the same manner,

$$\text{if } \frac{1}{(a^2 - 2aa'\cos\omega + a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \tfrac{1}{2} D^{(0)} + D^{(1)} \cos\omega + \&c.$$

$$D^{(k+1)} = \frac{2k}{2k-1} \cdot \frac{a^2 + a'^2}{aa'} D^{(k)} - \frac{2k+1}{2k-1} D^{(k-1)}.$$

127. PROP. 50. To express $D^{(k)}$ in terms of $C^{(k-1)}$ and $C^{(k)}$.

Since

$$\frac{1}{(a-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = (a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)\,\frac{1}{(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}},$$

$$\text{or } \tfrac{1}{2}C^{(0)}+C^{(1)}\cos\omega+\&c.$$

$$=(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)\,\{\tfrac{1}{2}D^{(0)}+D^{(1)}\cos\omega+\&c.\}$$

we have, comparing the coefficients of $\cos k\omega$,

$$C^{(k)}=(a^2+a'^2)\,D^{(k)}-aa'D^{(k-1)}-aa'D^{(k+1)}).$$

Putting for $D^{(k+1)}$ the value in (126),

$$C^{(k)}=-\frac{1}{2k-1}(a^2+a'^2)\,D^{(k)}+\frac{2}{2k-1}aa'D^{(k-1)}.$$

Again, comparing the coefficients of $\cos\{(k-1)\,\omega\}$,

$$C^{(k-1)}=(a^2+a'^2)\,D^{(k-1)}-aa'D^{(k-2)}-aa'D^{(k)}.$$

But the formula of (126) becomes, on putting $k-1$ for k,

$$D^{(k)}=\frac{2k-2}{2k-3}\cdot\frac{a^2+a'^2}{aa'}D^{(k-1)}-\frac{2k-1}{2k-3}D^{(k-2)}.$$

Whence $D^{(k-2)}=\dfrac{2k-2}{2k-1}\cdot\dfrac{a^2+a'^2}{aa'}D^{(k-1)}-\dfrac{2k-3}{2k-1}D^{(k)}$,

and substituting,

$$C^{(k-1)}=-\frac{2}{2k-1}aa'D^{(k)}+\frac{1}{2k-1}(a^2+a'^2)\,D^{(k-1)}.$$

Eliminating $D^{(k-1)}$ from the expressions for $C^{(k)}$ and $C^{(k-1)}$

$$D^{(k)}=(2k-1)\,\frac{2aa'}{(a^2-a'^2)^2}\,C^{(k-1)}-(2k-1)\,\frac{a^2+a'^2}{(a^2-a'^2)^2}\,C^{(k)}.$$

In the same manner we might find the terms in the expansion of $\dfrac{1}{(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$, &c.

128. PROP. 51. To express $\dfrac{d.C^{(k)}}{da}$, $\dfrac{d.C^{(k)}}{da'}$, &c. in terms of quantities already found.

These will be found by differentiating $\dfrac{1}{(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$

and taking the coefficient of $\cos k\omega$ in the expansion of this differential. Now the differential coefficient with respect to a is $\frac{-a+a'\cos\omega}{(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ and the coefficient of $\cos k\omega$ is

$$-aD^{(k)}+\frac{a'}{2}D^{(k-1)}+\frac{a'}{2}D^{(k+1)}.$$

As these are already calculated, $\frac{d.C^{(k)}}{da}$ is found.

$\frac{d.C^{(k)}}{da'}$ may then be most readily calculated in this manner.

Since $C^{(k)}$ is a quantity of -1 dimensions in a and a', we have by a well-known theorem,

$$-C^{(k)}=a\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da}+a'\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da'}.$$

Consequently $\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da'}=-\frac{1}{a'}C^{(k)}-\frac{a}{a'}.\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da}$.

$\frac{d^2.C^{(k)}}{da^2}$ will be obtained by differentiating

$$-aD^{(k)}+\frac{a'}{2}D^{(k-1)}+\frac{a'}{2}D^{(k+1)},$$

the values of $\frac{d.D^{(k)}}{da}$, &c. having been previously expressed by the terms of the expansion of $\frac{1}{(a^2-2aa'\cos\omega+a'^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$, &c. Then $\frac{d^2.C^{(k)}}{da.da'}$ will be found by observing that $\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da}$ is of -2 dimensions in a and a', and therefore

$$-2\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da}=a\frac{d^2C^{(k)}}{da^2}+a'\frac{d^2C^{(k)}}{da.da'}.$$

Similarly $\frac{d^2.C^{(k)}}{da'^2}$ is found from the equation

$$-2\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da'}=a\frac{d^2C^{(k)}}{da.da'}+a'\frac{d^2C^{(k)}}{da'^2}.$$

And thus we may proceed to any number of differential coefficients.

129. PROP. 52. To expand $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{r^2 - 2rr'\cos(\theta-\theta') + r'^2\}}}$ in terms of t.

We have seen (87) that

$$r = a + a\left\{\frac{e^2}{2} + \&c. - (e + \&c.)\cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\right.$$
$$\left. - \left(\frac{e^2}{2} + \&c.\right)\cos(2nt + 2\epsilon - 2\varpi) + \&c.\right\} = a + v:$$

and similarly $r' = a' + v'$, where the expression for v' is similar to that for v, putting $a', e', n', \epsilon', \varpi'$, for $a, e, n, \epsilon, \varpi$. The expansion required will therefore be effected if we first expand

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{a^2 - 2aa'\cos(\theta-\theta') + a'^2\}}},$$

and then in every part put $a+v$ for a and $a'+v'$ for a'. Let $\omega = \theta - \theta'$; then by Prop. 49 and 50

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{a^2 - 2aa'\cos(\theta-\theta') + a'^2\}}}$$

may be expanded in the form

$$\tfrac{1}{2}C^{(0)} + C^{(1)}\cos(\theta-\theta') + C^{(2)}\cos 2(\theta-\theta') + C^{(3)}\cos 3(\theta-\theta') + \&c.,$$

where $C^{(0)}$, $C^{(1)}$, &c. are functions of a and a'. If then in each term we put $a+v$ for a and $a'+v'$ for a', the series will become the sum of a multitude of series, in this form

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{r^2 - 2rr'\cos(\theta-\theta') + r'^2\}}}$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}C^{(0)} + \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{dC^{(0)}}{da}v + \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{d^2C^{(0)}}{da^2}v^2$$
$$+ \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{dC^{(0)}}{da'}v' + \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{d^2C^{(0)}}{da\,.\,da'}vv'$$
$$+ \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{d^2C^{(0)}}{da'^2}v'^2 + \&c.$$

$$+\cos(\theta-\theta')\times\left\{\begin{array}{l} C^{(1)}+\dfrac{dC^{(1)}}{da}v+\frac{1}{2}\dfrac{d^2C^{(1)}}{da^2}v^2 \\ \quad+\dfrac{dC^{(1)}}{da'}v'+\dfrac{d^2C^{(1)}}{da\,.\,da'}vv' \\ \qquad\qquad+\frac{1}{2}\dfrac{d^2C^{(1)}}{da'^2}v'^2+\&c. \end{array}\right.$$

$$+\cos 2(\theta-\theta')\times\left\{\begin{array}{l} C^{(2)}+\dfrac{dC^{(2)}}{da}v \\ \quad+\dfrac{dC^{(2)}}{da'}v'+\&c. \\ \quad+\&c. \end{array}\right.$$

and since v and v' are expressed entirely in simple cosines of multiples of $(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$ and $(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')$, and since every power of a cosine may be expressed by simple cosines of multiple arcs, and every product of cosines may be expressed by simple cosines of the sums and differences of the arcs, it follows that the multiplier of $\cos k(\theta-\theta')$ may be expressed entirely by simple cosines of arcs arising from the combination of multiples of $nt+\epsilon-\varpi$ and $n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'$. The coefficients, as they depend only on $C^{(k)}$, $\dfrac{dC^{(k)}}{da}$, &c. may be calculated numerically from the preceding propositions.

130. The expression for θ in (87) is

$$nt+\epsilon+(2e-\frac{e^3}{4}+\&c.)\sin(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)+\&c.:$$

and a similar expression holds for θ':

$$\text{consequently } k(\theta-\theta')=k(nt+\epsilon)-k(n't+\epsilon')$$

$$+k\{(2e-\frac{e^3}{4}+\&c.)\sin(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)-\left(2e'-\frac{e'^3}{4}+\&c.\right)\sin(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')+\&c.\}$$

$$=k(nt+\epsilon)-k(n't+\epsilon')+z.$$

The cosine of $k(\theta-\theta')$ is $\cos\{k(nt+\epsilon)-k(n't+\epsilon')\}\,.\cos z$

$$-\sin\{k(nt+\epsilon)-k(n't+\epsilon')\}\,.\sin z:$$

$$\text{and } \cos z = 1 - \frac{z^2}{1.2} + \frac{z^4}{1.2.3.4} - \&c.:$$

$$\sin z = z - \frac{z^3}{1.2.3} + \frac{z^5}{1.2.3.4.5} - \&c.$$

The latter expressions when expanded will produce a series of simple cosines of combinations of multiples of $(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$ and $(n't + \epsilon' - \varpi')$; and consequently $\cos k(\theta - \theta')$, when expanded, will produce a series of cosines of combinations of

$$k(nt + \epsilon) - k(n't + \epsilon'),$$

$$\text{multiples of } nt + \epsilon - \varpi,$$

$$\text{and multiples of } n't + \epsilon' - \varpi'.$$

And when this is multiplied by the series which in (129) stands as its multiplier, the product will be a series to which the same remarks may be applied, in which the coefficient of every term is, by the methods above given, numerically calculable. The multiples of $(nt + \epsilon) - (n't + \epsilon')$, $nt + \epsilon - \varpi$, and $n't + \epsilon' - \varpi'$, will, as is plain, be arranged in every possible way of addition and subtraction in the argument of each cosine.

131. The value of R (86) being

$$\frac{m'r\cos(\theta - \theta')}{r'^2} - \frac{m'}{\sqrt{\{r^2 - 2rr'\cos(\theta - \theta') + r'^2\}}};$$

we are now able to expand it completely (as the first term will be expanded by multiplying together the series for r, $\cos(\theta - \theta')$, and $\frac{1}{r'^2}$). It is only necessary now to explain the expansion of $r\frac{dR}{dr}$. In the introduction of this expression {see (82) &c.} it is to be remarked that R was to be differentiated with respect to r as if r had no dependance on θ. Consequently $r\frac{dR}{dr}$ means the quantity which $a.\frac{d\mathrm{R}}{da}$ becomes (R being the value of R when a is put for r) on putting $a + v$ for a, without altering θ. If then in R

the coefficient of $\cos k(\theta - \theta')$ is $C^{(k)}$, it will be in $a\frac{dR}{da}$, $a\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da}$; and in $r\frac{dR}{dr}$,

$$a\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da} + \frac{d}{da}\left(a\frac{d.C^{(k)}}{da}\right)v$$

$$+\frac{d}{da'}\left(a\frac{d.C^{(k)}}{da}\right)v' + \&c.$$

$$= a.\frac{dC^{(k)}}{da} + \left(a\frac{d^2.C^{(k)}}{da^2} + \frac{d.C^{(k)}}{da}\right)v$$

$$+ a\frac{d^2C^{(k)}}{da.da'}\,v', + \&c.$$

and the coefficient of every term can be calculated.

132. PROP. 53. In the expansion of R, $r\frac{dR}{dr}$, $\frac{dR}{da}$, $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}$, and $\frac{dR}{d\varpi}$, the principal coefficient of a term

$$\cos\{(pn - qn')t + Q\},$$

will contain powers of e and e' to $p - q$ dimensions*.

(1) If we examine the expressions for v and v', it is immediately seen that a term $\cos\{g(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}$ has for coefficient a multiple of e^g, and that a term $\cos h(n't + \epsilon' - \varpi')$ has for coefficient a multiple of e'^h, &c.

(2) In any power of v, each term is either a power h of $e^g\cos\{g(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}$ or a product of $e^g\cos\{g(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}$ by $e^h\cos\{h(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}$. The *first* of these will produce $e^{g+h}[A\cos\{gh(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\} + B\cos\{g(h-2)(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\} + \&c.]$ where $e^{g+h}B$ is not the principal term in the coefficient of $\cos\{g(h-2)(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)\}$, since lower powers of e will be found multiplying that cosine, in the expansion of the power $h - 2$ of $e^g\cos g(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$: but where e^{g+h} is the lowest

* This is also true if the orbits be inclined: the inclination being supposed of the same order as the eccentricities.

power in the coefficient of $\cos gh\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)$, since it has been produced by the simplest combination which could form that cosine. The *second* will produce

$$e^{g+h}\left[\cos\{(g+h)\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}+\cos\{(g-h)\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}\right].$$

The first term is produced by the simplest combination of arcs which could form it; the second is not, for it might be produced by the product of

$$e^{g-2h}\cos\{(g-2h)\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}\quad\text{and } e^{h}\cos\{h\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\},$$

which would have for coefficient e^{g-h}. In all these terms then we have this general rule: the principal coefficient of $\cos\{x\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}$ is a multiple of e^x.

(3) A similar proposition applies to the terms of the expansion of any power of v'.

(4) In the product of a power of v by a power of v', the product of two such terms as

$$e^x\cos\{x\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\}\text{ and }e'^{x'}\cos\{x'\,(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')\},$$

will produce

$$e^xe'^{x'}\cos\{x\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)+x'\,(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')\},$$

$$\text{and } e^xe'^{x'}\cos\{x\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)-x'\,(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')\}.$$

Tracing in the same way the effects of multiplying these by another cosine, we shall get this general rule: the principal coefficient of $\cos\{x\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\pm x'\,(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')\}$ is a multiple of $e^xe'^{x'}$.

(5) Suppose now we consider how in the expansion of R such a term as $\cos\{(13n-8n')\,t+Q\}$ is to be produced. It might be produced by

$$7\,\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ 6\,(nt+\epsilon-\varpi),\text{ and }(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi').$$

This (by what has gone before) would have for coefficient a multiple of e^6e'; of the seventh order. But it might be produced by

$$8\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ 5(nt+\epsilon-\varpi),$$

$$9\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ 4(nt+\epsilon-\varpi),\quad (n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'),$$

$$10\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ 3(nt+\epsilon-\varpi),\ 2(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'),$$

$$11\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ 2(nt+\epsilon-\varpi),\ 3(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'),$$

$$12\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\quad (nt+\epsilon-\varpi),\ 4(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'),$$

$$13\{(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ 5(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi');$$

and the coefficients of these combinations would be multiples respectively of e^5, e^4e', $e^3e'^2$, $e^2e'^3$, ee'^4, e'^5: all of the fifth order: and $13-8=5$. By trying any other combinations it will be seen that their coefficients are of the seventh, ninth, or some higher order, but that none can be formed with coefficients of a lower order. And as the same reasoning applies in all other cases, we easily arrive at this general conclusion, that

"The principal coefficient of a term $\cos\{(pn-qn')t+Q\}$ in the expansion of R is of the order $p-q$."

133. This remark applies also to the terms

$$r\frac{dR}{dr},\ \frac{dR}{da},\ \frac{dR}{d\epsilon},\ \text{and}\ \frac{dR}{d\varpi},$$

since the powers of e and e' are not altered by these differentiations. But in $\frac{dR}{de}$ one power of e is lost in the differentiation, and therefore "The principal coefficient of a term $\cos\{(pn-qn')t+Q\}$ in $\frac{dR}{de}$, is of the order $p-q-1$."

134. PROP. 54. The principal part of the coefficient of a term $\frac{\sin}{\cos}\{(pn-qn')t+Q\}$, either in the longitude or in the radius vector, is of the order $p-q$.

By referring to (119) it will be seen that the coefficient of the term depending on $\{(13n-8n')t+Q\}$ is of the fifth order, and that this is a consequence of the coefficient of the corresponding term in R (depending on that argument) being of the fifth order; and in the same way it would be seen

that the form of one term in the longitude is of the same form as the term of R by which it was produced, and that its coefficient is of the same order as the coefficient of the term in R. But besides this, there is a term depending on $\{(12n - 8n')\,t + S\}$, of the fourth order: and thus it would be seen that from any other term of R there is derived a term in which $p - q$ is less by 1 than in the term of R, and in which the order is also lowered by 1. Thus it is seen that the law which we have mentioned is strictly preserved in all the terms of the longitude.

It might be supposed that the loss of one power of e in $\frac{dR}{de}$ by differentiation, and that of another power in its application, {for $\frac{d\varpi}{dt} = -\frac{na\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{\mu e}\frac{dR}{de}$ (115)}, would have interrupted this law: but it does not. For after the substitution of the integral of this term in $nt + \epsilon - \varpi + x$ (119) and the expansion of the sine, it is multiplied by e; and the sine and cosine are then combined in such a manner with sine and cosine of $nt + \epsilon - \varpi$, that a term such as $\{(13n - 8n')\,t + Q\}$ is changed to such a one as $\{(12n - 8n')\,t + S\}$; and the law that we have mentioned is still preserved.

And by referring to (120) it will be seen that the same remarks apply in all respects to the terms in the radius vector.

135. We have shewn in (94) and in (119) that the terms which produce the most important perturbations in the longitude and radius vector are those in which $pn - qn'$ is small, or in which p and q must be nearly as $n' : n$. But from this proposition it appears that they will have coefficients of the order $p - q$, and therefore they will not be considerable except $p - q$ be small. Consequently p and q must both be small. The problem of finding the terms which rise to importance is therefore reduced to this; to find two small integer numbers p and q very nearly in the proportion of n' to n. And it is by discovering terms of this kind that all the most important inequalities depending on the eccentricities, &c. have been found.

136. PROP. 55. To point out the relation between the mutual disturbances of two planets.

Suppose m and m' to be the masses of the two planets: R and R' the function on which the disturbance of each depends. Then

$$R = \frac{m'r\cos(\theta'-\theta)}{r'^2} - \frac{m'}{\sqrt{\{r'^2 - 2rr'\cos(\theta'-\theta)+r^2\}}},$$

$$R' = \frac{mr'\cos(\theta-\theta')}{r^2} - \frac{m}{\sqrt{\{r^2 - 2r'r\cos(\theta-\theta')+r'^2\}}}.$$

Since $\cos(\theta-\theta') = \cos(\theta'-\theta)$, the last terms of these expressions differ only in having m' and m respectively in their numerators.

137. Now the first terms can produce, when developed in terms of t, only cosines of combinations of $nt+\epsilon-(n't+\epsilon')$ with multiples of $nt+\epsilon-\varpi$ and of $n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'$. Hence they cannot produce the principal terms in any of the important inequalities of the form $\cos\{(pn-qn')t+Q\}$, except p or $q=1$. For instance, they could produce the term

$$\cos\{13(nt+\epsilon)-8(n't+\epsilon')+Q\},$$

only by the product of

$$\cos\{nt+\epsilon-(n't+\epsilon')\},\ e^{12}\cos\{12(nt+\epsilon-\varpi)\},\ e'^7\cos\{7(n't+\epsilon'-\varpi')\},$$

which would be of the 19th order: whereas there are other terms of the 5th order with the same argument. And the terms, in which p or q or both are $=1$, are added to terms resulting from the expansion of the other fraction, in such a manner that no simple relation can be assigned.

138. If then we confine ourselves to the terms where neither p nor $q=1$, and in which $pn-qn'$ is small, and if we take only the most important part of their results, we can find a simple relation between the perturbations of the two planets. For let one term of R be the sum of the series of terms

$$m' [Me^k e'^l \cos \{(pn - qn')\, t + p\epsilon - q\epsilon' - k\varpi - l\varpi'\}$$
$$+ Ne^o e'^s \cos \{(pn - qn')\, t + p\epsilon - q\epsilon' - o\varpi - s\varpi')\}$$
$$+ \&c.]$$

where $p - q = k + l = o + s = \&c.$: which sum admits of being collected in the form $P \cos \{(pn - qn')\, t + p\epsilon - q\epsilon' + Q\}$: then, proceeding as in (119), we find for the principal inequality in the longitude of m,

$$+ \frac{m'}{\mu} aP \frac{3n^2 p}{(pn - qn')^2} \sin \{(pn - qn')\, t + p\epsilon - q\epsilon' + Q\}.$$

Similarly for the principal inequality in the longitude of m',

$$- \frac{m}{\mu} a'P \frac{3n'^2 q}{(pn - qn')^2} \sin \{(pn - qn')\, t + p\epsilon - q\epsilon' + Q\}.$$

The proportion of these is $- \frac{m' a n^2 p}{m a' n'^2 q}$. But as pn and qn' are very nearly equal, $\frac{np}{n'q} = 1$ nearly, and the proportion is $- \frac{m' a n}{m a' n'}$. Now $n = \frac{\sqrt{(\mu)}}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}}$; $n' = \frac{\sqrt{(\mu)}}{a'^{\frac{3}{2}}}$: and μ (the sum of the masses of the sun and planet) may be considered the same for both. Hence $\frac{n}{n'} = \frac{a'^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}}$: and therefore

$$\frac{\text{coefficient of long inequality of } m}{\text{coefficient of corresponding inequality of } m'} = - \frac{m' a'^{\frac{1}{2}}}{m a^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

From the sign it appears that while in consequence of this inequality one planet is *before* its mean place, the other is *behind* its mean place.

139. The same term of R will furnish other inequalities in the longitude of m and m', as in (119). The proportion might be simply assigned if they were produced by only a single term with the coefficient $Me^k e'^l$. But from the manner in which the inequalities are derived, the proportion will be different for each different term, and therefore no simple proportion of the aggregates can be assigned.

*139. There is another class of disturbances which deserves a moment's notice. Since the expression for R depends upon r' and θ', where r' and θ' ought to have the *actual values* which they bear under all circumstances, we ought to annex, to the elliptic values of r' and θ', the terms arising from perturbation of m' whether by m or by a third planet m''. In the formation of R, the terms produced by m'' will be combined with terms produced by m and m', and will form a combination depending on the mean longitudes of *three* planets. Thus, in the disturbance of Mars by Jupiter, there is a term depending on 4 × mean long. Mars − 3 × mean long. Jupiter; in the formation of R for the Earth as disturbed by Mars, this term will be combined with the term 4 × mean long. Earth − 4 × mean long. Mars; and the combination will produce a term depending on

−4×mean long. Earth+8×mean long. Mars−3×mean long. Jupiter.

There are several other combinations which produce similar terms. This term goes through all its periodic changes in not less than 1784 years. In consequence of this great length of period, an inequality of the same period is produced in the Earth's motion, whose coefficient exceeds 6″. This term was discovered by M. Le Verrier.

140. PROP. 56. To examine the parts of R which are independent of t.

We shall proceed in our examination only to the second order of eccentricities.

(1) The first term of R is $\frac{m'r\cos(\theta-\theta')}{r'^2}$. Remarking the expression for r in (87), and that for $\cos(\theta-\theta')$ in (130); putting (for brevity) x for $nt+\epsilon-\varpi$, x' for $n't+\epsilon'-\varpi'$, and y for $(nt+\epsilon)-(n't+\epsilon')$; and omitting constant factors; this term is the product of the three series,

$$1-e\cos x-\frac{e^2}{2}\cos 2x,$$

$$1+2e'\cos x'+\frac{5e'^2}{2}\cos 2x';$$

$$\cos y+\sin y\,(-2e\sin x+2e'\sin x')$$
$$+\cos y\,(-2e^2\sin^2 x+4ee'\sin x.\sin x'-2e'^2\sin^2 x').$$

Remarking the form of the values of x, x', and y, it will be seen that the only constant terms which can possibly arise in this product must be $\sin(\varpi - \varpi')$ or $\cos(\varpi - \varpi')$, and that these can arise only from the combination of the three arcs y, x, x'. Confining our attention then to these, we find in the development the following terms,

$$\begin{aligned}
&-2ee' \cdot \cos y \cdot \cos x \cdot \cos x' \\
&-4ee' \cdot \sin y \cdot \sin x \cdot \cos x' \\
&-2ee' \cdot \sin y \cdot \cos x \cdot \sin x' \\
&+4ee' \cdot \cos y \cdot \sin x \cdot \sin x' \\
&= -2ee' \cdot \cos x \cdot \cos(y - x') - 4ee' \cdot \sin x \cdot \sin(y - x') \\
&= -2ee' \cdot \cos(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) \cdot \cos\{nt + \epsilon - 2(n't + \epsilon') + \varpi'\} \\
&\quad -4ee' \cdot \sin(nt + \epsilon - \varpi) \cdot \sin\{nt + \epsilon - 2(n't + \epsilon') + \varpi'\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Neither of these terms produces a constant, independent of t. Thus, to the second order, there is no constant term in the development of $\dfrac{m'r\cos(\theta - \theta')}{r'^2}$.

(2) If we examine the development of

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{r^2 - 2rr'\cos(\theta - \theta') + r'^2\}}} \text{ in (129),}$$

we shall find in $-\dfrac{m'}{\sqrt{\{r^2 - 2rr'\cos(\theta - \theta') + r'^2\}}}$ these constant terms,

$$-\frac{m'C^{(0)}}{2} - \frac{m'ae^2}{4} \cdot \frac{dC^{(0)}}{da} - \frac{m'a'e'^2}{4} \cdot \frac{dC^{(0)}}{da'}$$

$$-\frac{m'a^2e^2}{8} \cdot \frac{d^2C^{(0)}}{da^2} - \frac{m'a'^2e'^2}{8} \cdot \frac{d^2C^{(0)}}{da'^2}$$

{where the two last terms are introduced by $\cos^2(nt + \epsilon - \varpi)$ &c.}

$$-m'C^{(1)}ee'\cos(\varpi - \varpi')$$

$$-m'\frac{ee'}{2}\left(a'\frac{dC^{(1)}}{da'} + a\frac{dC^{(1)}}{da}\right)\cos(\varpi - \varpi')$$

$$-m'aa'\frac{ee'}{4} \cdot \frac{d^2C^{(1)}}{da.da'}\cos(\varpi - \varpi')$$

{by expanding $\cos(\theta - \theta')$}

and other smaller terms.

By the use of the formulæ of (127) and (128) these collected terms may be put under the form

$$-\frac{m'C^{(0)}}{2} - m'\frac{D^{(1)}aa'}{8}(e^2+e'^2) + m'\frac{D^{(2)}aa'}{4}ee'\cos(\varpi-\varpi').$$

141. PROP. 57. To examine the terms which produce permanent variations in any of the elements.

The terms of R which depend on t are always in the form of a cosine with a constant coefficient. These terms then {as will be seen on referring to (118)} can produce only periodical variations in the elements. It might at first sight appear that there is in ϵ, a term multiplied by t, but {as in (119)} it will be seen that there is always in $n_1 t$ a similar term which destroys it. It will be sufficient therefore to examine the constant terms found above.

(1) With regard to these terms, $\frac{dR}{d\epsilon}=0$ (since ϵ is not found in them): therefore there is no constant term in $\frac{da_1}{dt}$, or no permanent variation in the axis major. Similarly there is no permanent variation in n_1.

(2) The value of $\frac{dR}{d\varpi}$ is

$$-m'\frac{D^{(2)}aa'}{4}ee'\sin(\varpi-\varpi'):$$

hence the constant term of $\frac{de_1}{dt}$ is

$$-\frac{m'}{\mu}\cdot\frac{na^2a'D^{(2)}}{4}e'\sin(\varpi-\varpi').$$

Similarly the constant term of $\frac{de'_1}{dt}$ is

$$+\frac{m}{\mu}\cdot\frac{n'aa'^2D^{(2)}}{4}e\sin(\varpi-\varpi').$$

The eccentricities change therefore in opposite directions: it is easily seen that

$$mn'a'e_1\frac{de_1}{dt}+m'na'e'_1\frac{de'_1}{dt}=0,$$

or that $mn'a'e'^2_{,} + m'nae'^2_{,}$ is constant.

(3) The value of $\frac{dR}{de}$ is

$$-m'\frac{D^{(1)}aa'e}{4} + m'\frac{D^{(2)}aa'}{4}e'\cos(\varpi - \varpi'),$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{d\varpi_{,}}{dt} = \frac{m'}{\mu}\cdot\frac{na^2a'}{4}\{D^{(1)} - D^{(2)}\frac{e'}{e}\cos(\varpi - \varpi')\}.$$

$D^{(1)}$ is greater than $D^{(2)}$; and hence, unless $\frac{e'}{e}$ be large, and $\cos(\varpi - \varpi')$ positive, the longitude of perihelion will increase, or the apse will progress.

$$\frac{d\varpi'_{,}}{dt} \text{ similarly } = \frac{m}{\mu}\cdot\frac{n'aa'^2}{4}\{D^{(1)} - D^{(2)}\frac{e}{e'}\cos(\varpi - \varpi')\}.$$

(4) The principal part of $\frac{dR}{da}$ is

$$-\frac{m'}{2}\cdot\frac{dC^{(0)}}{da},$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{d\epsilon_{,}}{dt} = -\frac{m'}{\mu}na^2\frac{dC^{(0)}}{da}.$$

If the orbit of m be exterior to that of m', or if a be $> a'$, it appears from the expansion of (121) that $\frac{dC^{(0)}}{da}$ is negative, and therefore $\frac{d\epsilon_{,}}{dt}$ is positive. Let it $= B$: then $\epsilon_{,} = \epsilon + Bt$: hence the mean longitude or $n_{,}t + \epsilon_{,} = (n + B)\,t + \epsilon$. This shews that the mean motion is greater than that in an undisturbed orbit with the same axis major. {We have in (93*) arrived at a result equivalent to this.} If a were less than a', $C^{(0)}$ would be expanded by powers of $\frac{a}{a'}$, $\frac{dC^{(0)}}{da}$ would be positive, and the mean motion would be less than in an undisturbed orbit.

142. It is almost unnecessary to remark that the disturbing effect of several planets will be the sum of their separate disturbances. This always holds when the equations for the perturbations are linear, as in the planetary theory.

*142. The following very simple theorem on the changes of eccentricities in a system of several planets is worthy of attention.

Considering the subscripts 0, 1, 2, &c., as related to the planets m, m', m'', &c., we find, for secular terms only,

$$\frac{4m\mu}{na} \times e_i \frac{de_i}{dt} = -mm'aa' D^{(2)}_{0,1} ee' \cdot \sin(\varpi - \varpi') - mm''aa'' D^{(2)}_{0,2} ee'' \cdot \sin(\varpi - \varpi'') - \&c.$$

$$\frac{4m'\mu}{n'a'} \times e_i' \frac{de_i'}{dt} = -m'ma'a D^{(2)}_{1,0} e'e \cdot \sin(\varpi' - \varpi) - m'm''a'a'' D^{(2)}_{1,2} e'e'' \cdot \sin(\varpi' - \varpi'') - \&c.$$

$$\frac{4m''\mu}{n''a''} \times e_i'' \frac{de_i''}{dt} = -m''ma''a D^{(2)}_{2,0} e''e \cdot \sin(\varpi'' - \varpi) - m''m'a''a' D^{(2)}_{2,1} e''e' \cdot \sin(\varpi'' - \varpi') - \&c.$$

and so on.

Adding all these equations, and remarking that $D^{(2)}_{0,1}$ is the same as $D^{(2)}_{1,0}$, &c., it will be seen that the sum of the right-hand quantities = 0. Omitting the common factor 2μ on the left,

$$\frac{m}{na} 2e_i \frac{de_i}{dt} + \frac{m'}{n'a'} 2e_i' \frac{de_i'}{dt} + \frac{m''}{n''a''} 2e_i'' \frac{de_i''}{dt} + \&c. = 0;$$

$$\text{or } \frac{m}{na} e_i^2 + \frac{m'}{n'a'} e_i'^2 + \frac{m''}{n''a''} e_i''^2 + \&c. \text{ is constant.}$$

Or, as $na = \sqrt{\frac{\mu}{a}}$,

$$m\sqrt{(a)}\, e_i^2 + m'\sqrt{(a')}\, e_i'^2 + m''\sqrt{(a'')}\, e_i''^2 + \&c. \text{ is constant.}$$

143. We have stated that though we ought in strictness to substitute in every term of R the *variable* values of the elements, yet it is generally sufficient to use *constant* values.

But this is hardly accurate enough in the calculation of some equations of long period, where e, and ϖ, alter considerably in the period. In general however it will be sufficient to substitute for them $e+Et$ and $\varpi+\Pi t$, {where E and Π are the values of $\frac{de}{dt}$ and $\frac{d\varpi}{dt}$ found in (141)} in the values of

$$\frac{dR}{de}, \quad \frac{dR}{d\varpi}, \quad \frac{dR}{de},$$

and then proceed with the integration.

144. PROP. 58. To investigate the secular variations of the eccentricity and longitude of perihelion.

We have now sufficiently explained the method of calculating those variations of the elements whose period is not very long. For these we either neglect or estimate approximately the secular variations of the elements. Similarly to calculate accurately the secular variations, we may neglect the variations of short period. Putting

$$e\cos\varpi = u, \quad e\sin\varpi = v,$$

$$\text{and } e'\cos\varpi' = u', \quad e'\sin\varpi' = v',$$

the equations of (141) for the variations of the eccentricity and perihelion are easily changed to

$$\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{m'}{\mu}\cdot\frac{na^2a'}{4}(-D^{(1)}v + D^{(2)}v'),$$

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{m'}{\mu}\cdot\frac{na^2a'}{4}(D^{(1)}u - D^{(2)}u'),$$

$$\frac{du'}{dt} = \frac{m}{\mu}\cdot\frac{n'a'^2a}{4}(-D^{(1)}v' + D^{(2)}v),$$

$$\frac{dv'}{dt} = \frac{m}{\mu}\cdot\frac{n'a'^2a}{4}(D^{(1)}u' - D^{(2)}u).$$

Solving these as simultaneous equations, we find

$$u = p_1\cos(\alpha_1 t - q_1) + p_2\cos(\alpha_2 t - q_2),$$

$$v = p_1\sin(\alpha_1 t - q_1) + p_2\sin(\alpha_2 t - q_2),$$

$$u' = \frac{p_1}{x_1}\cos(\alpha_1 t - q_1) + \frac{p_2}{x_2}\cos(\alpha_2 t - q_2),$$

$$v' = \frac{p_1}{x_1}\sin(\alpha_1 t - q_1) + \frac{p_2}{x_2}\sin(\alpha_2 t - q_2),$$

where p_1, p_2, q_1, q_2, are arbitrary constants, to be determined so as to make the expressions for u, v, &c. represent the known values of u, v, &c. at any one time: the two values of α_1 and α_2 are

$$\frac{aa'}{8\mu}\left[(mn'a' + m'na)\,D^{(1)}\right.$$

$$\left. \mp \sqrt{\{(m'na - mn'a')^2 . D^{(1)^2} + 4m'na . mn'a' . D^{(2)^2}\}}\right],$$

and the two values of x_1 and x_2

$$\frac{1}{2mn'a'D^{(2)}}\left[(mn'a' - m'na)\,D^{(1)}\right.$$

$$\left. \pm \sqrt{\{(m'na - mn'a')^2 . D^{(1)^2} + 4m'na . mn'a' . D^{(2)^2}\}}\right].$$

Then

$$e = \sqrt{(u^2 + v^2)}:\ \tan\varpi = \frac{v}{u}:\ e' = \sqrt{(u'^2 + v'^2)}:\ \tan\varpi = \frac{v'}{u'}.$$

A similar process is to be used when the secular variations produced by the mutual perturbations of several planets are to be calculated.

On examining the geometrical meaning* of these expressions it is easily seen that the motion of perihelion is on the whole progressive; and that its mean period is $\frac{2\pi}{\alpha_1}$ if p_1 be greater than p_2, and $\frac{2\pi}{\alpha_2}$ if p_2 be greater than p_1. Similarly the motion of perihelion of m' is on the whole progressive; and its mean period is $\frac{2\pi}{\alpha_1}$ if $\frac{p_1}{x_1}$ be greater than $\frac{p_2}{x_2}$, or $\frac{2\pi}{\alpha_2}$ if $\frac{p_2}{x_2}$ be greater than $\frac{p_1}{x_1}$.

---

* The center of each orbit describes an Epitrochoid round the focus which coincides with the Sun's center. This will be seen on comparing the expressions for u and v (which are rectangular co-ordinates, referred to the focus) with the expressions for x and y in Peacock's *Examples*, p. 193; Todhunter's *Differential and Integral Calculus*, Art. 361. The circles must be supposed to revolve uniformly.

145. We shall conclude with shortly describing the process to be followed when the orbits of the planets are inclined. If we put

$$R = -\frac{m'}{\sqrt{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2+(z'-z)^2\}}} + \frac{m'(x'x+y'y+z'z)}{(x'^2+y'^2+z'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

equations similar to those of (77) may be found. If we take for xy the plane of the disturbed planet's orbit at a given time, z is only the effect of the disturbing force and may therefore be neglected in R. And all the equations for the perturbations of radius vector and longitude, or for the variation of the major axis, &c. hold equally well: the only difference in the process is, that for R we must expand

$$-\frac{m'}{\sqrt{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2+z'^2\}}} + \frac{m'(x'x+y'y)}{(x'^2+y'^2+z'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

The perturbation in latitude may be calculated from the equation

$$\frac{d^2z}{dt^2} = -\frac{\mu}{r^3}z + \frac{m'z'}{\{(x'-x)^2+(y'-y)^2+z'^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{m'z'}{(x'^2+y'^2+z'^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

which being integrated as in the note to (87), the tan. latitude or $\frac{z}{r}$ is found.

The latitude may also be found by investigating the variations of the longitude of the node and of the inclinations. For this, as well as for the peculiarities of the theory of Jupiter's satellites, and other more recondite parts of the Problem of Three Bodies, we refer to the Encyclopædia Metropolitana Art. *Physical Astronomy*, to Woodhouse's Physical Astronomy, to Lubbock's Essays, to the Mécanique Céleste of Laplace, or to the Théorie Analytique of Pontécoulant.

FIGURE OF THE EARTH.

PRELIMINARY PROPOSITIONS.

1. PROP. 1. THE sections of two similar and concentric and similarly situated spheroids, made by the same plane, are similar and concentric ellipses, similarly situated.

Let BK, CG, (fig. 5) be the sections, which will be ellipses (Hustler's *Conic Sections*, p. 62; Hymers' *Geometry of Three Dimensions*, Art. 103). Join W, the center of the spheroid, with N, the center of the ellipse BK, and let ABE, HCD be sections by any plane through NW: these will evidently be similar ellipses, whose common center is W. And since BK is bisected in N, BN is an ordinate to the semidiameter AW in the ellipse ABE, and is therefore parallel to the tangent at A, and therefore to that at H (as the ellipses are similar); hence, CN is an ordinate to WH, in the smaller ellipse. Let WD and WE be the semi-conjugate diameters: then,

$$NC^2 = \frac{WD^2}{WH^2} \cdot (WH^2 - WN^2); \quad NB^2 = \frac{WE^2}{WA^2} \cdot (WA^2 - WN^2);$$

and, as the ellipses DCH, EBA, are similar,

$$\frac{WD^2}{WH^2} = \frac{WE^2}{WA^2}; \quad \therefore \frac{NC^2}{NB^2} = \frac{WH^2 - WN^2}{WA^2 - WN^2},$$

a constant value for the same plane; hence, the two curves BK, CG, are similar, and similarly situated, with respect to N: but N is the center of the ellipse BK; therefore it is also the center of CG.

2. PROP. 2. Let AGB, CSK, (fig. 6 and 6*a*) be two ellipses, concentric, similar, and similarly situated; through C, the extremity of the axis of the smaller ellipse, draw ECO

perpendicular to that axis, meeting the larger ellipse in E and O; draw EF parallel to the same axis; then, if the angles GEF, FEH, KCD, DCL, be all equal, $EG + EH$ will be equal to $CK + CL$.

3. For draw the diameter $QTNV$ bisecting EG in R; and draw OP parallel to EG.

Since EG is bisected by QV, EG is an ordinate to that diameter; so also is OP, which is parallel to EG. And because the two ellipses are similar, the tangent at Q is parallel to that at S; hence CK being parallel to EG, or parallel to the tangent at Q, is also parallel to the tangent at S; it is therefore an ordinate to the diameter SN, and is bisected by it in T. Now, because OP is parallel to EG, and EF perpendicular to EO, the angle COP is the complement of GEF; and CEH is also the complement of HEF; but $GEF = HEF$; $\therefore$ CEH is equal to COP. And the point O has the same situation in the semi-ellipse AOB, which E has in AEB. Hence, $OP = EH$. But as $CE = CO$, and ER, CT, OV, are parallel, if through T the line rTv be drawn parallel to ECO, Rr will $= Vv$, and $Er = Ov = CT$. Hence

$$ER + OV = Er - Rr + Ov + Vv = 2CT;$$

doubling both sides,

$$EG + OP, \text{ or } EG + EH = 2CK = CK + CL.$$

4. Prop. 3. If the angles made by EG and EH with EF be increased till the point G falls on the other side of E, as in fig. 7, then

$$EH - EG = CK + CL.$$

Making the same construction, we find

$$OV - ER = Ov + Vv - (Rr - Er) = 2CT,$$

whence $OP - EG$, or $EH - EG, = 2CK = CK + CL$.

5. Prop. 4. The vertical solid angle of a homogeneous pyramid being given, and the attraction of every particle of the pyramid upon any other particle being supposed to vary as

$\frac{\text{mass}}{(\text{distance})^2}$; the attraction of the whole pyramid upon a particle placed at the vertex, is proportional to its length.

For conceive the pyramid to be divided into an indefinitely great number of strata of the same thickness, by sections perpendicular to its axis: the homologous sides of these sections will be as the distance from the vertex; therefore the areas of the sections will be as the square of that distance; and therefore the mass included between two sections will be ultimately as the square of that distance. But the attraction on a particle at the vertex is as the mass directly, and as the square of the distance inversely. Hence, the attraction of every stratum is the same; and, consequently, the whole attraction of the pyramid will be proportional to the number of strata, that is, to its length.

In the same manner it appears, that the attraction of a frustrum of the same pyramid upon a particle placed at the vertex of the pyramid, is as the length of the frustrum.

6. PROP. 5. If the base of a pyramid, whose vertical solid angle is small, be given, the attraction on a point in the vertex is proportional to $\frac{\text{base}}{\text{length}}$.

For if b be the base, l the length, x the distance of any section from the vertex, the area of this section $= \frac{bx^2}{l^2}$; hence, the mass included between the section at the distance x, and that at the distance $x + \delta x$, ultimately $= \frac{bx^2\delta x}{l^2}$; and its attraction $= \frac{b\delta x}{l^2}$; putting u for the attraction, $\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{b}{l^2}$; $\therefore u = \frac{bx}{l^2}$, which for the whole pyramid $= \frac{b}{l}$.

7. If we put k for the density of the matter, that is, if the attraction of the matter in the volume M, on a point at the distance D, produce an accelerating force $= \frac{Mk}{D^2}$,

then the attraction of one stratum ultimately $= \frac{kb\delta x}{l^2}$, whence $u = \frac{kbx}{l^2}$, or for the whole pyramid $= \frac{kb}{l}$.

ON THE ATTRACTION OF AN OBLATE SPHEROID.

8. PROP. 6. To find the attraction of an oblate spheroid on a particle placed at its pole.

Let B, (fig. 8), be the pole of the spheroid, BD the axis; let the spheroid be divided into wedges, by planes passing through BD, two of which are BPD, BQD, making with each other the very small angle ω; in these planes draw BP, BQ making with BD the angle θ, and Bp, Bq, making with BP, BQ the very small angle $\delta\theta$; and suppose the wedge divided into pyramids similar to BPq. Let x be the abscissa of P, measured along the axis of the spheroid; y its ordinate; let $BP = r$. If through qp a section $pqts$ be drawn perpendicular to the axis of the pyramid; since qp ultimately $= y\omega$, and $qt = r\delta\theta$, the area of this section $= ry\omega\delta\theta$; therefore by (7), the attraction of the pyramid $= \frac{kry\omega\delta\theta}{r} = ky\omega\delta\theta$. This is in the direction BP: but as the whole attraction of the spheroid will evidently be in the direction BD, we must resolve the attraction of the pyramid into one parallel to BD, and one perpendicular to BD: the former will be effective, but the latter will be counteracted by forces in the opposite direction. The effective part

$$= ky\omega\delta\theta \cdot \frac{x}{r} = kr \cdot \sin\theta \cdot \cos\theta \cdot \omega \cdot \delta\theta.$$

Let a be the equatoreal radius of the spheroid, b the semiaxis;

$$\text{then } y^2 = \frac{a^2}{b^2}(2bx - x^2).$$

Putting for x and y their values $r\cos\theta$ and $r\sin\theta$, and e for the eccentricity of the generating ellipse, this becomes

$$r^2 \sin^2\theta = \frac{a^2}{b^2}(2br\cos\theta - r^2\cos^2\theta),$$

$$\text{whence } r = \frac{2b\cos\theta}{1 - \frac{a^2-b^2}{a^2}\sin^2\theta} = \frac{2b\cos\theta}{1-e^2\sin^2\theta}.$$

Hence, the attraction of the pyramid ultimately

$$= k\omega \frac{2b\cos^2\theta \,.\, \sin\theta \,.\, \delta\theta}{1-e^2\sin^2\theta},$$

and if w be the attraction of the wedge,

$$\frac{dw}{d\theta} = 2kb\omega \frac{\cos^2\theta \,.\, \sin\theta}{1-e^2\sin^2\theta}.$$

Let $\cos\theta = z$; then

$$\frac{dw}{dz} = -2kb\omega \frac{z^2}{1-e^2+e^2z^2};$$

integrating,

$$w = -\frac{2kb\omega}{e^2}\left\{z - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e}\tan^{-1}\frac{ez}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\right\}.$$

Taking this from $\theta = 0$, to $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, or from $z = 1$, to $z = 0$,

$$w = 2kb\omega\left\{\frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3}\tan^{-1}\frac{e}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\right\}.$$

This is the attraction of a wedge whose angle is ω; and since the attraction of every wedge with an equal angle must be the same, the attraction of the whole spheroid will be found by putting 2π in the place of ω; that is, the attraction

$$= 4\pi \,.\, kb\left\{\frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3}\tan^{-1}\frac{e}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\right\}$$

$$= 4\pi \,.\, kb\left\{\frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3}\sin^{-1}e\right\}.$$

9. If the spheroid differs very little from a sphere, we may put $a = b(1+\epsilon)$; ϵ is then called the ellipticity of the spheroid. Then $e^2 = 2\epsilon$, nearly. Hence, the attraction of the pyramid

$$= 2bk\omega \frac{\cos^2\theta \,.\, \sin\theta \,.\, \delta\theta}{1-2\epsilon\sin^2\theta}$$

$$= 2bk\omega\,(\cos^3\theta\,.\sin\theta\,.\,\delta\theta + 2\epsilon\cos^2\theta\,.\sin^3\theta\,.\,\delta\theta),\text{ nearly}$$
$$= 2bk\omega\,(\cos^3\theta + 2\epsilon\cos^2\theta - 2\epsilon\cos^4\theta)\sin\theta\,.\,\delta\theta;$$

whence the attraction of the wedge

$$= 2bk\omega\,(-\frac{\cos^3\theta}{3} - \frac{2\epsilon}{3}\cos^3\theta + \frac{2\epsilon}{5}\cos^5\theta);$$

and taking this integral from $\theta = 0$, to $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, the attraction of the wedge

$$= 2bk\omega\left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2\epsilon}{3} - \frac{2\epsilon}{5}\right) = \frac{2}{3}bk\omega\left(1 + \frac{4\epsilon}{5}\right).$$

Then the attraction of the whole spheroid is found as before, by putting 2π for ω, and is, therefore,

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}kb\left(1 + \frac{4\epsilon}{5}\right).$$

10. PROP. 7. To find the attraction of an oblate spheroid on a particle at its equator.

Let ARM, fig. 9, be the equator of the spheroid; AZ a perpendicular to it from the attracted point A; suppose the spheroid divided into wedges, by planes passing through AZ; let two of these planes, very near each other, be APR, Apr; and drawing the diameter AM, let $MAR = \phi$, $MAr = \phi + \delta\phi$. Then suppose the lines AP, Ap, to be drawn in the planes APR, Apr, making with AR, Ar, equal angles θ; and AQ, Aq to be very near them, making with AR, Ar equal angles $\theta + \delta\theta$. If through q we draw a plane $qtsw$ perpendicular to the axis of the small pyramid APq,

$$wq \text{ ultimately} = r\cos\theta\,.\,\delta\phi,\ qt = r\delta\theta,$$

and the base of the pyramid

$$= wq\,.\,qt = r^2\cos\theta\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\,\delta\theta;$$

therefore by (7), its attraction in the direction AP

$$= \frac{kr^2\cos\theta\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\,\delta\theta}{r} = kr\cos\theta\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\,\delta\theta.$$

Draw PN perpendicular to the plane of the equator: NO perpendicular to AM; let $AO = x$, $ON = y$, $NP = z$. If we resolve

the attraction of the pyramid into two parts, one in the direction AN, and the other in NP, the latter of these will be counteracted by the attraction of another pyramid in the same wedge, equally inclined to AR but on the opposite side; and the former

$$= kr \cos\theta \,.\, \delta\phi \,.\, \delta\theta \,.\, \cos\theta = kr \cos^2\theta \,.\, \delta\phi \,.\, \delta\theta.$$

This is in the direction AN; if we resolve it into two in the directions AO, ON, the latter of these will be counteracted by the attraction of an equal pyramid, in another wedge which makes the same angle with AM; and the former

$$= kr \cos^2\theta \,.\, \delta\phi \,.\, \delta\theta \,.\, \cos\phi = kr \cos\phi \,.\, \cos^2\theta \,.\, \delta\phi \,.\, \delta\theta.$$

Now if, through C the center, we had drawn the polar axis parallel to NP, and if we had taken a section of the spheroid through the polar axis and NP, that section would have been an ellipse similar and equal to ABM. Hence

$$PN^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(AC^2 - CN^2)$$

$$= \frac{b^2}{a^2}(AC^2 - CO^2 - ON^2)$$

$$= \frac{b^2}{a^2}\{AC^2 - (AC - AO)^2 - ON^2\},$$

$$\text{or } z^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ax - x^2 - y^2);$$

putting for x, y, and z, their values

$$r\cos\theta \,.\, \cos\phi, \qquad r\cos\theta \,.\, \sin\phi, \qquad r\sin\theta,$$

it becomes

$$r^2\sin^2\theta = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ar\cos\theta \,.\, \cos\phi - r^2\cos^2\theta \,.\, \cos^2\phi - r^2\cos^2\theta \,.\, \sin^2\phi);$$

$$\therefore\ r = \frac{2b^2}{a} \cdot \frac{\cos\theta \,.\, \cos\phi}{(1-e^2)\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta}.$$

Hence, the effective attraction of the pyramid

$$= \frac{2kb^2}{a} \cdot \frac{\cos^2\phi \,.\, \cos^2\theta \,.\, \delta\phi \,.\, \delta\theta}{(1-e^2)\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta}.$$

Let w be the effective attraction of the wedge;

$$\frac{dw}{d\theta} = \frac{2kb^2}{a}\cos^2\phi \,.\, \delta\phi \cdot \frac{\cos^2\theta}{(1-e^2)\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta}.$$

To integrate this, let $\sin\theta = v$;

$$\frac{dw}{dv} = \frac{2kb^2}{a}\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\,\frac{1-v^2}{(1-e^2)+e^2v^2};$$

$$\therefore\ w = \frac{2kb^2}{a}\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\left\{-\frac{v}{e^2} + \frac{1}{e^3\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\tan^{-1}\frac{ev}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\right\}.$$

Taking this from $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{2}$, to $\theta = +\frac{\pi}{2}$, or from $v = -1$, to $v = +1$,

$$w = \frac{2kb^2}{a}\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\left\{\frac{2}{e^3\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}\tan^{-1}\frac{e}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}} - \frac{2}{e^2}\right\}$$

$$= 4kb\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\left\{\frac{1}{e^3}\sin^{-1}e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2}\right\}.$$

Hence, if u be the attraction of the spheroid,

$$\frac{du}{d\phi} = 4kb\cos^2\phi\left\{\frac{1}{e^3}\sin^{-1}e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2}\right\};$$

integrating from $\phi = -\frac{\pi}{2}$, to $\phi = +\frac{\pi}{2}$,

$$u = 2kb\pi\left\{\frac{1}{e^3}\sin^{-1}e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2}\right\}.$$

11. If the spheroid differ little from a sphere; putting, as before, $a = b\,(1+\epsilon)$, we find

$$e^2 = 2\epsilon, \quad \frac{b^2}{a} = b\,(1-\epsilon),$$

$$\text{and } \frac{dw}{dv} = 2kb\,(1-\epsilon)\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\,.\,\frac{1-v^2}{1-2\epsilon+2\epsilon v^2}$$

$$= 2kb\,(1-\epsilon)\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\,(1-v^2+2\epsilon-4\epsilon v^2+2\epsilon v^4), \text{ nearly,}$$

$$\text{and } w = 2kb\,(1-\epsilon)\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\left(v - \frac{v^3}{3} + 2\epsilon v - \frac{4\epsilon v^3}{3} + \frac{2\epsilon v^5}{5}\right),$$

which, from $v = -1$, to $v = +1$

$$= 4kb\,(1-\epsilon)\cos^2\phi\,.\,\delta\phi\left(\frac{2}{3} + \frac{16\epsilon}{15}\right)$$

$$= \frac{8kb}{3}(1-\epsilon)\cos^3\phi \,.\, \delta\phi\,(1+\frac{8}{5}\epsilon)$$

$$= \frac{8kb}{3}\cos^2\phi \,.\, \delta\phi\,(1+\frac{3}{5}\epsilon)\,;$$

$$\therefore \frac{du}{d\phi} = \frac{8kb}{3}\cos^2\phi\,(1+\frac{3}{5}\epsilon)\,;$$

therefore integrating from $\phi = -\frac{\pi}{2}$ to $\phi = +\frac{\pi}{2}$,

$$u = \frac{4kb\pi}{3}(1+\frac{3}{5}\epsilon).$$

12. PROP. 8. If E, (fig. 10), be any point on the surface of a spheroid, and EC be drawn perpendicular to the plane of the equator, and a spheroid be described concentric, similar, and similarly situated to the given spheroid, touching EC at C; then the attraction of the given spheroid on E, in a direction parallel to the radius CW, is equal to the attraction of the smaller spheroid in the same direction on the point C.

13. Suppose both spheroids divided into wedges by planes passing through EC: let $EGHB$, $CKDL$, be the sections of both, made by one plane; and $ERSb$, $CTdV$, the sections made by another plane very near the former. Draw EF parallel to CD, and let the angles GEF, HEF, KCD, LCD, be all equal. Let the angles gEF, hEF, kCD, lCD be also equal to each other, and very nearly equal to the former; and suppose the wedge divided into pyramids by planes passing through these lines perpendicular to the plane AEB. Then the angles GEg, HEh, KCk, LCl, are equal. And therefore since the axes of the pyramids GEr, HEs, KCt, LCv, are equally inclined to EC, the edge of the wedge, their solid angles will be equal. Consequently, by (5), their attractions in the directions of their axes will be as their lengths. And the attraction of each in the direction EF or CD will be as its length multiplied by the cosine of the angle which its axis makes with EF or CD; or since this angle is the same for all, the attraction of each in the direction EF or CD will be as its length. Hence the sum of the attractions of EGr and EHs in direction EF: sum of attractions of

CKt and *CLv* in direction *CD* :: *EG* + *EH* : *CK* + *CL*. But, by (1), *AEB* and *CKD* are similar and concentric ellipses; therefore by (2),

$$EG + EH = CK + CL;$$

or the attractions of *GEr* and *HEs* in direction *EF* = attractions of *KCt*, *LCv*, in direction *CD*.

If the point *G* had fallen on the other side of *E*, we should have had, by (4),

$$EH - EG = CK + CL,$$

and therefore the difference of the attractions of the two pyramids, whose vertices are at *E* = the sum of the attractions of those whose vertices are at *C*; but since in this case the resolved part of the attraction of *GEr* is in a direction opposite to *EF*, we may still say, that the attractions of *GEr*, *HEs*, in direction *EF* = attractions of *KCt*, *LCv*, in direction *CD*. And the same is true for all other corresponding pairs of pyramids.

Now since the angle *GEg* = *KCk*, and *HEh* = *LCl*; by taking the same number of pairs of pyramids, we shall at the same time have taken the whole double wedge *AEBO*, and the whole wedge *CKDL*; and for every corresponding pair of pyramids, the attraction in direction *CD* or *EF* is the same; therefore the attraction of *E* by the double wedge *AEBO* in direction *EF*, is the same as the attraction of *C* by the wedge *CKDL*, in direction *CD*.

Now resolve each of these attractions into two, one perpendicular to the axis of the spheroid, another at right angles to this. Since *EC* is parallel to the axis of the spheroid, the perpendiculars upon the axis from *E* and *C* will be parallel; but *EF* and *CD* are parallel: therefore the angle made by *EF* with the perpendicular from *E*, is equal to the angle made by *CD* with the perpendicular from *C*. Consequently, the resolved parts of the equal attractions, in directions perpendicular to the axis of the spheroid, will also be equal. Now the double wedge *AEBO*, and the wedge *CKDL*, are formed by the same planes; and therefore the number of wedges into which the two spheroids can be cut is the same; and since the attractions of each

corresponding pair of wedges, in direction perpendicular to the axis, are the same, the attractions of the whole spheroids in that direction will be the same; or the attraction of the larger spheroid on E, in direction perpendicular to the axis, is equal to the attraction of the smaller spheroid on C, in the same direction.

14. PROP. 9. To find the attraction on E, in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the spheroid.

By the last proposition, this is equal to the attraction of the spheroid CN in the same direction on the point C. And by (10), the attraction of a spheroid, whose polar and equatoreal radii are b and a, on a point in its equator

$$= 2kb\pi \left\{ \frac{1}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2} \right\}$$

$$= 2ka\pi \left\{ \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{1-e^2}{e^2} \right\}.$$

This will represent the attraction of the spheroid CN on the point C, if $a = CW$.

Consequently, the attraction on E, in the direction perpendicular to the axis of the spheroid

$$= 2k\pi . CW \left\{ \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{1-e^2}{e^2} \right\},$$

where e is the eccentricity of the smaller spheroid, which is the same as that of the larger, as the spheroids are similar. In the same spheroid, it will be observed, this attraction is proportional to CW.

15. PROP. 10. If from any point E (fig. 11), on the surface of a spheroid, a line EX be drawn perpendicular to the axis, and a spheroid XY be described concentric, similar, and similarly situated, to the given spheroid, touching that line at its pole X; then the attraction of the given spheroid on the point E, in a direction parallel to its axis, is equal to the attraction of the smaller spheroid on a point at its pole X.

The demonstration of this is, in all respects, similar to the demonstration of Prop. 8, Article 13. The spheroids must be divided into wedges, by planes passing through the line EX; and the sections of the spheroids, made by one plane, will be similar and concentric ellipses.

16. PROP. 11. To find the attraction on E, in a direction parallel to the axis of the spheroid.

By (15), this is equal to the attraction of the spheroid XY, on a particle at X. But, by (8), the attraction of the spheroid XY, on a particle at X

$$= 4\pi k \,.\, WX \,.\, \left\{\frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e\right\};$$

therefore the attraction of the larger spheroid on E, in a direction parallel to its axis, is

$$4\pi k \,.\, EC \,.\, \left\{\frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e\right\}.$$

In the same spheroid this is proportional to EC.

17. PROP. 12. If a point E (fig. 12), be placed at the interior surface of a shell, bounded by similar and concentric spheroidical surfaces, the attraction of the whole shell will be 0.

For suppose the small pyramids EF, EG, to be formed by the same planes passing through E; let a plane pass through the axis of the pyramids, and through the common center of the spheroids: through H the point of bisection of EM, draw $WHKL$. Since EM is bisected in H, the tangent at K is parallel to EM; and since the ellipses are similar and concentric, the tangent at L is parallel to that at K; it is therefore parallel to FG; and FG therefore is bisected in H, or $FH = HG$. But $EH = HM$; therefore $EF = MG$. Now the attractions of the pyramid FE, and the frustrum MG, upon a point at E, are proportional to their lengths EF and MG, by (5); they are, therefore, equal; and they are in opposite directions; therefore they destroy each other. Now the whole shell may be divided into pairs of pyramids, in each of which it may be

shewn that the attraction is 0; therefore the attraction of the whole shell = 0.

18. PROP. 13. To find the attraction of a spheroid on a point within it.

From E the point, (fig. 12), draw EC perpendicular to the plane of the equator. By (17), the attraction of the shell external to the spheroid EKM is 0; and by (14), the attraction of the spheroid EKM on E, in the direction perpendicular to the axis of the spheroid, is

$$2k\pi \cdot CW \left\{ \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{1-e^2}{e^2} \right\}.$$

By (16), the attraction in direction parallel to the axis, is

$$4k\pi \cdot EC \left\{ \frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e \right\}.$$

19. The results of all these propositions may be thus stated.

The attraction on any particle of a spheroid, perpendicular to the axis, equals its distance from the axis $\times Q$, where

$$Q = 2k\pi \left\{ \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{1-e^2}{e^2} \right\}.$$

The attraction perpendicular to the plane of the equator equals its distance from the plane of the equator $\times P$, where

$$P = 4k\pi \left\{ \frac{1}{e^2} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e \right\}.$$

If the spheroid differ little from a sphere,

$$Q = \frac{4k\pi}{3}\left(1 - \frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right), \quad P = \frac{4k\pi}{3}\left(1 + \frac{4}{5}\epsilon\right).$$

These expressions may be found by expanding the values just given: or by making the attractions at the pole and equator coincide with those found in (11) and (9).

APPLICATION OF THESE THEOREMS TO THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH.

20. In investigating the figure of the Earth, we shall suppose that the Earth was originally a homogeneous fluid mass,

every particle attracting every other particle with an accelerating force, proportional to the mass of the attracting particle directly, and to the square of the distance of the attracted particle inversely. This mass we suppose to revolve about an axis in $23^h.56^m.4^s$.

21. Now if the Earth had no motion of rotation, it would evidently assume a spherical figure. For the mutual attraction of the particles would collect the whole into one mass; and if any one part were then protuberant above the rest, the direction of gravity would not be perpendicular to its surface, and it would not remain in that form, but would run down. The form then must be such as would leave no part protuberant above the rest; that is, it must be spherical.

22. But, in consequence of the Earth's rotation, every particle has a centrifugal force, or a tendency to recede from the axis of rotation. The effect of this, it is plain, will be to enlarge the Earth at its equator, and to flatten it at the poles. It is our object now to shew, that the figure which the Earth would assume is accurately that of an oblate spheroid.

23. To prove this we shall shew that, upon giving a proper value to the ellipticity, the whole force which acts upon any point at the surface is perpendicular to the surface; and that, if two canals of any form be made in the fluid, terminated at any points in the surface, and leading to the same point in the interior, the pressure on this point is the same from the fluid in both canals.

24. Let T be the time of revolution: the centrifugal force on the particle E, figs. 10, 11, and 12, is

$$\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} EX, \quad \text{or } \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} CW^*,$$

* Centrifugal force is a fiction: there is really no such thing as centrifugal *force:* the only idea which the term, correctly, can be intended to convey, is, that in order to preserve a particle at one uniform distance from a center, when revolving round it, a certain *centripetal force* must be introduced. Yet the student of Algebraical Hydrodynamics (to which science the theory of the Figure of the Earth in strictness belongs) will perceive from the following investigation that the introduction

and is in the direction XE. Adding this to the forces mentioned in (19), we have:

The whole force acting upon the point E in direction EX

$$= \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right) . CW:$$

The whole force in direction $EC = P . EC$.

---

of Centrifugal Force with the magnitude which we have assigned to it leads to a correct result.

Let ξ, η, ζ, be the rectangular co-ordinates of a point of the fluid mass: ξ and η being measured parallel to the plane of the earth's equator, ξ towards the first point of Aries, and η towards a point whose right ascension is 90°; and ζ parallel to the earth's axis. Also let ξ' and η' be co-ordinates parallel to the plane of the equator, referred to lines which are fixed in the earth, and which therefore change their position in space. The earth's center is the origin of co-ordinates. The angle made by ξ' with ξ, and by η' with η, will be $\frac{2\pi t}{T} + \kappa$, κ being the constant representing the value of the angle when $t = 0$. For $\frac{2\pi t}{T} + \kappa$ we shall put θ. It will be remarked that $\frac{d^2 \cos\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\cos\theta$, $\frac{d^2 \sin\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\sin\theta$. Also that ξ', η', ζ, are independent of t.

The equations of pressure are

$$\frac{dp}{\delta\xi} = \Xi - \frac{d^2\xi}{dt^2}$$

$$\frac{dp}{d\eta} = \mathrm{H} - \frac{d^2\eta}{dt^2}$$

$$\frac{dp}{d\zeta} = \mathrm{Z}.$$

in which, it will be remarked, there is no idea of centrifugal force.

The pressure p, as belonging to a particular point of the fluid, is to be referred to ξ', η', and ζ: and ξ', η', as regards the reference to fixed co-ordinates, are functions of ξ and η, expressed by the equations

$$\xi' = \xi\cos\theta + \eta\sin\theta,$$

$$\eta' = -\xi\sin\theta + \eta\cos\theta.$$

$$\therefore \frac{dp}{d\xi} = \frac{dp}{d\xi'}\cdot\frac{d\xi'}{d\xi} + \frac{dp}{d\eta'}\cdot\frac{d\eta'}{d\xi} = \frac{dp}{d\xi'}\cos\theta - \frac{dp}{d\eta'}\sin\theta,$$

$$\frac{dp}{d\eta} = \frac{dp}{d\xi'}\cdot\frac{d\xi'}{d\eta} + \frac{dp}{d\eta'}\cdot\frac{d\eta'}{d\eta} = \frac{dp}{d\xi'}\sin\theta + \frac{dp}{d\eta'}\cos\theta.$$

$$\text{Also } \Xi = \Xi'\cos\theta - \mathrm{H}'\sin\theta,$$

$$\mathrm{H} = \Xi'\sin\theta + \mathrm{H}'\cos\theta.$$

$$\text{And } \frac{d^2\xi}{dt^2} = \frac{d^2}{dt^2}\left(\xi'\cos\theta - \eta'\sin\theta\right) = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\left(-\xi'\cos\theta + \eta'\sin\theta\right),$$

$$\frac{d^2\eta}{dt^2} = \frac{d^2}{dt^2}\left(\xi'\sin\theta + \eta'\cos\theta\right) = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\left(-\xi'\sin\theta - \eta'\cos\theta\right).$$

The forces therefore upon any point, estimated in directions perpendicular to the axis, and perpendicular to the equator, are still proportional to the distances from the axis, and from the plane of the equator.

25. PROP. 14. In order that the fluid in a canal from the equator to the center, and the fluid in a canal from the pole to the center, may produce the same pressure on a particle at the center, the whole force at the pole must be to that at the equator as the radius of the equator to the radius of the pole.

Let two sections of the polar canal be made by planes at the distances p and $p + \delta p$ from the center. The pressure which is produced by the fluid included between these, estimated by its action upon a given surface, is proportional to the length of the included column multiplied by the accelerating force that acts on it, and may therefore be represented by $Pp \,.\, \delta p$*. Let

---

Substituting these values, the first and second equations of pressure become,

$$\frac{dp}{d\xi'} \cos\theta - \frac{dp}{d\eta'} \sin\theta = \Xi' \cos\theta - \mathrm{H}' \sin\theta + \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\left(\xi' \cos\theta - \eta' \sin\theta\right)$$

$$\frac{dp}{d\xi} \sin\theta + \frac{dp}{d\eta} \cos\theta = \Xi' \sin\theta + \mathrm{H}' \cos\theta + \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\left(\xi' \sin\theta + \eta' \cos\theta\right).$$

From these, $\dfrac{dp}{d\xi'} = \Xi' + \dfrac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\xi'$,

$$\frac{dp}{d\eta'} = \mathrm{H}' + \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\eta'.$$

Also $\dfrac{dp}{d\zeta} = \mathrm{Z}$,

which equations are equivalent to those obtained in the text by use of "centrifugal force;" it being remarked that Ξ', H', Z, are here considered positive when they tend to increase the co-ordinates, which suppositions are opposite to those of the text.

* The accelerating force is represented by the *acceleration* which it would cause in the matter upon which it acts, if that matter were allowed to move freely under its action: it is measured by the velocity in feet per second which its action during one second would cause: and cannot be correctly represented in any other way.

The pressure caused by a quantity of fluid or other matter under the action of an accelerating force is a pressure of the same kind as that which we commonly call weight. It is connected with the accelerating force by means of the third law of motion, which teaches that the pressure corresponding to a certain acceleration of a certain quantity of matter is proportional to the product of the acceleration by the quantity of matter.

If we estimate the quantity of matter by the weight in pounds of that matter at a certain point of the Earth's surface, under the action of gravity at that place, and if we put g for the acceleration which gravity would produce in 1" at the same place; then we mean by this that the pressure W estimated in pounds corresponds to

u be the whole pressure; since, upon increasing the distance by δp, the pressure is diminished by $Pp \,.\, \delta p$, we have

$$\frac{du}{dp} = -Pp\,; \quad \therefore\ u = C - \frac{Pp^2}{2}\,.$$

But the pressure at the surface $= 0$, or $C - \frac{Pb^2}{2} = 0$;

$$\therefore\ u = \frac{P}{2}(b^2 - p^2)\,;$$

hence, the pressure at the center $= \frac{Pb^2}{2}$. Similarly the pressure at the center, produced by the equatoreal column,

$$= \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)\frac{a^2}{2}.$$

When the pressures are equal (which, from the nature of fluids, is necessary for equilibrium),

$$Pb^2 = \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)a^2,$$

$$\text{or } Pb : \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)a :: a : b.$$

But Pb = force at the pole; $\left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)a$ = the whole force at the equator; therefore the force at the pole : force at the equator :: equatoreal radius : polar radius.

26. PROP. 15. When this proportion holds, the whole force at any point on the surface is perpendicular to the surface.

---

the accelerating force g acting on the mass W. Substituting these in the general theorem,

$$\text{pressure} = C \times \text{acceleration} \times \text{quantity of matter},$$

we have $$W = C \times g \times W,$$

and therefore $C = \frac{1}{g}$. Hence in any other instance of accelerating force,

$$\text{pressure in pounds} = \frac{\text{accelerating force}}{g} \times \text{weight in pounds},$$

where the weight in pounds and the value of g are both referred to the same locality.

We shall frequently omit the divisor g in merely representing by a proportional quantity the pressure which accelerating forces cause.

Let E (fig. 13) be any point on the surface: take EC to represent the force in the direction EC, and CN to represent that in direction EX: then, EN will represent the magnitude and direction of the whole force at E. Now,

$$EC : CN :: P.EC : \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right).CW, \text{ by (24)},$$

$$\text{or } :: a^2.EC : b^2.CW,$$

by the demonstration of (25);

$$\text{or } EC : CN :: EC : \frac{b^2}{a^2}CW.$$

Hence, $CN = \frac{b^2}{a^2}CW$ = subnormal (by *Conic Sections*); therefore, EN is the normal; that is, the whole force is perpendicular to the surface. It appears also that the whole force is represented in magnitude by the normal.

27. PROP. 16. When the same proportion holds; if to any point within the spheroid canals of any form be drawn, terminated any where in the surface; the pressure on that point, found by adding the pressures of successive portions of any of the canals, will be the same for every canal.

Let E (fig. 15) be the point, $EOoF$ a canal; take O and o, two points very near each other; draw ON, on, perpendicular to the plane of the equator, and OM, om, perpendicular to the axis; draw Ol perpendicular to no, and Ok perpendicular to mo: let $MO=x$, $NO=y$, $EO=s$; $mo=x+\delta x$, $no=y+\delta y$, $Eo=s+\delta s$. The accelerating force in the direction $ON = P.\ ON = P.y$: the resolved part of this in the direction of the canal

$$= P.y.\cos Oon = Py\frac{\delta y}{\delta s} = \text{ultimately } Py\frac{dy}{ds}.$$

And the accelerating force in the direction OM

$$= \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right).OM = \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)x;$$

the resolved part, in the direction of the canal, is found by multiplying it by cos Ook, that is, by $\frac{ok}{Oo}$ or $\frac{\delta x}{\delta s}$, or

ultimately by $\frac{dx}{ds}$: hence, the whole accelerating force in that direction

$$= Py\frac{dy}{ds} + \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right) x\frac{dx}{ds}:$$

and the pressure produced by the action of this force on the fluid in Oo (see the Note to Art. 25) may be represented by

$$\delta s\left\{Py\frac{dy}{ds} + \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right) x\frac{dx}{ds}\right\}.$$

This, if we put p for the pressure, is the decrement of p, produced on increasing s by δs: hence, $\frac{dp}{ds} = \frac{\delta p}{\delta s}$ ultimately

$$= -Py\frac{dy}{ds} - \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right) x\frac{dx}{ds}.$$

$$\text{Integrating, } p = C - \frac{Py^2}{2} - \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)\frac{x^2}{2}.$$

Let the values of x and y, at the point E, be f and g; and where the canal meets the surface, let the values of x and y be v and w: then, observing that the pressure at the surface is $= 0$, we find the pressure at E

$$= \frac{Pw^2}{2} + \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)\frac{v^2}{2} - \frac{Pg^2}{2} - \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)\cdot\frac{f^2}{2}.$$

But, by the equation to the generating ellipse,

$$w^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - v^2); \quad \therefore \frac{Pw^2}{2} = \frac{Pb^2}{2} - \frac{Pb^2}{a^2}\cdot\frac{v^2}{2}:$$

and, by the demonstration of (25),

$$\frac{Pb^2}{a^2} = Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}.$$

Hence, the pressure at E

$$= \frac{Pb^2}{2} - \frac{Pg^2}{2} - \left(Q - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\right)\frac{f^2}{2}.$$

This expression, it may be remarked, is independent of the form of the canal, and of the place at which it terminates in the

surface; and therefore we should have found the same for the pressure produced by the fluid in any other canal, as *GE*. For all canals, therefore, leading to the same point, the pressure on that point is the same.

28. From (26), we find that, if a fluid mass have the form of an oblate spheroid, there will be no tendency to disturb the particles at the surface; and from (27) it appears that, as the pressure on every particle is equal in all directions, none of the interior particles will have any tendency to motion. Every part therefore will be at rest: and therefore the oblate spheroid is the form of equilibrium, if the force at the pole : whole force at the equator :: equatoreal axis : polar axis.

29. PROP. 17. To find the proportion of the axes of the spheroid which is in equilibrium.

The force at the pole, by (8),

$$= 4\pi kb \left\{ \frac{1}{e^3} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e \right\}.$$

The attraction at the equator, by (10),

$$= 2\pi kb \left\{ \frac{1}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2} \right\};$$

the centrifugal force there

$$= \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} a = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} \cdot \frac{b}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}};$$

hence, the whole force at the equator

$$= 2\pi kb \left\{ \frac{1}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2} \right\} - \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} \cdot \frac{b}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}.$$

The whole forces at the pole and the equator must be in the proportion of $a : b$, or $1 : \sqrt{(1-e^2)}$; that is,

$$2k \left\{ \frac{1}{e^3} - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e \right\} : k \left\{ \frac{1}{e^3} \sin^{-1} e - \frac{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^2} \right\} - \frac{2\pi}{T^2} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}$$
$$:: 1 : \sqrt{(1-e^2)}.$$

Let $q = \frac{2\pi}{kT^2}$: substituting and reducing,

$$\frac{3(1-e^2)}{e^3} - \frac{(3-2e^2)\sqrt{(1-e^2)}}{e^3}\sin^{-1}e + q = 0.$$

The solution of this equation will give e, when q is known.

30. As this is a transcendental equation, it can be solved only by approximation; but some properties of its roots may be found thus. The left side of the equation is positive, when $e = 0$, and when $e = 1$, which are the extreme values of e that can be admitted; and it has therefore no roots, or an even number. And by constructing a curve, as fig. 14, in which the abscissa is e, and the ordinate is proportionate to the value of the first side of the equation, we find that the curve cannot cut the axis in more than two points, and therefore there can be but two forms of the oblate spheroid, which are figures of equilibrium. If in one of these forms e be small, in the other it will be very nearly $= 1$.

31. To find these forms on the supposition that the centrifugal force is small, or q small, we will begin with supposing e small. In this case it will be most convenient to use the formulæ of (9) and (11). Then,

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}bk\left(1+\frac{4\epsilon}{5}\right) : \frac{4\pi}{3}bk\left(1+\frac{3\epsilon}{5}\right) - 2\pi kqb\,(1+\epsilon) :: 1+\epsilon : 1;$$

or, neglecting $q\epsilon$, which is the product of two small quantities,

$$1+\frac{4\epsilon}{5} : 1+\frac{3\epsilon}{5}-\frac{3q}{2} :: 1+\epsilon : 1.$$

Hence, $1+\frac{4\epsilon}{5} = 1+\frac{8\epsilon}{5}-\frac{3q}{2}$, or $\epsilon = \frac{5}{4}\cdot\frac{3}{2}q$.

32. It is convenient to express the ellipticity in terms of the proportion of the centrifugal force at the equator to gravity. This proportion is

$$\frac{2\pi kbq}{\frac{4\pi}{3}bk\left(1+\frac{3\epsilon}{5}\right)-2\pi kbq} = \frac{2\pi kbq}{\frac{4\pi}{3}bk} \text{ nearly } = \frac{3}{2}q:$$

let this $= m$. Then $\epsilon = \frac{5m}{4}$.

33. To find the other form of equilibrium, we observe that e is nearly $= 1$, and therefore $\frac{b}{a}$ is small. We must therefore expand the terms of the equation in powers of $\frac{b}{a}$. For e^2 put $1-\frac{b^2}{a^2}$, or $1-c^2$, where $c=\frac{b}{a}$, and it becomes

$$\frac{3c^2}{1-c^2}-\frac{(1+2c^2)\,c}{(1-c^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}\cos^{-1}c+q=0.$$

Taking only the first power of c, we have

$$-c\frac{\pi}{2}+q=0, \qquad \text{or } \frac{b}{a}=c=\frac{2q}{\pi}.$$

34. In the Earth it is found that $m=\frac{1}{289}$, or $q=\frac{1}{434}$: hence, supposing the ellipticity small, $\epsilon=\frac{1}{230}$: or, supposing the eccentricity nearly $= 1$, $c=\frac{1}{681}$. That is, the Earth would be an oblate spheroid, with axes either in the proportion of 230 : 231, or in the proportion of 1 : 681. It is found by measurement, that the ratio of the axes is nearly 300 : 301: hence, the Earth is not homogeneous.

35. In the spheroid of small ellipticity, the proportion of gravity at the pole to that at the equator is the same as the ratio of the axes, or is the ratio 231 : 230, supposing the Earth homogeneous. By observation, it is found to be about 188 : 187.

36. Resuming the consideration of the general equation of (29), and the construction of (30), it is easily seen that, upon giving to q a certain value, the curve will touch the line of abscissæ: and upon increasing q, the curve will not meet the line of abscissæ at all. In the former case, then, there is but one form of equilibrium, and, in the latter, equilibrium is not possible. To find e', the value of e, which gives but one form,

we may observe, that two roots of the equation have become coincident, or are equal: if then we take the differential coefficient of the first side of the equation, it must have one of the equal roots: or the same value of e will make it $= 0$. This gives

$$-\frac{9}{e'^3}+\frac{2}{e'}+\left(\frac{9}{e'^4}-\frac{8}{e'^2}\right)\cdot\frac{\sin^{-1}e'}{\sqrt{(1-e'^2)}}=0:$$

solving this equation by approximation, $e' = ,92995$, whence $\frac{b'}{a'} = ,36769$, $\frac{a'}{b'} = 2,7197$. Substituting this value of e in the general equation, $q' = ,224671$. And, if T'' be the time of revolution, since $q' = \frac{2\pi}{kT''^2}$, we have

$$T''=\sqrt{\left(\frac{2\pi}{kq'}\right)}=\frac{5,2883}{\sqrt{(k)}}.$$

37. In a fluid whose density is the same as the density of the Earth, supposed homogeneous,

$$\frac{1}{434}=\frac{2\pi}{k\,(23^h.56'.4'')^2},\ \text{by (34).}$$

Dividing this by the equation $q' = \frac{2\pi}{kT''^2}$, we have

$$\frac{1}{434\,.\,q'}=\left(\frac{T''}{23^h.56'.4''}\right)^2,$$

$$\text{or } T''=23^h.56'.4''.\sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{434\,.\,q'}\right)}=2^h.25'.26''.$$

A spheroid then cannot remain in equilibrium, if it revolve in a shorter time than $2^h.25'.26''$, its density being the same as that of the Earth.

38. The expression for the ellipticity in (31), gives us the means of comparing the ellipticities of different planets, supposed homogeneous. For the ellipticity

$$=\frac{15}{8}q=\frac{15}{4}\cdot\frac{\pi}{kT^2}.$$

If then we can in any manner compare the masses of the planets, (which can be done immediately for those that have satellites,) and if we know the ratio of their diameters, the ratio of their densities will be known: and, knowing also the ratio of their times of revolution, their ellipticities will be inversely as their densities $\times$ the square of the times of revolution.

For an investigation of Jacobi's remarkable theorem of the equilibrium of a revolving ellipsoid when its three axes are unequal, with a certain proportion of axes and a certain time of rotation, the reader is referred to Mr Ivory's paper in the *Philosophical Transactions* for 1838, page 57, and to the *Cambridge Mathematical Journal*, Vol. I. page 90.

ON THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH, SUPPOSING IT HETEROGENEOUS.

39. THE results which we have deduced relative to the figure of the Earth, supposing it homogeneous, do not agree with observation: the homogeneity of the Earth is also, *a priori*, very improbable. We shall now proceed to shew that, supposing the Earth heterogeneous, a spheroidal form, of ellipticity different from that which we have found, will be a form of equilibrium. As before, we shall suppose that the Earth was originally a fluid mass: and we shall consider the density of different parts to be different, either from original constitution, or from the difference of pressure produced by the weight of the superincumbent mass. From the difficulty of the investigation, we are obliged to suppose the ellipticity small, and to reject all quantities depending on its square and higher powers.

40. PROP. 18. If the base of a prism be very small, to find its attraction in the direction of its axis on a point any where without it.

Let BC, (fig. 16) be the given prism: A the given point: draw AD perpendicular to the axis, produced if necessary; take two sections perpendicular to the axis, passing through

the points E and F, which are very near each other: join AB, AE, AC. Let $AD = a$, $DB = b$, $DC = c$, the section of the prism $= S$, its density $= \rho$: $DE = x$, $DF = x + \delta x$. The mass included between the two sections through E and $F = S.\delta x$; therefore its attraction on $A = \frac{\rho.S.\delta x}{(AE)^2}$ ultimately; therefore the resolved part in the direction of the prism's axis

$$= \frac{\rho.S.\delta x}{(AE)^2}.\frac{DE}{AE} = \frac{\rho.S.DE.\delta x}{(AE)^3};$$

hence, if u be the whole attraction, $\frac{du}{dx}$ = ultimate value of $\frac{\delta u}{\delta x}$ $= \frac{\rho.S.x}{(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$; integrating, $u = -\frac{\rho.S}{(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} + C$.

Determining C so as to make $u = 0$ when $x = DB = b$, we find the whole attraction

$$= \rho.S.\left\{\frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2+b^2)}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{(a^2+c^2)}}\right\} = \rho.S.\left(\frac{1}{AB} - \frac{1}{AC}\right).$$

41. PROP. 19. To find the expression upon whose integration depends the attraction of an ellipsoid on a point any where within or without it.

Let CD, CE, CF, (fig. 17) be the three semi-axes of the ellipsoid, $= a$, b, c, respectively: take these directions for the directions of x, y, and z: then, the equation to the surface of the ellipsoid is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

Let the co-ordinates of the point A be f, g, h. Suppose the ellipsoid divided into slices by planes, as PMQ, pmq, parallel to the plane of yz: and suppose these slices divided into prisms by planes, as PNQ, pnq, parallel to the plane of xz. Let

$$CM = x, \quad Mm = \delta x, \quad MN = y, \quad mn = y + \delta y, \quad PN = z.$$

Then the parallelogram $Nn = \delta x.\delta y$. By the last Proposition

therefore the attraction of the prism Pq on A, in a direction parallel to z, is

$$\rho \cdot \delta x \cdot \delta y \left(\frac{1}{AP} - \frac{1}{AQ}\right)$$

$$= \rho \cdot \delta x \cdot \delta y \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(f-x)^2+(g-y)^2+(h-z)^2\}}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(f-x)^2+(g-y)^2+(h+z)^2\}}}\right].$$

Let $x = ar$, $y = bs$, $z = ct$; then, the attraction of the prism

$$= \rho \cdot a \cdot b \cdot \delta r \cdot \delta s \left(\frac{1}{AP} - \frac{1}{AQ}\right).$$

The attraction of the slice therefore will

$$= \rho \cdot a \cdot b \cdot \delta r \cdot \int_s \left(\frac{1}{AP} - \frac{1}{AQ}\right),$$

taken from G to H. To find the values of y, corresponding to those points, we must make $z = 0$, in the equation to the surface: then

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1; \quad \therefore\ y = \pm \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)}, \text{ and } s = \pm\sqrt{(1 - r^2)}.$$

The attraction of the slice therefore

$$= \rho \cdot a \cdot b \cdot \delta r \times \int_s \left(\frac{1}{AP} - \frac{1}{AQ}\right),$$

taken from $s = -\sqrt{(1-r^2)}$ to $s = +\sqrt{(1-r^2)}$.

Let this $= v\delta r$: then the attraction of the ellipsoid $= \int_r v$, taken from $x = -a$ to $x = +a$, or from $r = -1$, to $r = +1$. The attraction therefore of the ellipsoid $= \rho \cdot a \cdot b \times$

$$\int_r \cdot \int_s \cdot \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(f-ar)^2+(g-bs)^2+(h-ct)^2\}}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(f-ar)^2+(g-bs)^2+(h+ct)^2\}}}\right],$$

the first integral being taken from $s = -\sqrt{(1-r^2)}$ to $s = +\sqrt{(1-r^2)}$, and the second from $r = -1$ to $r = +1$.

42. PROP. 20. If a spheroid, (fig. 17), whose semi-axes are a, b, c, attract a point A without it whose co-ordinates are $l\alpha$, $m\beta$, $n\gamma$, where $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$;

And if a spheroid (fig. 18) of the same density, whose semi-axes are α, β, γ, attract a point A' within it*, whose co-ordinates are la, mb, nc;

And if $a^2 - c^2 = \alpha^2 - \gamma^2$, $\quad b^2 - c^2 = \beta^2 - \gamma^2$;

Then, the attraction on A parallel to c, is to the attraction on A' parallel to γ, as ab to $\alpha\beta$.

43. By the last Proposition, the attraction on A parallel to c

$$= \rho \cdot a \cdot b \cdot \int_r \int_s \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(l\alpha - ar)^2 + (m\beta - bs)^2 + (n\gamma - ct)^2\}}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(l\alpha - ar)^2 + (m\beta - bs)^2 + (n\gamma + ct)^2\}}} \right].$$

The square of the denominator of the first fraction

$$= l^2\alpha^2 - 2aalr + a^2r^2$$
$$+ m^2\beta^2 - 2b\beta ms + b^2s^2$$
$$+ n^2\gamma^2 - 2c\gamma nt + c^2t^2.$$

But $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$: and the equation to the ellipsoid, or

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1,$$

gives us $r^2 + s^2 + t^2 = 1$:

---

* That A' is within the spheroid attracting it is easily shewn. For since $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$, its co-ordinates satisfy the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1,$$

and it is therefore in the surface of an ellipsoid, concentric to the ellipsoid which attracts it, and whose semi-axes are a, b, c. In the same manner, A is in the surface of an ellipsoid concentric to the given ellipsoid, whose semi-axes are α, β, γ. Now, since

$$\alpha^2 - a^2 = \beta^2 - b^2 = \gamma^2 - c^2,$$

the surfaces of the ellipsoids do not cut each other: and the point A being without the given ellipsoid, α must be $> a$, $\beta > b$, $\gamma > c$. The ellipsoid therefore whose semi-axes are a, b, c, is entirely within the other, supposing them concentric; and A' therefore is within the ellipsoid, whose semi-axes are α, β, γ.

eliminating, therefore, n^2 and t^2, the square of the denominator is

$$l^2(\alpha^2-\gamma^2)+m^2(\beta^2-\gamma^2)+\gamma^2$$
$$-2\{aalr+b\beta ms+c\gamma n\sqrt{(1-r^2-s^2)}\}$$
$$+r^2(a^2-c^2)+s^2(b^2-c^2)+c^2.$$

The second denominator differs from this only in the sign of

$$2c\gamma n\sqrt{(1-r^2-s^2)}.$$

Now, the attraction on A' parallel to γ, found in the same way

$$=\rho a\beta\times$$
$$\int_r\int_s\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(la-\alpha r)^2+(mb-\beta s)^2+(nc-\gamma t)^2\}}}\right.$$
$$\left.-\frac{1}{\sqrt{\{(la-\alpha r)^2+(mb-\beta s)^2+(nc+\gamma t)^2\}}}\right].$$

The square of the first denominator, expanded as above,

$$=l^2(a^2-c^2)+m^2(b^2-c^2)+c^2$$
$$-2\{aalr+\beta bms+\gamma cn\sqrt{(1-r^2-s^2)}\}$$
$$+r^2(\alpha^2-\gamma^2)+s^2(\beta^2-\gamma^2)+\gamma^2.$$

But, by supposition,

$$a^2-c^2=\alpha^2-\gamma^2,\ b^2-c^2=\beta^2-\gamma^2;$$

hence, this is precisely equal to the square of the denominator of the first factor above: or the first fraction here = the first fraction above. Similarly, the second fraction here = the second fraction above. Hence, the whole expression under the sign of integration is the same in both. And the limits of integration are the same; therefore the integrals will be the same. In the first, the integral is multiplied by ρab, and in the second by $\rho a\beta$: hence, the attraction of A parallel to c is to that of A' parallel to γ as ab to $a\beta$.

44. In the same way, the attraction of A parallel to a, is to that of A' parallel to α, as bc to $\beta\gamma$: and the attraction of A

parallel to b, is to that of A' parallel to β, as ac to $\alpha\gamma$. If the ellipsoid become a spheroid, make $a=b$; then $\alpha=\beta$; and the forces parallel to c and γ are as a^2 to α^2; those parallel to a and α are as ac to $\alpha\gamma$; those parallel to b and β as ac to $\alpha\gamma$.

45. PROP. 21. To find the attraction of an oblate spheroid, whose ellipticity is small, on a point without it.

Let c, the semi-axis of revolution of the spheroid, coincide with the axis of z: let f, g, h, be the co-ordinates of the attracted point. And, as in the last Proposition, let $f=l\alpha$, $g=m\alpha$, $h=n\gamma$, where

$$l^2+m^2+n^2=1, \text{ and } \alpha^2-\gamma^2=a^2-c^2.$$

$$\text{Let } a=c(1+e),\ \alpha=\gamma(1+\epsilon):$$

then, rejecting e^2, &c., the last equation becomes

$$2\gamma^2\epsilon=2c^2e, \text{ or } \epsilon=\frac{c^2}{\gamma^2}e.$$

And from the equation

$$l^2+m^2+n^2=1,$$

$$\text{or } \frac{f^2+g^2}{\alpha^2}+\frac{h^2}{\gamma^2}=1, \text{ or } \frac{1}{\gamma^2}\{f^2+g^2+h^2-2\epsilon(f^2+g^2)\}=1,$$

$$\text{we get } \gamma^2=f^2+g^2+h^2-2\epsilon(f^2+g^2);$$

$$\text{but } \epsilon=\frac{c^2}{\gamma^2}e=\frac{c^2}{f^2+g^2+h^2}e;$$

$$\therefore \gamma^2=f^2+g^2+h^2-2e\frac{c^2(f^2+g^2)}{f^2+g^2+h^2},$$

$$\text{and } \gamma=\sqrt{(f^2+g^2+h^2)}-e\frac{c^2(f^2+g^2)}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

$$\text{Also, since } \alpha^2-\gamma^2=a^2-c^2=2c^2e,$$

$$\alpha^2=\gamma^2+2c^2e=f^2+g^2+h^2+2e\frac{c^2h^2}{f^2+g^2+h^2};$$

$$\therefore\ a = \sqrt{(f^2+g^2+h^2)} + e\,\frac{c^2h^2}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

46. Now, the co-ordinates of A' (42) are $= la, mb, nc$:

$$\text{or} = \frac{fa}{\alpha},\ \frac{ga}{\alpha},\ \frac{hc}{\gamma}.$$

The distance of this point, therefore, from the axis of the spheroid

$$= \sqrt{\left(\frac{f^2a^2}{\alpha^2}+\frac{g^2a^2}{\alpha^2}\right)} = \frac{a}{\alpha}\sqrt{(f^2+g^2)}.$$

And, as this point is within the spheroid whose semi-axes are α and γ, its attraction towards the axis, by (19),

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\left(1-\frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right)\frac{a}{\alpha}\sqrt{(f^2+g^2)}:$$

hence, its attraction in the direction of x

$$= \frac{f}{\sqrt{(f^2+g^2)}}\cdot\frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\left(1-\frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right)\frac{a}{\alpha}\sqrt{(f^2+g^2)}$$

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\left(1-\frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right)\frac{a}{\alpha}f.$$

Similarly, its attraction in the direction of y

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\left(1-\frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right)\frac{a}{\alpha}g.$$

And, by (19), its attraction in the direction of z

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\left(1+\frac{4}{5}\epsilon\right)\frac{c}{\gamma}h.$$

47. By (43), therefore, the attraction on A in the direction of x

$$= \frac{ac}{a\gamma}\cdot\frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\left(1-\frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right)\frac{a}{\alpha}f$$

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\,\frac{a^2c}{\alpha^2\gamma}\left(1-\frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right)f;$$

that in the direction of y

$$= \frac{ac}{a\gamma} \cdot \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \left(1 - \frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right) \frac{a}{\alpha} g$$

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \frac{a^2 c}{\alpha^2 \gamma} \left(1 - \frac{2}{5}\epsilon\right) g;$$

that in the direction of z

$$= \frac{a^2}{\alpha^2} \cdot \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \left(1 + \frac{4}{5}\epsilon\right) \frac{c}{\gamma} h$$

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \frac{a^2 c}{\alpha^2 \gamma} \left(1 + \frac{4}{5}\epsilon\right) h.$$

Now $a^2 c = c^3 (1 + 2e)$: and, from the expressions above,

$$a^2\gamma = (f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} + e \frac{c^2 (2h^2 - f^2 - g^2)}{(f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}};$$

$$\therefore \frac{a^2 c}{\alpha^2 \gamma} = \frac{c^3}{(f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left\{1 + 2e - e \frac{c^2 (2h^2 - f^2 - g^2)}{(f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^2}\right\}.$$

$$\text{Also, } 1 - \frac{2}{5}\epsilon = 1 - e \frac{2}{5} \cdot \frac{c^2}{f^2 + g^2 + h^2},$$

(putting $f^2 + g^2 + h^2$ for γ^2).

$$\text{And } 1 + \frac{4}{5}\epsilon = 1 + e \frac{4}{5} \cdot \frac{c^2}{f^2 + g^2 + h^2}.$$

Substituting these, we find, at length, the attraction of A in the direction of x

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \frac{c^3}{(f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \cdot \left\{1 + 2e - e \frac{c^2 (12h^2 - 3f^2 - 3g^2)}{5 (f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^2}\right\} f;$$

that in the direction of y

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \frac{c^3}{(f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \cdot \left\{1 + 2e - e \frac{c^2 (12h^2 - 3f^2 - 3g^2)}{5 (f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^2}\right\} g;$$

that in the direction of z

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \frac{c^3}{(f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \cdot \left\{1 + 2e - e \frac{c^2 (6h^2 - 9f^2 - 9g^2)}{5 (f^2 + g^2 + h^2)^2}\right\} h.$$

48. PROP. 22. To find the attraction of an oblate spheroid on a point without it; the spheroid being heterogeneous, but composed of homogeneous strata; each stratum being included between spheroidal surfaces of different ellipticities; or, when the change of density is gradual, all the surfaces which pass through points at which the density is the same, being spheroidal, of variable ellipticity.

Let EF, (fig. 19) be the spheroid; let $E'F'$ be a spheroidal surface, at every one of whose points the density is the same, and $E''F''$ a spheroidal surface very near the former, of different ellipticity, at all of whose points the density is the same, but differing from that at the surface $E'F'$. Let

$$CF' = c, \quad CF'' = c + \delta c.$$

Since the ellipticity varies when the semi-axis of the spheroid is varied, e must be a function of c. Now the density of all the matter included between $E'F'$ and $E''F''$ is not necessarily uniform; but by diminishing δc, it may be made to approximate as nearly as we please to uniformity. Conceive, now, for the moment, the interior matter of the spheroid $E'F'$ to be of the same density as that at its surface, or to be equal to ρ; let its attraction in the direction of $x = \rho . A$. Then the attraction of the spheroid $E''F''$ in the same direction, will be the value which A receives when $c + \delta c$ is put for c, and when, instead of e, we put the value of the ellipticity in the spheroid $E''F''$. But if we consider e as a function of c, this is included in considering the variation which it receives in consequence of the variation of c.

Hence A will be changed to $A + \frac{dA}{dc}\delta c + \&c.$; and therefore the attraction of the spheroid $E''F''$

$$= \rho\,(A + \frac{dA}{dc}\delta c + \&c.).$$

The difference of the attractions of the two spheroids, or the attraction of the shell included between them, is therefore ultimately $= \rho \frac{dA}{dc}\delta c$. If, then, u be the attraction of the hetero-

geneous spheroid, whose polar semi-axis $= c$, we find $\frac{du}{dc}$ = ultimate value of $\frac{\delta u}{\delta c} = \rho \frac{dA}{dc}$;

$$\therefore\ u = \int_c \rho \frac{dA}{dc};$$

where in the differentiation e must be considered as a function of c; and in the integration, ρ and e must both be considered as functions of c.

49. Now,

$$A = \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{5}{2}}}c^3(1+2e) - \frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}c^5e\right\}f;$$

and when we differentiate this with respect to c, since f, g, and h, are perfectly independent of c, the only variable terms will be $c^3(1+2e)$ and c^5e. Let

$$\int_c \rho \cdot \frac{d\{c^3(1+2e)\}}{dc} = \phi(c); \quad \int_c \rho \cdot \frac{d(c^5e)}{dc} = \psi(c);$$

both integrals being made to vanish when $c = 0$. Then by the expression found in the last article, the attraction in the direction of x

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \cdot \left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{5}{2}}}\phi(c) - \frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}f.$$

Similarly from the values in (47), we find the attraction in the direction of y

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{5}{2}}}\phi(c) - \frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}g.$$

And the attraction in the direction of z

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{5}{2}}}\phi(c) - \frac{6h^2-9f^2-9g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}h.$$

It will be necessary to remark, that the second term in each expression is small, when the ellipticity is small, but the first is not small.

50. PROP. 23. To find the attraction of a heterogeneous shell on a point within it; the points of equal density being situated in spheroidal surfaces, and the interior and exterior surfaces being spheroids, in every part of which the density is the same.

Let f, g, h be the co-ordinates of the attracted point A', (fig. 19). Take $E'F'$, $E''F''$ as in the last Proposition, and suppose the whole spheroid $E'CF''$ to have the uniform density ρ. Then by (19), the attraction of the spheroid $E'CF''$ on the point A', directed towards the axis

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho \sqrt{(f^2 + g^2)} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{2}{5} e\right);$$

whence the attraction in the direction of x

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho f \left(1 - \frac{2}{5} e\right);$$

that in the direction of y

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho g \left(1 - \frac{2}{5} e\right).$$

And by (19), the attraction in the direction of z

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \rho h \left(1 + \frac{4}{5} e\right).$$

Then by exactly the same reasoning as that in (48) it may be shewn, that the attraction of the heterogeneous shell will be found by differentiating these expressions, (after taking away ρ) with respect to c, multiplying then by ρ, and integrating with regard to c. Let $\int_c \rho \frac{de}{dc} = \chi(c)$, the integral being made to vanish when $c = 0$. If we suppose the polar semi-axis of the interior surface to be c, that of the exterior to be c, then $\int_c \rho \frac{de}{dc}$

for the shell, between these limits, $= \chi(c) - \chi(c)$. Hence it will easily be seen, that the force in the direction of x

$$= -\frac{4\pi}{3} \cdot \frac{2}{5} \{\chi(c) - \chi(c)\} f,$$

that in the direction of y

$$= -\frac{4\pi}{3} \cdot \frac{2}{5} \{\chi(c) - \chi(c)\} g,$$

that in the direction of z

$$= +\frac{4\pi}{3} \cdot \frac{4}{5} \{\chi(c) - \chi(c)\} h.$$

51. PROP. 24. To find the attraction of a heterogeneous spheroid of the same kind as that in Prop. 22, upon any point within it.

Let γ be the polar semi-axis of that spheroidal surface which passes through the given point, and through all other points at which the density is the same. And let c be the semi-axis of the exterior surface. Then the given point is external to all the spheroids whose semi-axes are less than γ, and to these, therefore, the integration in (49) must be applied. Taking these integrals, then, from $c = 0$ to $c = \gamma$, we find for the forces in direction of x, y and z,

$$\frac{4\pi}{3} \left\{ \frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \phi(\gamma) - \frac{12h^2 - 3f^2 - 3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}} \psi(\gamma) \right\} f,$$

$$\frac{4\pi}{3} \left\{ \frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \phi(\gamma) - \frac{12h^2 - 3f^2 - 3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}} \psi(\gamma) \right\} g,$$

$$\frac{4\pi}{3} \left\{ \frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \phi(\gamma) - \frac{6h^2 - 9f^2 - 9g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}} \psi(\gamma) \right\} h.$$

Again, the given point is interior to all the spheroidal surfaces whose polar semi-axes are greater than γ, and less than c; and, therefore, the expressions of (50) must be taken between these limits. These give us for the forces in the directions of x, y, and z,

$$-\frac{4\pi}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}f,$$

$$-\frac{4\pi}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}g,$$

$$+\frac{4\pi}{3}\cdot\frac{4}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}h,$$

and if these be added to those above, we shall have the whole forces arising from the attraction of the spheroid.

52. Besides these, if the spheroid revolve round its polar axis in the time T, every point will experience a centrifugal force proportional to its distance from the axis. Resolving this in the directions of x and y, we have for the parts in those directions $\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}f$ and $\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}g$, which must be subtracted from the attractions. Collecting all the terms, the force in the direction of x

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left[\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\phi(\gamma)-\frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(\gamma)\right.$$

$$\left.-\frac{2}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}-\frac{3\pi}{T^2}\right]f=F.$$

That in the direction of y

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left[\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\phi(\gamma)-\frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(\gamma)\right.$$

$$\left.-\frac{2}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}-\frac{3\pi}{T^2}\right]g=G.$$

That in the direction of z

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left[\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\phi(\gamma)-\frac{6h^2-9f^2-9g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(\gamma)\right.$$

$$\left.+\frac{4}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}\right]h=H.$$

53. PROP. 25. To find the conditions of equilibrium of a heterogeneous fluid.

Suppose the fluid to be in equilibrium, and suppose any number of canals terminated in the external surface to be drawn to any point within. It is plain that the separation of the fluid within these canals from the general mass, by the sides of the canals, will not interrupt the equilibrium. But when the fluid within the canals is in equilibrium, if we find the pressure which the fluid in each canal produces upon the place of junction of the canals, all the pressures so found must be equal. For the pressure exerted by the fluid of any one canal upon the fluid at the place of junction will (from the fundamental property of fluids) be transmitted up the other canals; and unless it is counteracted by an equal force produced by the pressure of each of these, it will destroy the equilibrium. It is *necessary* therefore for equilibrium in each imaginary system of canals, and consequently for equilibrium in the whole mass, that the pressure produced by the fluid in a canal, terminated at a given point within, be independent of the form of the canal and of the position of the point where it meets the external surface.

This condition is also *sufficient* for equilibrium. For since the fluid has no tendency to run up or down the canals, the equilibrium can be interrupted only by its tendency to burst the canals. But by drawing other canals to any point of those already drawn, it would easily be seen that when the condition above mentioned is satisfied, the external pressure on all sides is equal to the internal pressure: and consequently there is no tendency to burst a canal.

54. Now let P (fig. 21) be any point in one canal, p very near it: let $RP=s$, $Rp=s+\delta s$; let the co-ordinates of P be f, g, h: those of p, $f+\delta f$, $g+\delta g$, $h+\delta h$. Then if a parallelopiped be constructed of which Pp or δs is the diagonal (since it is ultimately a straight line), and whose sides are parallel to f, g, h, respectively, the lengths of those sides will be δf, δg, δh. To find how much the pressure of the fluid at P exceeds that at p, we must resolve each of the forces acting on its particles into two, one in the direction of pP and the other perpendicular to pP; then we must add together the former, and neglect the latter.

The forces are $-F$, $-G$, $-H$, in the directions of f, g and h: the sum of the forces in the direction of Pp is

$$-(F\cos pPq + G\cos pPr + H\cos pPt)$$
$$= -\left(F\frac{\delta f}{\delta s} + G\frac{\delta g}{\delta s} + H\frac{\delta h}{\delta s}\right).$$

And the matter upon which they act is $\rho\delta s$ (the section of the canal being supposed $= 1$): therefore the pressure which they produce ultimately (see the Note to Art. 25)

$$= -\rho\,(F\delta f + G\delta g + H\delta h)$$
$$= -\rho\delta f\left(F + G\frac{\delta g}{\delta f} + H\frac{\delta h}{\delta f}\right)$$
$$= -\rho\delta f\left(F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}\right).$$

If then we can find a quantity V such that

$$\frac{d(V)}{df} = -\rho\left(F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}\right),$$

V taken between the proper limits will be the pressure.

If now the values of ρ, F, G, H, be such that the expression for $\frac{d(V)}{df}$ cannot be integrated without expressing g and h in terms of f*, we must, in order to find the pressure, substitute for ρ its value in terms of f, g, and h: and for g and h their values given by the equation to the canal. Then $\frac{d(V)}{df}$ will $= -\phi(f)$, and $V = -\psi(f)$, where the form of ϕ and consequently that of ψ is different for every different canal. Let f_0, g_0, h_0, be the co-ordinates of the point of junction, and f_1, g_1, h_1, the co-ordinates of the point where one canal meets the surface; then the corrected value of V is $\psi(f_1) - \psi(f_0)$; and this is the

---

* This would be the case, if, for instance, $\rho = k$, $F = Cg$, $G = -Cf$: for then $\frac{d(V)}{df} = Ck\left(g - f\frac{dg}{df}\right)$: which cannot be integrated without expressing g in terms of f.

pressure produced by the fluid in one canal. If we had another canal of different form terminated in the same points, we should find for their pressure $\chi(f_1) - \chi(f_0)$. It is evident that these cannot generally be equal; and since their equality is necessary for equilibrium, it follows that there cannot be equilibrium on this supposition with regard to the forces.

But if the values of ρ, F, G, H, be such that the expression for $\frac{d(V)}{df}$ can be integrated without expressing g and h in terms of f*, then the expression for the pressure is

$$\omega(f_1, g_1, h_1) - \omega(f_0, g_0, h_0),$$

where the form of the function ω is independent of the form of the canal, and is consequently the same for all canals†. If then any number of canals be drawn from the same point at the surface to the same point within it, since f_0, g_0, h_0, f_1, g_1, h_1, will be the same for all, the pressure produced by each at the point of junction will be the same.

It is still necessary that the pressure be the same if different canals from the same point of junction meet the surface at different points. Let f_2, g_2, h_2, be the co-ordinates of the point where another canal meets the surface: then the pressure which the fluid in this canal produces is

$$\omega(f_2, g_2, h_2) - \omega(f_0, g_0, h_0).$$

To make this equal to the last, we must have

$$\omega(f_2, g_2, h_2) = \omega(f_1, g_1, h_1);$$

---

* This would hold if, for instance, $\rho = k$, $F = Af$, $G = Bg$, $H = Ch$: for then

$$\frac{d(V)}{df} = k\left(Af + Bg\frac{dg}{df} + Ch\frac{dh}{df}\right),$$

and $V = \frac{k}{2}(Af^2 + Bg^2 + Ch^2)$.

† It is necessary, however, to except the cases, symbolically possible, in which the function ω admits of several values for the same values of f_0 and g_0. For instance, considering h as constant, let $F = \frac{-Cg}{f^2+g^2}$, $G = \frac{Cf}{f^2+g^2}$. Then $\omega(f,g) = C.\tan^{-1}\frac{g}{f}$; and this function admits of different values (their successive differences being $C\pi$) according to the number of spiral turns which the canal makes round the origin of co-ordinates. In this case then, though the *form* of the function ω is independent of the form of the canal, the *value* of the function is not independent of it. These remarks, however, have no application in nature.

or $\omega(f, g, h)$ must be equal for all points at the surface. Its variation therefore from one point of the surface to another must be $= 0$: or at the external surface

$$F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df} = 0.$$

These two mathematical conditions then {namely, that

$$\rho\left(F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}\right)$$

be integrable with respect to f without expressing g and h in terms of f, and that at the external surface

$$F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df} = 0\}$$

completely satisfy the physical conditions of equilibrium. The second indicates that the whole force on every point of the external surface must be perpendicular to the surface.

55. Now if the forces F, G, H, be the resolved part of attraction to any particle where the force is any function of the distance,

$$F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}$$

will be immediately integrable. For let a, b, c, be the co-ordinates of the attracting particle:

r or $\sqrt{\{(f-a)^2 + (g-b)^2 + (h-c)^2\}}$ its distance:

and $\phi(r)$ the force in the direction of r. Then

$$F = -\phi(r)\frac{f-a}{r}:$$

$$G = -\phi(r)\frac{g-b}{r}:$$

$$H = -\phi(r)\frac{h-c}{r};$$

and $F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}$

$$= -\frac{\phi(r)}{r}\left\{(f-a) + (g-b)\frac{dg}{df} + (h-c)\frac{dh}{df}\right\}$$

$$= -\frac{\phi(r)}{r}r\frac{dr}{df} = -\phi(r)\frac{dr}{df};$$

the integral of which with respect to f is a function of r,

$$= -\int_r \phi(r).$$

The same thing may be shewn, if the forces arise from attractions to any number of particles; and consequently, if they arise from the attractions to every particle of a solid or fluid mass.

The same thing is true if a part of the forces is produced by centrifugal force. If, (as above) the resolved part of centrifugal force in the direction of $f = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} f$; in that of $g = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} g$: and in that of $h = 0$: the corresponding part of

$$F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}$$

$$\text{is } \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}\left(f + g\frac{dg}{df}\right),$$

the integral of which with respect to f is

$$\frac{2\pi^2}{T^2}(f^2 + g^2).$$

56. It appears then that the only forces which we have to consider will make

$$F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}$$

a complete differential without assigning any relation between f, g, and h. Call it then $\frac{dv}{df}$. Then our first condition of equilibrium requires that $\rho\frac{dv}{df}$ be integrable with respect to f. This can happen only if ρ be a function of v. Our first condition then amounts only to this,

$$\rho = \text{a function of } v,$$

$$\text{where } \frac{dv}{df} = F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df}.$$

From this it follows that ρ is constant while v is constant. The equation to a surface of equal density, or *couche de niveau*, is found therefore by making v constant,

$$\text{or } \frac{dv}{df} = 0,$$

$$\text{or } F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df} = 0.$$

The equation to the external surface, found above, is only a particular case of this.

It follows also that, as $\frac{d(V)}{df} = \rho\frac{dv}{df} = \text{function of } v \times \frac{dv}{df}$, V or the pressure will also be a function of v. But ρ is a function of v; consequently V is a function of ρ. That is, the surfaces of equal density will also be surfaces of equal pressure. And the equations of equilibrium will therefore be the same whether the density depend on the pressure or not.

57. PROP. 26. To find the ellipticities of the spheroidal surfaces of equal density which will satisfy the equation of equilibrium.

For this purpose we shall find the differential equation to a spheroid, and shall make it coincide with the equation found above from the condition of equilibrium.

The polar and equatoreal semi-axes being γ and $\gamma(1+\epsilon)$, the equation to the spheroid is

$$\frac{f^2+g^2}{\gamma^2(1+\epsilon)^2} + \frac{h^2}{\gamma^2} = 1,$$

and consequently its differential equation is

$$f + g\frac{dg}{df} + (1+\epsilon)^2 h\frac{dh}{df} = 0.$$

That this may coincide with the equation

$$F + G\frac{dg}{df} + H\frac{dh}{df} = 0,$$

we must have

$$f : g : (1+\epsilon)^2 h :: F : G : H;$$

$$\text{or } f : g : (1+2\epsilon)h :: F : G : H.$$

On examining the expressions in (52) it appears that the pro-

portion of F and G is the same as that of f and g, and therefore the only equation resulting from this condition is

$$(1+2\epsilon)\frac{F}{f}=\frac{H}{h}.$$

Substituting in this equation the expressions found in (52), and multiplying 2ϵ into no term but the first, (as all the other terms are small when ϵ is small) we find

$$\frac{2\epsilon\phi(\gamma)}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}-\frac{6\psi(\gamma)}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}-\frac{6}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}-\frac{3\pi}{T^2}=0.$$

But $f^2+g^2+h^2$ differs from γ^2 only by a quantity which depends upon ϵ: putting therefore γ^2 for $f^2+g^2+h^2$, since all the terms are small,

$$\frac{\epsilon\phi(\gamma)}{\gamma^3}-\frac{3}{5}\cdot\frac{\psi(\gamma)}{\gamma^5}-\frac{3}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(\gamma)\}-\frac{3\pi}{2T^2}=0.$$

Or, since this must be true whatever be the value of γ, we may put for γ the general letter c, and we have

$$\frac{e\phi(c)}{c^3}-\frac{3}{5}\cdot\frac{\psi(c)}{c^5}-\frac{3}{5}\{\chi(c)-\chi(c)\}-\frac{3\pi}{2T^2}=0.$$

58. If we put for $\phi(c)$, $\psi(c)$, and $\chi(c)$, their values

$$\int_c\rho\frac{d\{c^3(1+2e)\}}{dc}\text{ or }\int_c\rho\frac{d(c^3)}{dc}\text{ nearly,}$$

$$\int_c\rho\frac{d(c^3e)}{dc},\text{ and }\int_c\rho\frac{de}{dc},$$

(49) and (50), and differentiate,

$$\frac{d^2e}{dc^2}+\frac{2\rho c^2}{\int_c\rho c^2}\cdot\frac{de}{dc}+\left(\frac{2\rho c}{\int_c\rho c^2}-\frac{6}{c^2}\right)e=0.$$

This differential equation it is always possible to integrate, at least by series, when ρ is given in terms of c: and the two arbitrary constants will enable us to make the value of e satisfy the equation from which it is derived. Hence, when ρ is given in terms of c, it is always possible to find the ellipticity of every surface of equal density so as to satisfy the condition of equilibrium. And therefore a heterogeneous spheroid constructed in

the manner which we have supposed will be a form of equilibrium, if the equation

$$\frac{e\phi(c)}{c^3} - \frac{3}{5}\cdot\frac{\psi(c)}{c^5} - \frac{3}{5}\{\chi(c) - \chi(c)\} - \frac{2\pi}{2T^2} = 0,$$

be satisfied.

59. PROP. 27. To find the whole force on any point at the external surface.

The forces on any point in the directions of x, y, z, being F, G, and H, the whole force will be $\sqrt{(F^2+G^2+H^2)}$. The forces on a point at the surface will be found by putting c for γ, in the expressions of (52). Thus we find for a point at the surface,

$$F = \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\phi(c) - \frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c) - \frac{3\pi}{T^2}\right\}f,$$

$$G = \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\phi(c) - \frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c) - \frac{3\pi}{T^2}\right\}g,$$

$$H = \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{1}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\phi(c) - \frac{6h^2-9f^2-9g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}h,$$

and hence $\sqrt{(F^2+G^2+H^2)}$, (observing that the first term only of each expression is large,)

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{\phi(c)}{f^2+g^2+h^2} - \frac{6h^2-3(f^2+g^2)}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^3}\psi(c) - \frac{3\pi}{T^2}\cdot\frac{(f^2+g^2)}{\sqrt{(f^2+g^2+h^2)}}\right\}.$$

If e be the ellipticity of the external surface,

$$f^2+g^2+h^2 = c^2+2e(f^2+g^2),$$

which gives for the force

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2} - \frac{2e\phi(c)}{c^4}(f^2+g^2) - \frac{6c^2-9(f^2+g^2)}{5c^6}\psi(c) - \frac{3\pi}{cT^2}(f^2+g^2)\right\}.$$

60. Suppose at the equator the centrifugal force $= m \times$ gravity, m being small $\left(\text{in the earth it is } \frac{1}{289}\right)$. The gravity

at the equator, neglecting the small terms, is $\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2}$: the centrifugal force is $\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}a=\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}c$, nearly. Hence,

$$\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}c=m\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2};\quad\therefore\ \frac{3\pi}{cT^2}=m\frac{\phi(c)}{c^4}.$$

Hence, the whole force at the surface

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left[\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2}-\frac{6}{5}.\frac{\psi(c)}{c^4}-\left\{(2e+m).\frac{\phi(c)}{c^4}-\frac{9}{5}.\frac{\psi(c)}{c^6}\right\}(f^2+g^2)\right].$$

61. The equation of (57) becomes, at the surface,

$$\frac{e\,\phi(c)}{c^3}-\frac{3}{5}.\frac{\psi(c)}{c^5}-\frac{3\pi}{2T^2}=0,$$

or, since $\frac{3\pi}{2T^2}=\frac{m}{2}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^3}$,

$$\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)\frac{\phi(c)}{c^3}-\frac{3}{5}.\frac{\psi(c)}{c^5}=0.$$

Substituting from this the value of $\psi(c)$, we find, for the force at any point of the surface, the following simple expression

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2}.\left\{1-(2e-m)-\left(\frac{5m}{2}-e\right).\left(\frac{f^2+g^2}{c^2}\right)\right\}.$$

62. For the force at the pole we must make $f=0$, $g=0$; and the force, therefore,

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2}\{1-(2e-m)\}.$$

For the force at the equator we must make $f^2+g^2=a^2=c^2$, nearly; and, therefore, the equatoreal gravity

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2}.\left\{1-(2e-m)-\left(\frac{5m}{2}-e\right)\right\}.$$

The excess of the former above this

$$=\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^2}.\left(\frac{5m}{2}-e\right);$$

and the ratio of this excess to the equatoreal gravity is $\frac{5m}{2}-e$.

Let this $=n$: then, $n+e=\frac{5m}{2}$: a very remarkable proposition, which may be thus stated: "Whatever be the law of the Earth's density, if the ellipticity of the surface be added to the ratio which the excess of the polar above the equatoreal gravity bears to the equatoreal gravity, their sum will be $\frac{5m}{2}$, m being the ratio of the centrifugal force at the equator to the equatoreal gravity." This is called *Clairaut's Theorem.*

63. PROP. 28. To find an expression for gravity at any point at the surface, in terms of the latitude.

Suppose EF, (fig. 20), to represent the Earth's surface, PQ a normal at P. Then, PQN is the latitude of P, and

$$QN = PQ \,.\, \cos l.$$

Now, as we shall have to substitute only in the small terms of the equation, $PQ = c$ nearly, and $QN = CN$ nearly $= \sqrt{(f^2+g^2)}$; hence $\sqrt{(f^2+g^2)} = c \,.\, \cos l$ nearly. Substituting this in the expression of (61), gravity

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \,.\, \frac{\phi(c)}{c^3} \left\{1 - (2e-m) - \left(\frac{5m}{2} - e\right) \cos^2 l\right\},$$

$$\text{or } = \frac{4\pi}{3} \,.\, \frac{\phi(c)}{c^3} \left\{1 - \left(e + \frac{3m}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{5m}{2} - e\right) \sin^2 l\right\},$$

$$\text{or } = \frac{4\pi}{3} \,.\, \frac{\phi(c)}{c^3} \left\{1 - \left(e + \frac{3m}{2}\right)\right\} \left\{1 + \left(\frac{5m}{2} - e\right) \sin^2 l\right\}.$$

Gravity, therefore, may be generally expressed by the formula $E(1 + n \sin^2 l)$, where E = equatoreal gravity

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3} \,.\, \frac{\phi(c)}{c^3} \left\{1 - \left(e + \frac{3m}{2}\right)\right\},$$

$$\text{and } n = \frac{5m}{2} - e, \text{ or } n + e = \frac{5m}{2}.$$

64. PROP. 29. To find the ellipticity of the Earth on any assumed law of density of the strata.

Differentiating the equation

$$\frac{e\phi(c)}{c^3} - \frac{3}{5}\cdot\frac{\psi(c)}{c^5} - \frac{3}{5}\{\chi(c) - \chi(c)\} - \frac{3\pi}{2T^2} = 0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (\text{I}),$$

we find

$$c^3\phi(c)\cdot\frac{de}{dc} + 3\psi(c) - 3e\cdot c^3\phi(c) = 0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (\text{II}),$$

and differentiating this,

$$\frac{d^2e}{dc^2} + \frac{2\rho c^2}{\int_c \rho c^3}\cdot\frac{de}{dc} + \left(\frac{2\rho c}{\int_c \rho c^3} - \frac{6}{c^3}\right)e = 0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (\text{III}).$$

Now, when ρ is given in terms of c, we must substitute it in this last equation, and by integration find e. The expression will contain two arbitrary constants: one of these may, in general, be conveniently determined by substituting in equation (II), and the other by substituting in equation (I). Equation (III) may be transformed into one of a simpler form, thus. Let $\int_c \rho c^2 = p$, and let $pe = v$, or $e = \frac{v}{p}$: then, upon substituting in (III), we get

$$\frac{d^2v}{dc^2} - \frac{6v}{c^2} - v\frac{c^2}{p}\cdot\frac{d\rho}{dc} = 0 \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (\text{IV}).$$

65. *Example.* Suppose $\rho = A\cdot\frac{\sin qc}{c}$, A and q being constant. As this gives a density diminishing from the center to the surface, it is probable that it will pretty nearly represent that of the Earth. On substituting in (IV), we get

$$\frac{d^2v}{dc^2} - \frac{6v}{c^2} + q^2v = 0:$$

the complete solution of which is

$$v = C\{\sin(qc + C') + \frac{3}{qc}\cos(qc + C') - \frac{3}{q^2c^2}\sin(qc + C')\},$$

C and C' being arbitrary constants. Observing that

$$\phi(c) = 3p,$$

$$\text{and } \psi(c) = \int_c \rho\frac{d}{dc}\left(\frac{c^5v}{p}\right) = \frac{\rho c^5 v}{p} - \int_c \frac{c^5v}{p}\cdot\frac{d\rho}{dc},$$

(the integral being made to vanish when $c = 0$), and, after finding these values, substituting then in equation (II), we find that it reduces itself to

$$\frac{45\,C.\sin C'}{q^2} = 0.$$

C', therefore, must $= 0$; and, therefore,

$$v = C(\sin qc + \frac{3}{qc}\cos qc - \frac{3}{q^3c^3}\sin qc).$$

Now, making use of this value in equation (I), and observing that

$$\chi(c) = \int_c \rho \frac{d}{dc}\left(\frac{v}{p}\right) = \frac{\rho v}{p} - \int_c \frac{v}{p}.\frac{d\rho}{dc};$$

and putting for $\frac{3\pi}{2T^2}$ the value $\frac{m}{2}.\frac{\phi(c)}{c^3}$ found in (60), the equation becomes

$$-A\frac{3m}{2}\left(\frac{\sin qc}{q^2c^2} - \frac{1}{qc^2}\cos qc\right)$$

$$-\frac{3}{5}C\sin qc.\frac{\frac{\sin qc}{c} + \frac{3\cos qc}{qc^2} - \frac{3\sin qc}{q^2c^3}}{\frac{\sin qc}{q^2} - \frac{c\cos qc}{q}}$$

$$+\frac{3}{5}C\left(\frac{q.\cos qc}{c^2} - \frac{\sin qc}{c^3}\right) = 0.$$

Determining from this equation the value of $\frac{C}{A}$, we find the ellipticity of any stratum, whose polar semi-axis is c

$$= \frac{v}{p} = \frac{5m}{2}.\frac{\left(1 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc}\right)^2}{2 - q^2c^2 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc} - \frac{q^2c^2}{\tan^2 qc}}.\frac{1 - \frac{3}{q^2c^2} + \frac{3}{qc.\tan qc}}{1 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc}}.$$

For the ellipticity of the surface we must make $c = c$: thus we obtain

$$e = \frac{5m}{2} \cdot \frac{\left(1 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc}\right) \cdot \left(1 - \frac{3}{q^2c^2} + \frac{3}{qc \,.\, \tan qc}\right)}{2 - q^2c^2 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc} - \frac{q^2c^2}{\tan^2 qc}}.$$

$$\text{If } z = 1 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc}, \quad e = \frac{5m}{2} \cdot \frac{1 - \frac{3z}{q^2c^2}}{3 - z - \frac{q^2c^2}{z}}.$$

66. Suppose $q = \frac{5}{6} \cdot \frac{\pi}{c}$. Then $qc = \frac{5\pi}{6}$: $z = 5{,}53452$; and $e = \frac{5m}{2} \times 0{,}37703$. And since, by (62), n the increase of gravity at the pole $= \frac{5m}{2} - e$, $n = \frac{5m}{2} \times 0{,}62297$. In the Earth $m = \frac{1}{289}$; $\frac{5m}{2} = \frac{1}{115}$; therefore on these assumptions, $e = \frac{1}{305}$, $n = \frac{1}{184{,}6}$. These are very nearly the same as the observed values of e and n.

67. PROP. 30. To compare the mean density with the density at the surface.

If the whole spheroid consisted of matter whose density = mean density, its mass would be the same as it actually is. Hence, the mean density $= \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$. Now, neglecting the ellipticity, the mass may be found by considering it as a series of spherical shells of different density: and since the surface of one of these, whose radius is c, is $4\pi c^2$, the mass of the shell whose thickness is δc and density ρ, is ultimately $4\pi\rho c^2 \delta c$; and, putting u for the mass,

$$\frac{du}{dc} = 4\pi\rho c^2, \quad u = 4\pi \int_c \rho c^2 = 4\pi p,$$

and u the whole mass $= 4\pi p$. And the volume $= \frac{4\pi}{3} c^3$. Hence,

the mean density $= \frac{3p}{c^2}$. And, if the density at the surface $= \rho'$, the ratio of the mean density to that at the surface $= \frac{3p}{c^2 \cdot \rho'}$.

68. *Example.* Suppose the same law of density and the same value of q as before.

$$\text{Then } p = A\left(\frac{\sin qc}{q^2} - \frac{c}{q}\cos qc\right) : \rho = \frac{A \sin qc}{c};$$

$$\therefore \frac{3p}{c^3\rho'} = \frac{3}{c^2 \cdot \sin qc} \cdot \left(\frac{\sin qc}{q^2} - \frac{c}{q}\cos qc\right)$$

$$= \frac{3}{q^2c^2}\left(1 - \frac{qc}{\tan qc}\right) = \frac{3z}{q^2c^2} = 2{,}4225.$$

69. PROP. 31. To find the effect produced by the ellipticity of the Earth on the motion of the Moon.

Let the co-ordinates of the Moon, referred to the Earth's center, be f, g, h: h being perpendicular to the plane of the equator, and f in the intersection of the plane of the equator with the ecliptic. Let NP, (fig. 22), be the intersection of the plane of the ecliptic by the plane passing through g and h; and drawing MP perpendicular to NP, let $NP = k$, $PM = l$: then f, k, l, are the three co-ordinates of M; f, and k being in the plane of the ecliptic. Let $EP = \frac{1}{u}$, $\tan MEP = s$, $PEN = \theta$, $PNO =$ inclination of ecliptic to equator $= \omega$. Then, if PQ, PR, be drawn parallel to h and g,

$$g = NQ - RP = k\cos\omega - l\sin\omega :$$

$$h = QP + MR = k\sin\omega + l\cos\omega.$$

But $k = \frac{1}{u}\sin\theta$; $l = \frac{1}{u}s$; also $f = \frac{1}{u}\cos\theta$. Thus we get for the original co-ordinates these values,

$$f=\frac{1}{u}\cos\theta,$$

$$g=\frac{1}{u}(\sin\theta\cos\omega-s\,.\,\sin\omega),$$

$$h=\frac{1}{u}(\sin\theta\sin\omega+s\,.\,\cos\omega).$$

Let F, G, H, be the forces in the directions of f, g, and h; K and L those in the directions of k and l; and P, T, S, the forces parallel to EP, perpendicular to EP in the plane of the ecliptic, and perpendicular to the ecliptic. Then

$$K=G\cos\omega+H\sin\omega,$$

$$L=H\cos\omega-G\sin\omega.$$

Also $P=F\cos\theta+K\sin\theta;$

$$T=F\sin\theta-K\cos\theta;$$

$$S=L.$$

Substituting the values of K and L,

$$P=F\cos\theta+(G\cos\omega+H\sin\omega)\sin\theta,$$

$$T=F\sin\theta-(G\cos\omega+H\sin\omega)\cos\theta,$$

$$S=H\cos\omega-G\sin\omega.$$

70. Now, by (49),

$$F=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{\phi(c)}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}-\frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}f,$$

$$G=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{\phi(c)}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}-\frac{12h^2-3f^2-3g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}g,$$

$$H=\frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{\phi(c)}{(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}-\frac{6h^2-9f^2-9g^2}{5(f^2+g^2+h^2)^{\frac{7}{2}}}\psi(c)\right\}h.$$

Upon substituting these values in the expressions for P, T, and S, the quantity multiplied by $\psi(c)$ in each is rather complicated,

and it is, therefore, proper to take only those terms which, as remarked in Art. 46 and 47 of the *Lunar Theory*, will be much increased by integration. With this restriction, and observing that s is expressed nearly by $k \sin(g\theta - \gamma)$, where g differs little from 1, we have

$$P = \frac{4\pi}{3}\left\{\frac{u^2\phi(c)}{(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} - \frac{24}{5}u^4\psi(c).\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\sin\theta.s\right\},$$

$$T = -\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{6u^4\psi(c)}{5}\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\cos\theta.s,$$

$$S^* = \frac{4\pi}{3}.\left\{\frac{u^2\phi(c).s}{(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} + \frac{6u^4\psi(c)}{5}\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\sin\theta\right\}.$$

Let E be the mass of the Earth. The volume of a spheroid, whose semi-axes are c and $c(1+e)$, is $\frac{4\pi}{3}c^3(1+2e)$: hence, the volume included between two spheroidal surfaces, is ultimately

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}.\frac{d\{c^3(1+2e)\}}{dc}\delta c:$$

and if the density be ρ, the increment of the mass is

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}\rho\frac{d\{c^3(1+2e)\}}{dc}\delta c;$$

therefore the mass

$$= \frac{4\pi}{3}\int_c \rho\frac{d\{c^3(1+2e)\}}{dc} = \frac{4\pi}{3}\phi(c); \quad \therefore E = \frac{4\pi}{3}\phi(c).$$

Also, by the equation of (61),

$$\left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right).\frac{\phi(c)}{c^3} - \frac{3}{5}.\frac{\psi(c)}{c^5} = 0,$$

---

* The expression for S will contain other small terms multiplying s, which, being similar in character to those treated in the *Lunar Theory*, are here passed over. Their effect is, to alter by a very small quantity the velocity of regression of the node.

whence

$$\frac{4\pi}{3}\cdot\frac{6}{5}\psi(c)=\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)2c^3\phi(c)\frac{4\pi}{3}=\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)2c^3E.$$

Hence, we finally obtain

$$P=\frac{Eu^3}{(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}-\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)8c^3u^4E.\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\sin\theta.s,$$

$$T=-\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)2c^3u^4E.\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\cos\theta.s,$$

$$S=\frac{Eu^3s}{(1+s^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}+\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)2c^3u^4E.\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\sin\theta.$$

71. The value of $\frac{S-Ps}{h^2u^3}$ in the equation (l) of Art. 41, *Lunar Theory*, is increased by

$$\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)2c^3\frac{u}{h^2}E.\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\sin\theta.$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{E}{h^2}=\frac{E}{\mu}.\frac{\mu}{h^2}=\frac{E}{\mu}a;$$

and $u=a$, nearly:

hence, $2c^3\frac{u}{h^2}E=2c^3a^3\frac{E}{\mu}$, nearly; (*Lunar Theory*, Art. 39);

and the increase of $\frac{S-Ps}{h^2u^3}$ is nearly

$$2\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)c^3a^3\frac{E}{\mu}\sin\omega.\cos\omega.\sin\theta.$$

Let the term which s receives in consequence be $A\sin\theta$. Upon substituting this in the equation, since

$$\frac{d^2(A\sin\theta)}{d\theta^2}+A\sin\theta=0,$$

the only term, it will be found, which receives an increment of the same form, is

$$\frac{m'u'^3s}{h^2u^4}\left\{\frac{3}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta'-\theta)\right\},\quad\text{or } n^2s\left\{\frac{3}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\cos 2(\theta'-\theta)\right\},$$

nearly, (*Lunar Theory*, Art. 41),

nearly, the first part of which will be increased by $\frac{3n^2}{2} A \sin \theta$, n being here the same as m in the *Lunar Theory*. Making then all the additional terms $= 0$ which depend on $\sin \theta$, we have

$$\frac{3n^2}{2} A + 2\left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right) c^2 a^2 \frac{E}{\mu} \sin \omega \cdot \cos \omega = 0,$$

$$\text{or } A = \frac{-4}{3n^2} \cdot \left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right) c^2 a^2 \frac{E}{\mu} \sin \omega \cdot \cos \omega :$$

and the term in s, or in the tangent of the Moon's latitude,

$$= \frac{-4}{3n^2} \left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right) c^2 a^2 \frac{E}{\mu} \sin \omega \cdot \cos \omega \cdot \sin \theta.$$

This is expressed in parts of the radius; the number of seconds will be found by multiplying it by $\frac{180 \times 60 \times 60}{\pi}$. And $ca = \frac{c}{\rho}$ nearly = sin Moon's mean horizontal parallax. The term is, therefore,

$$\frac{-4 \cdot (60)^3}{n^2 \cdot \pi} \cdot \left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right) \sin^2 \text{paral.} \frac{E}{\mu} \sin \omega \cdot \cos \omega \cdot \sin \theta.$$

*71. The geometrical interpretation of the term which we have just found is so remarkable as to deserve the reader's attention. Put C for $\frac{4}{3n^2}\left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right) c^2 a^2 \frac{E}{\mu} \sin \omega \cdot \cos \omega$. Then the tangent of the Moon's latitude (taking only the principal term of the expression found in the *Lunar Theory*, and combining it with this term), is

$$s = k \sin (g\theta - \gamma) - C \sin \theta.$$

Suppose the ascending node of the Moon's orbit to coincide with the first point of Aries, or to have its longitude $= 0$; that is, suppose $\gamma = 0$; then

$$s = k \sin g\theta - C \sin \theta,$$

or, as g differs very little from 1, the motion for several revolutions will be represented by this formula,

$$s = k \sin \theta - C \sin \theta$$
$$= (k - C) \sin \theta.$$

In this position of the node, therefore, when the Moon's orbit is more inclined to the terrestrial equator than the ecliptic is, the inclination of the orbit to the ecliptic is diminished by the new term, or the plane of the orbit is brought nearer to the plane of the Earth's equator by the new term.

Again, suppose the longitude of the ascending node to be 180^0; the expression for the tangent of latitude will be

$$s = k \sin (g\theta - 180^0) - C \sin \theta,$$

which for a few revolutions will be represented with sufficient accuracy by

$$s = k \sin (\theta - 180^0) + C \sin (\theta - 180^0),$$

$$= (k + C) \sin (\theta - 180^0).$$

In this position then of the node, when the Moon's orbit is less inclined to the Earth's equator than the ecliptic is, the inclination of the Moon's orbit on the ecliptic is increased by the new term, or the plane of the orbit is brought nearer to the plane of the Earth's equator by the new term.

In all cases, therefore, the plane of the Moon's orbit is brought nearer to the plane of the Earth's equator by the new term. And thus we may represent the effect of that term by supposing the nodes of the Moon's orbit, in their retrograde motion, to regress not upon the ecliptic, but upon a plane lying between the ecliptic and the equator; and supposing the inclination of the Moon's orbit to remain constant, not as respects the ecliptic, but as respects that new plane.

72. In investigating the alteration produced in u, it must be observed that the term

$$-\left(e - \frac{m}{2}\right) 2c^2 \frac{u}{h^2} E \sin \omega . \cos \omega . \cos \theta . s,$$

which is added to $\frac{T}{h^2 u^2}$, upon putting for s its value $k \sin (g\theta - \gamma)$, will contain the terms $\sin \{(g-1)\theta - \gamma\}$, $\sin \{(g+1)\theta - \gamma\}$, of which the former will be much increased by integration. The

term depending on $\sin\theta \,.\, s$, which is added to P, introduces terms (though less important) of the same form. And the term $-a\left(1-\frac{3s^2}{2}\right)$ in $-\frac{P}{h^2u^3}$, will contain $3as \times$ the term added to s, or

$$-\frac{4}{n^2}k\sin(g\theta-\gamma)\,.\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)c^3a^3\frac{E}{\mu}\sin\omega\,.\cos\omega\,.\sin\theta,$$

which will also produce terms of the same form. To find the alteration produced in $\frac{dt}{d\theta}$, it is necessary to include many terms depending on $s^3\cos\theta$, &c., and some terms among those added to P.

*72. Since $g\theta-\gamma$ is the Moon's distance in longitude from the mean place of the node, and θ is the Moon's longitude, or her distance in longitude from the first point of Aries $\{(g-1)\,\theta-\gamma\}$ is the distance of the first point of Aries from the node. Hence the inequalities in longitude depending on the angle $\{(g-1)\,\theta-\gamma\}$ require, in order to go through all their changes, a complete revolution of the Moon's node. For about 9 years therefore, in consequence of these terms, the Moon's true longitude is in advance of her mean longitude, and for the following 9 years her true longitude is behind her mean longitude.

73. The disturbances in the Moon's motion produced by the Earth's ellipticity, though sensible, are very small. The ellipticity of Jupiter produces considerable disturbances in the motions of his satellites, and affects very much the progression of their apsides, and the regression of their nodes.

ON THE METHODS OF ASCERTAINING THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH BY OBSERVATION.

74. THE simplest of all methods, and the least dependent on theory, is that of measuring, by Geodetic operations, the distance between two places which are nearly in the same meridian, and observing the latitude of each*. If two measurements of

* For the methods of finding by triangulation the distance between two places *nearly* in the same meridian, and reducing this to a distance *exactly* in the same meri-

this sort be made in places whose difference of latitude is considerable, the ellipticity of the Earth may be ascertained; as we proceed to shew.

75. PROP. 32. The Earth being supposed a spheroid; to express the length of a small arc of the meridian at any point, in terms of the difference of latitude of its extremities.

Let $APQB$, (fig. 23), be the meridian passing through the extremities P and Q of a small arc of latitude; at P and Q, draw normals meeting in R; then, R is very nearly the center of curvature of p, which bisects PQ. And, if D be the difference of latitude of P and Q, $PRQ = D$;

$$\therefore\ PQ = D \,.\, pR.$$

Now, putting a and c for the semi-axes, pR (Whewell's *Doctrine of Limits*, p. 63)

$$= \frac{CK^2}{pF} = \frac{AC^2 \,.\, BC^2}{pF^3} = \frac{a^2c^2}{pF^3}.$$

$$\text{But } pF = \frac{c^2}{pL}; \qquad \therefore\ pR = \frac{a^2 \,.\, pL^3}{c^4}.$$

And pLN = latitude of $p = l$; $\quad \therefore\ LN = pL\cos L$;

$$\therefore\ CN = \frac{a^2}{c^2} pL\cos l; \text{ and } Np = pL\sin l.$$

Substituting these in the equation $\frac{CN^2}{a^2} + \frac{Np^2}{c^2} = 1$, we get

$$pL^2 \frac{a^2\cos^2 l + c^2\sin^2 l}{c^4} = 1;$$

$$\therefore\ pL^3 = \frac{c^6}{(a^2\cos^2 l + c^2\sin^2 l)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

$$\text{and } pR = \frac{a^2c^2}{(a^2\cos^2 l + c^2\sin^2 l)^{\frac{3}{2}}}:$$

---

dian, as well as for the methods of observing the latitudes, the reader is referred to the *Encyclopædia Metropolitana*, Article *Figure of the Earth*: and to other treatises on Geodesy.

$$\text{hence } PQ = D\frac{a^2c^2}{(a^2\cos^2 l + c^2\sin^2 l)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

If the ellipticity be small, let $a = c(1+e)$;

$$\therefore\ PQ = \frac{Dc^4(1+2e)}{\{c^2(1+2e)\cos^2 l + c^2\sin^2 l\}^{\frac{3}{2}}} = Dc(1+2e-3e\cos^2 l),$$

$$\text{or } = Dc(1-e+3e\sin^2 l), \text{ nearly.}$$

76. Suppose then two arcs PQ, $P'Q'$, have been measured: suppose the latitudes of the middle points of the arcs to be l, l': the difference of the latitudes of P and Q to be D, that of P' and Q' to be D'. Then

$$\frac{PQ}{D} = c(1-e+3e\sin^2 l),$$

$$\frac{P'Q'}{D'} = c(1-e+3e\sin^2 l').$$

Subtracting, $\quad \frac{P'Q'}{D'} - \frac{PQ}{D} = 3ce(\sin^2 l' - \sin^2 l)$;

$$\therefore\ e = \frac{\frac{P'Q'}{D'} - \frac{PQ}{D}}{3c(\sin^2 l' - \sin^2 l)}.$$

As e is small, we may, without sensible error, put for c, $\frac{PQ}{D}$, or $\frac{P'Q'}{D'}$: hence

$$e = \frac{1 - \frac{PQ}{P'Q'}\cdot\frac{D'}{D}}{3(\sin^2 l' - \sin^2 l)}.$$

77. *Example.* By Lambton's measures in India, the arc of the meridian from lat. 8°.9'.38",4 to lat. 10°.59'.48",9 = 1029100,5 feet.

By Svanberg's measures in Sweden, the arc of the meridian from lat. 65°.31'.32",2 to lat. 67°.8'.49",8 = 593277,5 feet.

Here $PQ = 1029100{,}5$; $P'Q' = 593277{,}5$; $D = 10210''{,}5$; $D' = 5837''{,}6$; $l = 9^{\circ}.34'.44''$; $l' = 66^{\circ}.20'.10''$. Make

$$\frac{PQ}{P'Q'} \cdot \frac{D'}{D} = \cos^2\theta,$$

or $2\log\cos\theta = 20 + \log PQ + \log D' - \log P'Q' - \log D$

$= \log PQ + \log D' + \text{ar. com. } \log P'Q' + \text{ar. com. } \log D$:

then, the numerator $= \sin^2\theta$. And the denominator

$$= 3\sin(l' + l) \cdot \sin(l' - l).$$

Hence $\log e = 2\log\sin\theta - \log 3 - \log\sin(l' + l) - \log\sin(l' - l)$.

By calculating from the data above, $e = \frac{1}{306{,}3}$.

78. Attempts have also been made to determine the ellipticity of the Earth by measuring the distance between two places on the same parallel: the difference of longitude being determined; either by observation on Jupiter's satellites; or by observing the flash of gunpowder fired on a conspicuous place between the stations; or by transmitting chronometers from station to station, comparing the chronometers with the transit-clocks at the two stations, and thus comparing one transit-clock with the other; or by sending instantaneous signals from one station to the other by galvanic telegraph-currents, and observing the times of these signals by both transit-clocks. The difference of longitude may also be determined by mere observation of angles, if the stations are so near as to be visible each from the other, (see *Phil. Trans.* 1790).

79. PROP. 33. To express the distance of two places on the same parallel, in terms of their difference of longitude.

Let p, q, (fig. 23), be the places; L their difference of longitude. Then, pq (which, when the arc is small, may be measured as a great circle without sensible error,) $= L \cdot CN$.

$$\text{Now } CN = \frac{a^2}{c^2} pL \cdot \cos l = \frac{a^2 \cos l}{\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2 l + c^2 \sin^2 l)}};$$

$$\therefore pq = L\frac{a^2\cos l}{\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2 l + c^2\sin^2 l)}}$$

$$= L\,c\cos l\,(1 + 2e - e\cos^2 l)$$

$$= L\,c\cos l\,(1 + e + e\sin^2 l),$$

if the ellipticity be small.

80. If then one arc has been measured in the meridian, and another on a parallel, and if l be the latitude of the middle of the meridional arc, l' that of the parallel, we shall have these equations:

$$\frac{PQ}{D} = c\,(1 - e + 3e\sin^2 l'),$$

$$\frac{pq}{L} = c\cos l'\,(1 + e + e\sin^2 l').$$

Eliminating c, e may be found*.

81. The method which on account of its great facility is now very extensively used, is that of observing the intensity of gravity in different latitudes, by means of the pendulum. It is usual to observe the number of vibrations made in a day by the same pendulum, in the different places at which it is proposed to compare the force of gravity; and likewise the number of vibrations made at London or Paris. The observations are commonly made by causing the experimental pendulum to vibrate in front of a clock-pendulum, and by observing the interval between the times at which the two pendulums pass the centers of the arcs of vibration at the same instant and in the same direction: then, since one of the pendulums has in that interval gained exactly two vibrations upon the other, the ratio of

* In practice, stations cannot be found exactly on the same parallel: and the method of longitudes has scarcely been used in the form described in the text. It is found better to assume dimensions of the earth: to compute on these dimensions the successive differences of longitude for each step of the triangulation; and, when the whole difference is computed, to compare it with that found by signals, chronometers, or telegraph: and to infer from their discordance the correction that ought to be applied to the assumed radius of parallels based on the assumed dimensions of the earth. The calculation of difference of longitude upon the spheroid is troublesome.

the actual times of vibration is accurately known: and the time of vibration of the clock-pendulum is found from astronomical observations: and thus the time of vibration of the experimental pendulum, and the number of vibrations which it makes in a day, are found with great accuracy. In some experiments the clock-pendulum itself has been observed. The comparative number of vibrations being found, the comparative force of gravity, or the comparative length of the seconds' pendulum, can be found: and, as the length of the seconds' pendulum has been very accurately determined at London and Paris, its length is known at all the places of observation. The French astronomers have used a method more direct, but less convenient, and probably less accurate: it is described at length in the Additions to Biot's *Astronomie Physique*, p. 138.

82. Let p and p' be the lengths of the seconds' pendulum in latitudes l and l', P that at the equator. Since these lengths are proportional to the intensities of gravity, we have, by (63),

$$\left.\begin{aligned} p &= P(1 + n \sin^2 l) \\ p' &= P(1 + n \sin^2 l') \end{aligned}\right\}, \quad \text{where } n = \frac{5m}{2} - \mathrm{e}.$$

From these equations,

$$n = \frac{1 - \frac{p}{p'}}{\frac{p'}{p} \sin^2 l' - \sin^2 l} = \frac{1 - \frac{p}{p'}}{\sin^2 l' - \sin^2 l}, \text{ nearly,}$$

which may be calculated as the last example: then $\mathrm{e} = \frac{5m}{2} - n$.

83. *Example.* At Madras.

$$l = 13^\circ.4'.9'', \quad p = 39{,}0234.$$

At Melville Island,

$$l' = 74^\circ.47'.12'', \quad p' = 39{,}2070.$$

Hence, $n = {,}0053214$; and $\frac{5m}{2} = {,}0086505$;

$$\therefore \mathrm{e} = {,}0033291 = \frac{1}{300}.$$

84. The ellipticity of the Earth has also been determined from the motion of the Moon. It appears from (71), that in the expression for the tangent of the Moon's latitude, there is this term

$$-\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right).\frac{4.60^3}{n^2.\pi}.\sin^2\text{parallax}.\frac{E}{\mu}.\sin\text{obliquity}.\cos\text{obliquity}.\sin\theta.$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{E}{\mu}=\frac{\text{Earth's mass}}{\text{Earth}+\text{Moon}}=\frac{70}{71}, \text{ nearly: } n=\frac{27{,}25}{365{,}25}:$$

mean horizontal parallax $= 57'$: obliquity $= 23^0.28'$, nearly: hence this term

$$=-\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right).4891''.\sin\theta.$$

It is found by observation that the coefficient $= -8''$; hence

$$\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)=\frac{8}{4891}=,001635. \quad \text{And } \frac{m}{2}=,001730:$$

$$\text{hence } e=,003365=\frac{1}{297}.$$

The ellipticity, found by comparing the observed inequality in longitude with the calculated inequality, differs little from this.

85. The two latter methods, it will be observed, depend entirely upon the theory which we have laid down: the first and second are quite independent of theory. The near agreement of their results is one of the most convincing proofs that the principle of gravitation, and the suppositions upon which our theory is founded, are true.

86. For the calculation of parallax, it is necessary to know the distance of any point on the Earth's surface from the Earth's center, and the angle ACp, (fig. 23), which is called the *geocentric* latitude: ALp being the *true* or *astronomical* latitude, which = the elevation of the pole. The difference between the true and geocentric latitude is called the angle of the vertical.

87. PROP. 34. To find the distance of any point on the Earth's surface from its center, in terms of the latitude of that point.

$$Cp^2 = CN^2 + Np^2 = \frac{a^4}{c^4} LN^2 + Np^2 = Lp^2 \left(\frac{a^4}{c^4} \cos^2 l + \sin^2 l \right).$$

Putting for Lp^2 the value found in (75),

$$Cp^2 = \frac{a^4 \cos^2 l + c^4 \sin^2 l}{a^2 \cos^2 l + c^2 \sin^2 l}; \text{ and } Cp = \sqrt{\frac{a^4 \cos^2 l + c^4 \sin^2 l}{a^2 \cos^2 l + c^2 \sin^2 l}}.$$

If the ellipticity be small,

$$Cp = c \sqrt{\frac{(1+4e)\cos^2 l + \sin^2 l}{(1+2e)\cos^2 l + \sin^2 l}}$$

$$= c\,(1 + e \cos^2 l) \text{ nearly} = c\,(1 + e - e \sin^2 l).$$

88. PROP. 35. To find the angle of the vertical.

Let ACp be the corrected latitude $= l'$.

$$\text{Then } \tan l = \frac{pN}{NL}; \quad \tan l' = \frac{pN}{CN};$$

$$\therefore \frac{\tan l'}{\tan l} = \frac{LN}{CN} = \frac{c^2}{a^2}, \text{ or } \tan l' = \frac{c^2}{a^2} \tan l.$$

$$\text{Hence, } \tan (l - l') = \frac{\tan l - \tan l'}{1 + \tan l \,.\, \tan l'}$$

$$= \frac{\left(1 - \frac{c^2}{a^2}\right) \tan l}{1 + \frac{c^2}{a^2} \tan^2 l} = \frac{(a^2 - c^2) \sin l \cos l}{a^2 \cos^2 l + c^2 \sin^2 l}.$$

When the ellipticity is small, putting $l - l'$ for $\tan (l - l')$,

$$l - l' = 2e \,.\, \sin l \,.\, \cos l \text{ nearly} = e \,.\, \sin 2l.$$

This is in parts of the radius: the number of seconds is

$$\frac{180 \,.\, 60 \,.\, 60}{\pi} e \sin 2l.$$

89. In terminating this Tract, we would remark that the same subject has been treated by different methods, possessing

merits of different kinds. In general, no actual result is obtained from these which is not obtained by the method adopted here. Only one deduction possessing the least importance has been added to this Theory for many years past. In a very remarkable investigation published in the *Cambridge Transactions*, Vol. VIII. Professor Stokes has shewn that, without making any assumption whatever as to the ellipticity of internal strata, the past or present internal fluidity of the Earth, &c., the following Theorem is necessarily true: "If the external form of the sea (imagined to percolate the land by canals) be a spheroid with ellipticity e, then the law of gravity will be the same as that found above; the variable term will depend on $\left(\frac{5m}{2} - e\right)$ $\sin^2$ latitude; and the variable part of the forces on the Moon will depend on $e - \frac{m}{2}$." Professor Stokes has arrived at this conclusion by a calculus different from that employed in the text.

PRECESSION OF THE EQUINOXES,

AND

NUTATION OF THE EARTH's AXIS.

ON THE COMPOSITION OF ROTATORY MOTION.

1. PROP. 1. IF a body revolve about an axis AB (fig. 24), with an angular velocity ω, and if a force be impressed upon it which would make it revolve about the axis AC, with an angular velocity ω'; then the body will not revolve about either of the axes AB, AC, but about an axis AD, in the plane BAC, dividing the angle BAC so that

$$\sin BAD : \sin CAD :: \omega' : \omega.$$

2. It is evident, that the new axis of rotation is that line in the body, which, when the effect of both the original motions is considered, remains at rest. If, then, a line AD in the plane BAC be that axis, the angular motion about AB would tend to raise any point in it, as D, *above* the plane of the paper, as much as the angular motion about AC would tend to depress it *below* the plane of the paper. From D, draw DE, DF, perpendicular to AB, AC. In consequence of the angular motion about AB, the point D would be raised above the paper, with the velocity

$$\omega \times ED = \omega \times AD \,.\, \sin BAD,$$

And, in consequence of the angular motion about AC, D would be depressed below the paper, with the velocity

$$\omega' \times FD = \omega' \times AD \,.\, \sin CAD.$$

Making these equal,

$$\omega \,.\, AD \,.\, \sin BAD = \omega' \,.\, AD \,.\, \sin CAD;$$

$$\therefore \sin BAD : \sin CAD :: \omega' : \omega.$$

3. Now, to shew that AD really is the axis of rotation, take any point P in the body: with center A, suppose a spherical surface described, passing through P, and cutting AB, AC, AD, in B, C, D; let BDC, BP, CP, be arcs of great circles. Let PQ, drawn perpendicular to PB on the surface of the sphere, be the motion of P, produced by the rotation about AB only, in the very small time t; let PR, drawn perpendicular to PC, on the surface of the sphere, be the motion of P, produced by the rotation about AC only, in the same time; then, if the parallelogram QR be completed, PS, the diagonal, is the true motion of P, in that time. Now $CPR = 90^\circ = BPQ$; adding RPB to both, $CPB = RPQ$. Also

$$\sin SPQ : \sin SPR :: \sin SPQ : \sin PSQ :: SQ : PQ$$

$$:: PR : PQ.$$

But $PR = \omega' t \,.\, \sin PC$ to radius AC;

$$PQ = \omega t \,.\, \sin PB;$$

$$\therefore \sin SPQ : \sin SPR :: \omega' \,.\, \sin PC : \omega \,.\, \sin PB.$$

$$\text{And } \sin BPD : \sin CPD :: \frac{\sin BD \,.\, \sin BDP}{\sin BP}$$

$$: \frac{\sin CD \,.\, \sin CDP}{\sin CP} :: \sin PC \,.\, \sin BD : \sin PB \,.\, \sin CD$$

$$:: \omega' \,.\, \sin PC : \omega \,.\, \sin PB,$$

(since $\sin BD : \sin CD :: \sin BAD : \sin CAD :: \omega' : \omega$).

Hence, $\sin SPQ : \sin SPR :: \sin BPD : \sin CPD$.

Since, then, the two angles CPB, RPQ, are equal, and are divided into parts whose sines are in the same ratio, it follows that those parts are equal, or $BPD = QPS$. Adding to each BPS,

$$DPS = BPQ = 90^\circ;$$

and, therefore, PS is perpendicular to the plane APD. In the same manner it may be shewn, that the plane passing through any other point of the body, and through AD, is perpendicular to the motion of that point; and, since the axis of rotation is the

line of intersection of all the planes perpendicular to the motion of every point, AD must be the axis of rotation.

4. It is here supposed, that the angular motion about AB tends to raise all the particles between AD and AC, and that the angular motion about AC tends to depress them. If, however, the angular motions about both AB and AC, (fig. 25), tend to raise the particles between AB and AC, produce CA to C': then the angular motion about AC' tends to raise the particles between AC' and AB, and the angular motion about AB tends to depress them. Hence, the new axis of rotation will be the line AD, which makes $\sin BAD : \sin C'AD :: \omega' : \omega$. The same is true, if both angular motions tend to depress the particles between AB and AC.

5. Prop. 2. The angular velocity about the new axis AD, (fig. 24), will be to the original angular velocity about AB, as $\sin BAC$ to $\sin DAC$; and the angular velocity about AD to the original angular velocity about AC, as $\sin BAC$ to $\sin BAD$.

6. Let ω'' be the angular velocity about AD;

$$\text{then, } PS = \omega'' t \,.\, \sin DP.$$

$$\text{Now } PQ : PS :: \sin PSQ : \sin PQS :: \sin SPR : \sin QPR$$
$$:: \sin DPC : \sin BPC,$$

since BP, DP, CP, are perpendicular to PQ, PS, PR, respectively. But

$$\sin DPC : \sin BPC :: \frac{\sin DC \,.\, \sin DCP}{\sin DP} : \frac{\sin BC \,.\, \sin BCP}{\sin BP};$$

putting then for PQ and PS their values,

$$\omega t \,.\, \sin BP : \omega'' t \,.\, \sin DP :: \frac{\sin DC}{\sin DP} : \frac{\sin BC}{\sin BP};$$

$$\text{whence, } \omega : \omega'' :: \sin DC : \sin BC :: \sin DAC : \sin BAC.$$

$$\text{And, since } \omega' : \omega :: \sin BAD : \sin DAC, \text{ by (2)};$$
$$\therefore \omega' : \omega'' :: \sin BAD : \sin BAC.$$

7. We have supposed, in the enunciations of the Propositions above, that an angular motion about one axis is

suddenly impressed upon a body which had previously an angular motion about another axis. It is evident, that the conclusions are the same, if we suppose both angular motions to be impressed at once.

8. From these Propositions, compared with the usual propositions on the composition of forces, it appears, that if two forces in the directions AB, AC, be proportional to ω, ω', their resultant will be in the direction AD, and will be proportional to ω''. And hence, if several angular motions were impressed upon a body at the same time, the new axis of rotation and the angular velocity about that axis would be found, by finding the direction and magnitude of the resultant of forces which are in the directions of the several axes of rotation, and are proportional to the angular velocities.

9. If then a body revolve about an axis, and angular motions about two other axes be impressed upon it, it is indifferent whether we first compound the two impressed motions, and then compound their resultant with the original motion; or compound the original motion with one of the impressed motions, and then compound their resultant with the other motion. For, in compounding the forces proportional to these angular velocities, the order in which they are taken is indifferent.

10. If the angular motion about AC be not produced instantaneously, but by the continued action of a finite force, its effect may be found, by supposing the time divided into a great number of small intervals, and supposing the angular velocity generated in each of those intervals to be impressed at the end of each, and then finding the limit to which we approach, by increasing indefinitely the number of these intervals.

11. Prop. 3. If a uniform force act upon the body, tending to give it a motion of rotation about an axis which is always perpendicular to the axis about which it is at each instant revolving, and always in the plane BAC, (fig. 24 and 26);

And if the nature of the body be such that continued

rotation round any axis passing through its center of gravity is possible*;

Or if there be one axis of symmetry in the body†, and if the body's motion be such‡ that the axis of symmetry will always occupy a position AE in the plane BAE at right angles to BAC;

Then the angular velocity will be unaltered.

*11. Let ω be the original angular velocity. For estimating the new rotation produced round the axis AC, we must combine, with the external force, the centrifugal force arising from the circumstance that the axis of symmetry AE does not coincide with the axis of momentary rotation AB. The effect of this centrifugal force is in the plane BAE or at right angles to BAC, (tending to increase the angle BAE if the body be a prolate spheroid or to diminish it if the body be an oblate spheroid), and it is therefore similar in the nature of its action to the external force, and admits of being combined with it. Suppose that the combination of these forces would generate, in 1″, the angular velocity α. Let this 1″ be divided into n parts; then the angular velocity generated in each of these parts, is $\frac{\alpha}{n}$. Compounding the angular velocities ω and $\frac{\alpha}{n}$, of which the axes AB, AC, (fig. 26), are at right angles to each other, we find, by (6) and (8), the new angular velocity about $AD = \sqrt{\left(\omega^2 + \frac{\alpha^2}{n^2}\right)}$. Compounding this angular velocity with the angular velocity $\frac{\alpha}{n}$, generated in the second small interval, and observing that the axis Ac, about which it is produced, is perpendicular to the

* That is, if the moments of inertia round any three rectangular axes are equal, as for instance if the body is a homogeneous sphere.

† That is, if the moments of inertia round any two lines in one plane are equal, and the moment round an axis perpendicular to that plane is different, as in a spheroid, whether oblate or prolate.

‡ It will be seen, Article 20, that this condition holds in the investigation of Precession.

axis AD, about which the body is now revolving, the angular velocity at the end of the second interval, is

$$\sqrt{\left(\omega^2+\frac{\alpha^2}{n^2}+\frac{\alpha^2}{n^2}\right)}=\sqrt{\left(\omega^2+\frac{2\alpha^2}{n^2}\right)}.$$

In the same way the angular velocity at the end of the third interval, is

$$\sqrt{\left(\omega^2+\frac{2\alpha^2}{n^2}+\frac{\alpha^2}{n^2}\right)}=\sqrt{\left(\omega^2+\frac{3\alpha^2}{n^2}\right)}, \text{ &c.};$$

that at the end of the n^{th} interval, or at the end of 1″, is

$$\sqrt{\left(\omega^2+\frac{n\alpha^2}{n^2}\right)}=\sqrt{\left(\omega^2+\frac{\alpha^2}{n}\right)}.$$

Let n be increased without limit, and this becomes $=\sqrt{(\omega^2)}=\omega$. The angular velocity, therefore, is not altered in the first 1″; and since the same demonstration applies to every succeeding 1″, it follows, that the angular motion is unaltered.

12. Prop. 4. Under the same circumstances, the axis of rotation has a uniform motion in space, from the position AB towards AC; and the angle described in $1''=\frac{\alpha}{\omega}$.

Suppose 1″ divided into n parts, as in (*11), and suppose AB, AC, (fig. 24), to be at right angles. If we suppose the angular velocity $\frac{\alpha}{n}$, about the axis AC, to be impressed instantaneously, and suppose AD to be the new axis of revolution; then, by (1),

$$\frac{\sin BAD}{\sin CAD}=\frac{\alpha}{n\omega},$$

or, in the present case,

$$\frac{\sin BAD}{\cos BAD}=\frac{\alpha}{n\omega}, \quad \text{or } \tan BAD=\frac{\alpha}{n\omega}.$$

Suppose n very much increased; then tan BAD being diminished without limit, we may put the arc for the tangent; hence, $BAD=\frac{\alpha}{n\omega}$. And since, by the last Proposition, the

angular velocity remains unaltered, angles equal to BAD will be added to BAD in each succeeding interval; and, therefore, at the end of 1″, the axis of revolution will be inclined to the line which was the axis of revolution at the beginning of that 1″, by the angle $\frac{\alpha}{\omega}$. Since the same is true of every successive 1″, the axis of revolution will move from the position AB, towards the position AC, with the angular velocity $\frac{\alpha}{\omega}$.

13. PROP. 5. Under the same circumstances, if a spherical surface be described in the body about the point A, at which the axes intersect each other; the points at which the successive axes of revolution cut this surface will lie in the circumference of a small circle, whose radius = radius of the sphere $\times \frac{\alpha}{\omega^2}$, nearly.

Let AB, (fig. 26), be the original axis, and, as before, suppose 1″ divided into n parts, and the angular velocity $\frac{\alpha}{n}$, about an axis perpendicular to the axis of rotation, to be impressed at the end of each. At the end of the first interval, the axis will be transported from AB to AD, the angle BAD being $= \frac{\alpha}{n\omega}$; and at the end of the second and succeeding intervals, it will have the positions AD', AD'', &c. in space, each of the angles DAD', $D'AD''$, &c. being $= \frac{\alpha}{n\omega}$. Now, in $\frac{1''}{n}$, the body revolves through $\frac{\omega}{n}$; hence, if, on the surface of the sphere, the angle $D'Dd'$ be made $\frac{\omega}{n}$, and $Dd' = DD'$, d' is the point which, at the end of the second interval, coincides with D'; and Ad' is, therefore, the line in the body, which, at the end of the second interval, is the axis of rotation. In the same manner, if $d'd''$ make with Dd' produced the angle $\frac{\omega}{n}$, and $d'd'' = D'D''$, Ad'' is the line, which, at the end of the third interval, is the axis of rotation, &c. From the construction it is evident, that BD, Dd',

$d'd''$, &c., are the sides of a regular polygon. Suppose now, n increased without limit, or the number of the sides of the polygon increased without limit; the limit of the line traced on the spherical surface by its intersections with the successive axes, is a circle.

14. To find the radius of this circle, we observe, that if the circle and polygon be small, the sum of all the angles at D, d', &c. $= 2\pi$; but, since each of them $= \frac{\omega}{n}$, their number, or the number of sides of the polygon $= \frac{2n\pi}{\omega}$. And the length of each $= AB \cdot \frac{\alpha}{n\omega}$; therefore the circumference of the polygon, or ultimately of the circle $= \frac{2\pi \cdot AB \cdot \alpha}{\omega^2}$; therefore the radius of the circle $= AB \cdot \frac{\alpha}{\omega^2}$.

15. If the force which acts upon the body be nearly, but not exactly, uniform, and if the axes about which it tends to produce motion, be not contained in the plane BAC, then the propositions above will be nearly, but not exactly, true. The line traced on the spherical surface in (13), by the successive poles of rotation, will be a spiral approaching very nearly to a circle: the change of position of the axis in space at every instant, will be in the plane passing through the axis of rotation and the axis of impressed motion at that instant; and the velocity of the change, though not uniform, will be at that instant $\frac{\alpha}{\omega}$.

ON PRECESSION AND NUTATION.

16. PROP. 6. To explain the physical cause of solar precession, and solar nutation.

Let A, (fig. 27), be the Earth's center; AB the axis of rotation; S the Sun; CHG the equator of the terrestrial spheroid; CAG that diameter of the equator, which is perpendicular to AS; and suppose the Earth to be in the position which it has

at the summer solstice. In the succeeding investigations, which relate only to the motion of the Earth about its center of gravity, we may suppose the center of gravity to be kept at rest, and the motion of the Earth about this point will be the same as if we supposed it moving freely, (Whewell *On the Motion of Points constrained, &c.* Art. 269; Earnshaw's *Dynamics*, Art. 137; Poisson, *Mécanique*, 402; Griffin's *Dynamics of a Rigid Body*, Art. 118). Suppose, then, A the Earth's center, to be at rest; and consider the effect which the Sun's attraction would then produce on the Earth. If the Earth were spherical, it is evident that the Sun's attraction would have no tendency to give the Earth any rotation about the center A. But the Earth is an oblate spheroid; we must, therefore, consider the effect produced by the Sun's attraction on the parts of the spheroid which are exterior to the sphere that touches the spheroid at its poles. Now the Sun's attraction is inversely as the square of the distance of the matter attracted; and, consequently, the attraction on the spheroidal protuberance at K, is greater than the attraction on that at H. The effect of this, supposing the Earth at rest, would evidently be to give it a motion of rotation about the line CAG, in such a direction as to bring the point K towards B. But the Earth is not at rest, but is revolving about the axis AB, which nearly coincides with the axis of the spheroid, in such a direction as to carry the point C towards K. This, then, is exactly the case considered in (12). The Earth has a previous motion of rotation; and a force acts on it, which, for a short time at least, is uniform, and which tends to give it a motion of rotation round an axis perpendicular to the axis about which it is revolving. The axis of rotation, therefore, moves from the position AB towards AC, describing in each $1''$ the angle $\frac{\alpha}{\omega}$. Let AD be the position of the axis of rotation after a short time; and let AL be perpendicular to the ecliptic. It is evident, that the path of the pole, or the arc joining BD, is a tangent to the circle passing through B, whose center is in AL, and whose plane is perpendicular to AL; and that the motion of the pole in this circle is in a direction opposite to the direction of the Earth's rotation, or is retrograde. By virtue of this motion of the pole, and the corresponding motion of the plane of the

equator, the intersection of the planes of the equator and the ecliptic (which at the summer solstice, as here supposed, is the line CAG), as viewed from the point L on the north side, travels round on the ecliptic in the same direction as the hands of a watch. Consequently the first point of Aries, as seen from the center of the earth, travels slowly on the ecliptic in that direction which is called retrograde, and the Sun, in its apparent direct annual course, reaches the first point of Aries sooner than it would have done without this motion of the pole. This, then, is precession of the equinoxes.

17. If we now consider the situation of the Earth at the winter solstice (fig. 28), it will be seen, that the Sun's attraction upon H is now greater than the attraction on K; and, therefore, the motion of rotation about CAG, which the Sun's action tends to produce in the Earth, is in the same direction as before. The motion of the axis of rotation is, therefore, in the same direction as at the summer solstice.

18. If the effect of the Sun's action be examined in any other situation of the Earth, it will be found that, as the small line BD is always perpendicular to the plane passing through the Sun and the Earth's axis, it is not always a tangent to the small circle whose center is in AL. The Sun's action, therefore, sometimes increases the inclination of the axis of rotation to the axis of the ecliptic, and sometimes diminishes it; but (as we shall shew hereafter) does not permanently alter it. This phænomenon is one part of solar nutation. The angular motion of the axis of rotation, about the axis of the ecliptic, is always in the same direction; but as the action of the Sun is different in different positions of the Earth, and is 0 at the equinoxes, this angular motion or precession is irregular. The correction, which it is necesssry to apply to a uniform precession, is the other part of solar nutation.

19. Prop. 7. To explain the physical cause of lunar precession, and lunar nutation.

Since the Moon describes (very nearly) a great circle about the Earth in a month, in the same manner as the Sun in a year,

the same explanation which has been given for the precession and nutation produced by the Sun in a year, will apply to those produced by the Moon in a month. But the monthly nutation produced by the Moon is so small, that it is very seldom considered. Since, however, the magnitude and direction of the permanent precession, produced by the Sun, depend upon the inclination of the Earth's axis to the axis of the ecliptic, or the axis of the Sun's apparent orbit; it is easy to see, that the magnitude and direction of the precession, produced by the Moon in one month, depend upon the inclination of the Earth's axis to the axis of the Moon's orbit. Now this inclination is perpetually varying, both in magnitude and in direction; the axis of the Moon's orbit is not stationary, but revolves about the axis of the ecliptic in about 18 years, 7 months. The velocity and direction of the motion of the Earth's axis, produced by the Moon, are, therefore, irregular. We shall shew, that the precessional motion, though irregular, is permanent; but that the alteration in the inclination to the axis of the ecliptic is periodical; the inclination returning to its former value, in a revolution of the Moon's nodes. The change in the inclination is one part of lunar nutation; the other part is the correction which must be applied to the mean precession, in order to find the true.

20. PROP. 8. The velocity of the Earth's rotation is unaltered by the action of the Sun and Moon.

Since the Sun's action would give the Earth a motion of rotation about an axis in the plane of the equator of the terrestrial spheroid, and the Moon's action would give it a rotation about another axis in the same plane, their combined action would give the Earth a rotation about a third axis in that plane, by (7).

Now to shew that the Earth's angular velocity is unaltered, we must shew, that this axis is always perpendicular to the axis of rotation. Let AC, (fig. 26), be this axis, AB the axis of rotation; by (15), the points of intersection of this axis with a sphere described in the Earth about A, lie nearly in a small circle, whose center is E. The ellipticity of the Earth is produced by its rotation; and since the axis of rotation passes

successively through all points of the circle BF in one revolution, the axis of symmetry of the spheroid will pass through E, the center of that circle. AE, therefore, is perpendicular to AC; or if EC be joined by an arc of a great circle, EC is a quadrant. And EBC is a right angle; hence, BC is also a quadrant, or BAC is always a right angle. Consequently, by (*11), the velocity of rotation is not altered.

21. PROP. 9. To calculate the value of a; the force acting on the Earth being the attraction of a distant body; and the Earth being a homogeneous spheroid.

Let A, (fig. 29), be the Earth's center; AB the axis of the spheroid: S the attracting body; take P, the projection of any point of the Earth, and draw PN perpendicular to SA, and PM perpendicular to the projection of the equator. Let f be the attraction or accelerating force of S upon A; then the attraction of S upon P, is $f.\frac{SA^2}{SP^2}$, or, if $SR=\frac{SA^3}{SP^2}$, it $=f.\frac{SR}{SA}$. If SA, then, be taken to represent the force f, SR will represent the force on P, and RA the difference of forces on P and A; or that difference of forces $=f.\frac{RA}{SA}$, and is in the direction parallel to RA. Now if a force f were applied to every point of the spheroid, in the direction SA, it would produce no effect in giving the Earth a motion about A; without altering the motion, therefore, we may suppose this force applied; that is, we may suppose the only force acting at each point, to be the difference of the force really acting there, and the force at A. In the figure, the point A is evidently the projection of the axis, about which these forces would make the Earth revolve. We must, therefore, find the momentum of the accelerating force $f\frac{RA}{SA}$ impressed on a particle δm at P, about the center A. Let $SQ=SA$; then, S being very distant, AQ is nearly perpendicular to SA; and

$$SR=\frac{SQ^3}{(SQ-PQ)^2}=SQ+2PQ, \text{ nearly};$$

$$\text{or } RQ=2PQ.$$

The pressure $f.\frac{RA}{SA}\delta m$ may now be resolved into

$$f\frac{RQ}{SA}\delta m \quad \text{and } f.\frac{QA}{SA}\delta m,$$

$$\text{or } f\delta m.\frac{2PQ}{SA} \quad \text{and } f\delta m.\frac{PN}{SA},$$

acting at P in the directions QP, PN. Their momenta to turn the Earth in the direction KB, are

$$-f\delta m.\frac{2PQ.PN}{SA}, \quad \text{and } -f\delta m.\frac{PN.PQ}{SA},$$

(considering PN and QA as sensibly equal); the sum of these

$$=-3f.\delta m.\frac{PN.PQ}{SA}.$$

If the absolute force of the attracting body $S=S$, and $SA=r$, then $f=\frac{S}{r^2}$, and the moment of the pressure on P

$$=-\frac{3S}{r^5}\delta m.PN.PQ.$$

Let $AM=x$; $MP=y$; $BAS=\theta$.

Then $PN=MV-MT=y\sin\theta-x\cos\theta$;

$$PQ=PV+AT=y\cos\theta+x\sin\theta.$$

Substituting these values, the moment of the force on the particle at P

$$=\frac{3S}{r^5}\delta m.\{(x^2-y^2)\sin\theta\cos\theta+xy(\cos^2\theta-\sin^2\theta)\}.$$

22. We must now find the sums of the expressions $x^2\delta m$, $y^2\delta m$, $xy\delta m$, for every particle of the spheroid. Suppose the spheroid divided into slices by planes parallel to the plane of xy; let two of these be at the distances z and $z+\delta z$ respectively; z being measured perpendicular to the plane of xy, and δz being small; and let the included slice be divided into

prisms, by planes parallel to yz; two of these being at the distances x and $x+\delta x$ from the plane of yz; and take a portion of this prism, included between the co-ordinates y and $y+\delta y$. The volume of this portion $=\delta x.\delta y.\delta z$; and if k be the density, the expression $xy\delta m$ becomes, for this portion, $\delta z.\delta x.kxy\delta y$. If p be the sum of $xy\delta m$ for the prism,

$$\frac{dp}{dy}=\delta z.\delta x.kxy,$$

$$\text{or } p=\delta z.\delta x.\frac{kxy^2}{2};$$

taking this between the limits

$$y=-\frac{c}{a}\sqrt{(a^2-x^2-z^2)},\text{ and } y=+\frac{c}{a}\sqrt{(a^2-x^2-z^2)},$$

(since the equation to the surface of the spheroid is

$$\frac{x^2+z^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{c^2}=1),$$

$$p=0.$$

Hence, the sum of $xy\delta m$ for the whole spheroid, is $=0$.

23. For the sum of $x^2\delta m$ it appears in the same manner, that if w be the sum for the prism,

$$\frac{dw}{dy}=\delta z.\delta x.kx^2,\quad\text{or } w=\delta z.\delta x.kx^2y;$$

which, taken between the limits $\mp\frac{c}{a}\sqrt{(a^2-x^2-z^2)}$, gives

$$w=2k\delta z.\delta x.\frac{c}{a}x^2\sqrt{(a^2-x^2-z^2)}.$$

This is ultimately the increment of the sum of $x^2\delta m$ for the slice, produced by giving to x the increment δx; calling this sum v,

$$\frac{dv}{dx}=2k\delta z.\frac{c}{a}.x^2\sqrt{(a^2-z^2-x^2)},$$

$$\text{and } v = 2k\delta z \frac{c}{a} \int_x x^2 \sqrt{(a^2 - z^2 - x^2)},$$

z being considered constant in the integration.

The integral is

$$k\delta z \cdot \frac{c}{a} \cdot \left\{ -\frac{x}{2}(a^2 - z^2 - x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{a^2 - z^2}{4} x \sqrt{(a^2 - z^2 - x^2)} \right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{(a^2 - z^2)^2}{4} \sin^{-1} \cdot \frac{x}{\sqrt{(a^2 - z^2)}} \right\}.$$

The limits of x are the least and greatest values of x in the slice; that is, the values given by the equation to the surface, upon making $y = 0$; they are, therefore, $\mp \sqrt{(a^2 - z^2)}$; and

$$v = k\delta z \cdot \frac{c}{a} \cdot \frac{(a^2 - z^2)^2}{4} \cdot \pi.$$

Now, if u be the sum of $x^2\delta m$ for the whole spheroid, v is ultimately the increment of u, arising from giving to z the increment δz; hence,

$$\frac{du}{dz} = k \cdot \frac{c}{a} \cdot \frac{\pi}{4} \cdot (a^2 - z^2)^2 = k \cdot \frac{c}{a} \cdot \frac{\pi}{4} \times (a^4 - 2a^2z^2 + z^4);$$

$$\therefore u = k \cdot \frac{c}{a} \cdot \frac{\pi}{4} \cdot \left(a^4 z - \frac{2}{3} a^2 z^3 + \frac{z^5}{5} \right);$$

taking this between the limits $z = \mp a$,

$$u = k \cdot \frac{c}{a} \cdot \pi \cdot \frac{4a^5}{15} = \frac{4\pi}{15} ka^3 c \times a^2.$$

24. In the same manner, it would be found that the sum of the $y^2\delta m$ for the spheriod $= \frac{4\pi}{15} ka^3 c \times c^2$. Hence, the moment of all the impressed forces

$$= \frac{3S}{r^3} \cdot \frac{4\pi}{15} ka^3 c (a^2 - c^2) \sin\theta \cdot \cos\theta.$$

25. Now, to find the angular velocity which this would generate in 1″ about the axis whose projection is A, we must (Whewell *On the Motion of Points constrained, &c.* Art. 206;

Earnshaw's *Dynamics*, Art. 144; Griffin's *Dynamics of a Rigid Body*, Art. 118,) divide this by the moment of inertia, or the sum of $(x^2+y^2)\,\delta m$ for the whole spheroid. This sum is found in the same manner to be

$$=\frac{4\pi}{15}ka^2c\,(a^2+c^2).$$

Hence, the angular velocity generated in 1″, or α,

$$=\frac{3S}{r^3}\cdot\frac{a^2-c^2}{a^2+c^2}.\sin\theta.\cos\theta.$$

26. PROP. 10. To calculate α, supposing the Earth heterogeneous.

Suppose the Earth composed of strata of different densities, bounded by spheroidal surfaces of different ellipticities, as in the Treatise on the Figure of the Earth. Let c be the semi-axis of any one of these spheroids, e its ellipticity; c the semi-axis of the external surface, e its ellipticity; ρ the density at any point; ρ and e being functions of c. Then (since $a^2-c^2=2c^2e$ nearly, and $a^2+c^2=2c^2$ and $a^2c=c^3$ nearly), as in (48) of the Figure of the Earth, we shall have for the moment of the impressed forces,

$$\frac{3S}{r^3}\sin\theta.\cos\theta.\frac{8\pi}{15}.\int_c\rho.\frac{d\,(c^5e)}{dc}$$

$$=\frac{3S}{r^3}\sin\theta.\cos\theta.\frac{8\pi}{15}\psi\,(c).$$

And the moment of inertia

$$=\frac{8\pi}{15}\int_c\rho.\frac{d\,(c^5)}{dc}=\frac{8\pi}{15}\sigma\,(c),\quad\text{if }\sigma\,(c)=\int_c\rho.\frac{d\,(c^5)}{dc}.$$

Hence, the Earth being heterogeneous,

$$\alpha=\frac{3S}{r^3}.\sin\theta.\cos\theta.\frac{\psi(c)}{\sigma(c)}.$$

27. In the investigation of the value of α, we have supposed that the only force which tends to give the earth a rotatory motion about AC, (fig. 26 and 27), is the action of a distant

body. This, however, is not strictly true; for, since AD, the axis about which the Earth is at any instant revolving, does not coincide with AE the axis of symmetry of the figure, the centrifugal force will diminish the effect produced by the distant body. With an ellipticity, however, so small as that of the earth, this diminution is not sensible.

28. PROP. 11. To investigate the quantity of solar precession for any given time.

Suppose EC, (fig. 30), to be the projection of the ecliptic on the surface of a sphere described about the Earth's center; S, P, Q, the projections of the Sun's place, the pole of the Earth, and the pole of the ecliptic; join SP by an arc of a great circle. By (21) and (26), the value of α is

$$\frac{3B.S}{r^3}\sin\theta.\cos\theta,$$

B being $=\frac{a^2-c^2}{a^2+c^2}$ if the Earth be homogeneous, and $=\frac{\psi(c)}{\sigma(c)}$ if the Earth be heterogeneous. Now, θ is the angle made by the Earth's axis with the line joining the centers of the Sun and Earth, and is, therefore, in (fig. 30), represented by SP: hence

$$\alpha=\frac{3B.S}{r^3}\sin SP.\cos SP;$$

and, by (12), the pole of rotation moves with the velocity

$$\frac{\alpha}{\omega} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{3B.S}{r^3\omega}\sin SP.\cos SP,$$

in the direction Pp perpendicular to PS. The resolved part of this motion, perpendicular to PQ, or parallel to CE, is

$$\frac{3B.S}{r^3\omega}.\sin SP.\cos SP.\cos SPC.$$

Let ES, the Sun's longitude $=l$; QP the inclination of the equator and ecliptic $=I$. Then

$$\cos SP=\cos CS.\cos CP=\sin l.\sin I;$$

$$\sin SP = \frac{\sin PC}{\sin PSC} = \frac{\cos I}{\sin PSC};$$

$$\cos SPC = \cos SC \,.\, \sin PSC = \sin l \,.\, \sin PSC;$$

therefore, the velocity of the pole parallel to CS is

$$\frac{3B \,.\, S}{r^3 \omega} \sin I \,.\, \cos I \,.\, \sin^2 l,$$

and the motion of the pole in that direction

$$= \frac{3B \,.\, S}{\omega} \sin I \,.\, \cos I \,.\, \int_t \frac{\sin^2 l}{r^3} = \frac{3B \,.\, S}{\omega} \sin I \,.\, \cos I \,.\, \int_t \frac{\sin^2 l}{r^3} \,.\, \frac{dt}{dl}.$$

Now, by Art. 11 and 12 of *Lunar Theory*, neglecting the Earth's mass in comparison with the Sun's,

$$\frac{dt}{dl} = \frac{r^2}{\sqrt{\{a\,(1-e^2)\,S\}}},$$

where a and e are the semi-axis major and eccentricity of the Sun's apparent orbit; therefore, the motion of the pole parallel to CS

$$= \frac{3B\sqrt{S}}{\omega \sqrt{\{a\,(1-e^2)\}}} \sin I \,.\, \cos I \,.\, \int_t \frac{\sin^2 l}{r}$$

$$= \frac{3B\sqrt{S}}{\omega \{a\,(1-e^2)\}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \sin I \,.\, \cos I \,.\, \int_t \sin^2 l \,\{1 + e \cos (l-k)\},$$

where k is the longitude of the Sun's perigee. Let $T = 1$ year: by Art. 15 of *Lunar Theory*,

$$T = \frac{2\pi a^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{S}}:$$

our expression becomes then

$$\frac{6\pi B}{T\omega\,(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \sin I \,.\, \cos I \,.\, \int_t \sin^2 l \,\{1 + e \cos (l-k)\}$$

$$= \frac{3\pi B}{T\omega\,(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \sin I \,.\, \cos I$$

$$\times \left\{ C + l - \frac{\sin 2l}{2} + e \sin (l-k) - \frac{e}{2} \sin (l+k) - \frac{e}{6} \sin (3l-k) \right\}.$$

The last three terms of this expression are so small when numerically calculated, that they are rejected; and the motion of the pole parallel to CS, is, therefore,

$$\frac{3\pi B}{T\omega\,(1-e^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \sin I . \cos I \left\{(C+l) - \frac{\sin 2l}{2}\right\},$$

$$\text{or } \frac{3\pi B}{T\omega} \sin I . \cos I \left\{(C+l) - \frac{\sin 2l}{2}\right\} \text{ nearly.}$$

29. The first term of this expression never changes sign, but increases as l increases, and is, therefore, nearly proportional to the time from any fixed epoch; it is the precessional motion of the pole. The second term is periodical, going through all its values in half a year: it is the correction which must be applied to the place of the pole found on the supposition of uniform precession, in order to obtain its true place. This is one part of Solar Nutation.

30. To obtain the precession of the equinoxes, or the angular motion of P about Q, we must divide the expression above by $\sin I$: it is, therefore,

$$\frac{3\pi B}{T\omega} \cos I \left\{(C+l) - \frac{\sin 2l}{2}\right\}.$$

The first term is the uniform precession; the second is the correction to be applied to it, called the Solar Equation of the Equinoxes in longitude.

31. Prop. 12. To investigate the change in the obliquity of the ecliptic, produced by the Sun's action on the Earth.

In (28) it was found that the velocity of the pole in the direction Pp (fig. 30) is

$$\frac{3B.S}{r^3\omega} \sin SP . \cos SP;$$

therefore its velocity in the direction PQ

$$= \frac{3B.S}{r^3\omega} \sin SP . \cos SP . \sin SPC.$$

But $\sin SP . \sin SPC = \sin SC = \cos l$;

$\cos SP = \cos PC . \cos SC = \sin I . \sin l$;

therefore the motion in the direction PQ, or the diminution of the inclination,

$$= \frac{3B.S}{\omega} \sin I . \int_t \frac{\sin l . \cos l}{r^3};$$

which, as in (28), is changed into

$$\frac{6\pi B}{T\omega} \sin I . \int_t \sin l . \cos l \{1 + e \cos (l - k)\}.$$

Neglecting, as before, the terms depending on e, this is

$$-\frac{3\pi B}{T\omega} \sin I \frac{\cos 2l}{2};$$

or, if I be the mean inclination, the true inclination

$$= I + \frac{3\pi B}{T\omega} \sin I \frac{\cos 2l}{2}.$$

The term added to I is the second part of Solar Nutation.

32. If we call the two parts of Solar Nutation, mentioned in (28) and (31), x and y, we shall easily perceive that they are connected by this equation,

$$x^2 \left(\frac{2T\omega}{3\pi . B . \sin I . \cos I}\right)^2 + y^2 \left(\frac{2T\omega}{3\pi . B . \sin I}\right)^2 = 1.$$

This is the equation to an ellipse, whose axes are in the ratio of $\cos I : 1$. Thus is explained the construction in Woodhouse's *Astronomy*, new edition, p. 367.

33. PROP. 13. To investigate the motion of the pole produced by the Moon in one sidereal revolution.

By (9), it appears that, instead of considering at once the effect of the Sun and Moon upon the Earth, we may first investigate the effect produced by one, and then add to it the effect produced by the other. For the effect produced by the Moon, the investigation is exactly similar to those of (28) and (31), and the same figure may be used; observing that, as EC (fig. 30) is the great circle apparently described by the Moon, Q is not now the pole of the ecliptic, but the pole of the Moon's orbit. There is only one difference: putting E for the Earth's

absolute force, M for the Moon's, T'' for the time of a sidereal revolution of the Moon, I' for the inclination of the Earth's axis to the axis of the Moon's orbit, a' for the mean distance,

$\frac{dt}{dl}$ will be $\frac{r^2}{\sqrt{\{a'(1-e'^2)(E+M)\}}}$, and T'' will be $\frac{2\pi a'^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{(E+M)}}$;

and, therefore, instead of $\frac{3\pi B}{T\omega}$, we must put $\frac{3\pi B}{T''\omega} \cdot \frac{M}{E+M}$.

If the Moon's mass be $\frac{1}{n}$th of the Earth's, this $= \frac{3\pi B}{T''\omega(n+1)}$.

Thus we find for the motion of the pole parallel to the Moon's orbit,

$$\frac{3\pi B \cdot \sin I' \cdot \cos I'}{T''\omega(n+1)} \left\{(C+l) - \frac{\sin 2l}{2}\right\};$$

and for the motion perpendicular to the Moon's orbit,

$$-\frac{3\pi B \cdot \sin I'}{T''\omega(n+1)} \cdot \frac{\cos 2l}{2},$$

l being now measured from the intersection of the equator with the Moon's orbit.

34. The latter expression, and the second term of the former, are periodical terms, going through all their changes of value twice in a month: their magnitudes, besides, are so small, that they are generally neglected.

Supposing l increased by 2π, we find, for the motion of the pole produced by the Moon's action in a sidereal revolution,

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B \cdot \sin I' \cdot \cos I'}{T''\omega(n+1)};$$

which motion is parallel to the Moon's orbit, or perpendicular to the great circle joining the pole of the Earth with the pole of the Moon's orbit.

35. PROP. 14. To investigate the precessional motion produced by the Moon's action during a long period.

Let Q, (fig. 31), be the pole of the ecliptic; q that of the Moon's orbit; P that of the earth: let them be joined by arcs

of great circles; then, by the last article, it appears that by the action of the Moon, the pole is in the time T'' carried in the direction Pp, perpendicular to Pq, through the arc

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T''\omega\,(n+1)}\sin qP.\cos qP.$$

This may be represented by supposing the pole to have the velocity

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T''^2\omega\,(n+1)}\sin qP.\cos qP,$$

in the direction Pp. Its velocity then in a direction perpendicular to QP, is

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T''^2\omega\,(n+1)}\sin qP.\cos qP.\cos QPq.$$

This we must express in terms of QP, Qq, and the angle PQq.

36. Now,

$$\sin qP.\cos QPq = \frac{\cos Qq - \cos QP.\cos qP}{\sin QP};$$

but $\cos qP = \cos QP.\cos Qq + \sin QP.\sin Qq.\cos Q$;

substituting this,

$$\sin qP.\cos QPq = \sin QP.\cos Qq - \cos QP.\sin Qq.\cos Q.$$

Multiplying by

$$\cos qP = \cos QP.\cos Qq + \sin QP.\sin Qq.\cos Q,$$

we find $\sin qP.\cos qP.\cos QPq$

$$= \sin QP.\cos QP.\cos^2 Qq - (\cos^2 QP - \sin^2 QP).\sin Qq.\cos Qq.\cos Q$$
$$- \sin QP.\cos QP.\sin^2 Qq.\cos^2 Q.$$

Put I and i for QP and Qq: I and i are nearly constant; and, since the Moon's nodes revolve in a retrograde direction through a great circle in 18,6 years, if $\tau = 18{,}6$ years,

$$Q = \frac{2\pi t}{\tau}.$$

Hence, the velocity of the pole perpendicular to QP, is

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T'^2\omega(n+1)}\cdot\left\{\sin I.\cos I.\cos^2 i-\tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2I.\sin 2i.\cos\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}\right.$$
$$\left.-\sin I.\cos I.\sin^2 i.\cos^2\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}\right\}$$
$$=\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T'^2\omega(n+1)}\left\{\sin I.\cos I(\cos^2 i-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin^2 i)\right.$$
$$\left.-\tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2I.\sin 2i.\cos\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin I.\cos I.\sin^2 i.\cos\frac{4\pi t}{\tau}\right\}.$$

Integrating this with respect to t, we find the precessional motion of the pole

$$=\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T'^2\omega(n+1)}\left\{\sin I\cos I(\cos^2 i-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin^2 i)\,t\right.$$
$$-\frac{\tau}{4\pi}\cos 2I.\sin 2i.\sin\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}$$
$$\left.-\frac{\tau}{8\pi}\sin I.\cos I.\sin^2 i.\sin\frac{4\pi t}{\tau}\right\}+C.$$

37. The first term of this expression is proportional to the time, and, therefore, increases uniformly. The second term is periodical; it depends upon $\sin\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}$, or $\sin Q$, or $\sin(180^0-$ longitude of Moon's ascending node), or sin longitude of Moon's ascending node. This is a part of Lunar Nutation. The third term depends upon sin 2 long. Moon's ascending node; it is, therefore, a part of Nutation: but its numerical value is so small, that it is commonly neglected.

38. To obtain the lunar precession of the equinoxes, we must, as before, divide the last expression by $\sin I$. Thus, we get

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T'^2\omega(n+1)}\left\{\cos I(\cos^2 i-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin^2 i)\,t\right.$$
$$\left.-\frac{\tau}{4\pi}\cdot\frac{\cos 2I}{\sin I}\sin 2i.\sin\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}-\frac{\tau}{8\pi}\cos I.\sin^2 i.\sin\frac{4\pi t}{\tau}\right\}.$$

The first term, which increases uniformly, is called simply the lunar precession; the second is the lunar equation of the equinoxes in longitude; the third is neglected. The lunar precession for a year is found by putting T for t; it is, therefore,

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T^2\omega\,(n+1)}\cos I(\cos^2 i - \tfrac{1}{2}\sin^2 i)\,T.$$

39. PROP. 15. To investigate the alteration in the obliquity of the ecliptic produced by the Moon's action.

By (35), the velocity of the pole in the direction Pp, is

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T^2\omega\,(n+1)}\sin qP.\cos qP.$$

The velocity, therefore, with which the inclination is increased, is

$$\frac{6\pi^2 B}{T^2\omega\,(n+1)}\sin qP.\cos qP.\sin QPq.$$

Now, $\sin qP.\sin QPq = \sin i.\sin Q$;

and $\cos qP = \cos I.\cos i + \sin I.\sin i.\cos Q.$

Their product

$$= \cos I.\sin i.\cos i.\sin Q + \sin I.\sin^2 i.\sin Q.\cos Q;$$

or, the velocity of increase of inclination

$$= \frac{6\pi^2 B}{T^2\omega\,(n+1)}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\cos I.\sin 2i.\sin\frac{2\pi t}{\tau} + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin I.\sin^2 i.\sin\frac{4\pi t}{\tau}\right).$$

Integrating this with respect to t, the inclination

$$= I - \frac{6\pi^2 B}{T^2\omega\,(n+1)}\cdot\left(\frac{\tau}{4\pi}\cos I.\sin 2i.\cos\frac{2\pi t}{\tau} + \frac{\tau}{8\pi}\sin I.\sin^2 i.\cos\frac{4\pi t}{\tau}\right).$$

The terms subtracted from I are periodical, depending upon $\cos\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}$, or cos (180° − long. Moon's ascending node,) and upon the cosine of twice that angle; the first is a part of Lunar Nutation; the second is usually neglected.

40. If we call x and y the first terms of nutation in (36) and (39), it will easily be seen that they are connected by this equation,

$$x^2\left\{\frac{2T'^2\omega(n+1)}{3\pi B\tau \cdot \cos 2I \cdot \sin 2i}\right\}^2 + y^2\left\{\frac{2T'^2\omega(n+1)}{3\pi B\tau \cdot \cos I \cdot \sin 2i}\right\}^2 = 1.$$

This is the equation to an ellipse, in which the axes have the ratio of $\cos 2I : \cos I$. This explains the construction in Woodhouse's *Astronomy*, page 357.

41. In the last two Propositions we have considered i to be constant, and Q to be proportional to t. It appears, however, from Art. 68, of the *Lunar Theory*, that the inclination is expressed, nearly, by

$$i\{1 + \frac{3m}{8}\cos 2\,(\text{long. node} - \text{long. Sun})\};$$

and that from the longitude of the node, found on the supposition of its uniform retrogradation, we must subtract

$$\frac{3m}{8}\sin 2\,(\text{long. node} - \text{long. Sun}).$$

Now, the Sun's longitude $= \frac{2\pi t}{T} + C$, nearly: the longitude of the node $= 180^\circ - \frac{2\pi t}{\tau}$: hence, for i we ought to put

$$i\left[1 + \frac{3m}{8}\cos\left\{4\pi t\left(\frac{1}{T} + \frac{1}{\tau}\right) + 2C\right\}\right],$$

and for Q we should put

$$\frac{2\pi t}{\tau} - \frac{3m}{8}\sin\left\{4\pi t\left(\frac{1}{T} + \frac{1}{\tau}\right) + 2C\right\}$$

before performing the integrations: and $\sin 2Q$, &c. could be expanded, as in Art. 49, of *Lunar Theory*. But the additional terms thus introduced have small coefficients. Moreover, the divisors which they receive on integration are much larger than that received by the principal term. The divisor of the

principal term is $\frac{2\pi}{\tau}$; but the divisors of the additional terms are

$$\frac{4\pi}{T}+\frac{2\pi}{\tau},\ \frac{4\pi}{T}+\frac{6\pi}{\tau};$$

which are much larger, because T is much smaller than τ. The expressions which we have found are, therefore, subject to no sensible error.

42. If now, in the terms of Nutation, in (38) and (39), which depend on twice the longitude of the Moon's ascending node, we used not the mean longitude of the node but the true, as expressed in (41), we should add to the expressions terms which have small coefficients, but which are not integrated, and which, therefore, do not receive the large divisors of which we have spoken in (41). The values thus found for the parts of Nutation at any given time, would, therefore, sensibly differ from those found by the formulæ above. And, since the latter differ from the true ones only by quantities which are insensible, it follows that the values found by using the true longitude of the node would be sensibly erroneous. In calculating Nutation, therefore, the mean longitude of the node must be used, not the true.

43. PROP. 16. Assuming the law of density of the Earth, and the mass of the Moon, to calculate numerically the annual precession and the coefficients of solar and lunar nutation.

It is first necessary to calculate the value of B, or $\frac{\psi(c)}{\sigma(c)}$, which enters into all the expressions.

By Art. 61, of the *Figure of the Earth.*

$$\psi(c)=\frac{5}{3}\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)c^2\phi(c),$$

$$\therefore\ B=\frac{5}{3}\left(e-\frac{m}{2}\right)c^2\frac{\phi(c)}{\sigma(c)}.$$

Suppose now, as in Art. 65 of the same, $\rho=A\frac{\sin qc}{c}$.

$$\text{Then } \phi(c)=\int_c\rho\frac{d.c^3}{dc}=3\int_c A.c.\sin qc$$

$$=3A\left(-\frac{c.\cos qc}{q}+\frac{\sin qc}{q^2}\right);$$

which, taken from $c = 0$ to $c = \mathrm{c}$, gives

$$\phi(\mathrm{c}) = 3A\left(-\frac{\mathrm{c}\,.\cos q\mathrm{c}}{q} + \frac{\sin q\mathrm{c}}{q^2}\right).$$

$$\text{And } \sigma(c) = \int_c \rho \frac{d\,.\,c^5}{dc} \text{ by (26)} = 5A\int_c c^3 \sin qc$$

$$= 5A\left(\frac{-c^3\,.\cos qc}{q} + \frac{3c^2\,.\sin qc}{q^2} + \frac{6c\,.\cos qc}{q^3} - \frac{6\sin qc}{q^4}\right);$$

putting c for c, we have the value of $\sigma(\mathrm{c})$. Hence

$$B = \left(\mathrm{e} - \frac{m}{2}\right)\frac{-q^3\mathrm{c}^3\,.\cos q\mathrm{c} + q^2\mathrm{c}^2\,.\sin q\mathrm{c}}{-q^3\mathrm{c}^3\,.\cos q\mathrm{c} + 3q^2\mathrm{c}^2\sin q\mathrm{c} + 6q\mathrm{c}\,.\cos q\mathrm{c} - 6\sin q\mathrm{c}}.$$

$$= \left(\mathrm{e} - \frac{m}{2}\right)\frac{z}{2 + z - \dfrac{6z}{q^2\mathrm{c}^2}}, \text{ where } z = 1 - \frac{q\mathrm{c}}{\tan q\mathrm{c}}.$$

If we suppose q to have the value used in Art. 66 of the *Figure of the Earth*, namely, $\frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{\pi}{\mathrm{c}}$, and take the value of $\mathrm{e} - \frac{m}{2}$, found in Art. 66, we get for the value of B, ,0031677.

44. The solar annual precession, which is found by supposing l to be increased by 2π in the expression of (30), is

$$\frac{6\pi^2\,.\,B\,.\cos I}{T\omega}.$$

Now $T\omega$ = the angle described by the diurnal revolution of the Earth in 1 year $= 2\pi\,.\,366{,}26$; $I = 23^\circ.28'$: hence, the solar annual precession

$$= \frac{B\,.\,3\pi\,.\cos 23^\circ.28'}{366{,}26}.$$

This is in parts of the radius: to reduce it to seconds we must multiply it by $\frac{180\,.\,60\,.\,60}{\pi}$. Thus the solar annual precession in seconds

$$= \frac{B \,.\, 9 \,.\, (60)^2 \,.\, \cos 23^\circ . 28'}{366{,}26};$$

which, putting for B the value above, $= 15'',42$.

45. From (30) it appears that the coefficient of $\sin 2l$, in the Solar Equation of the equinoxes in longitude, is to the annual solar precession as $\frac{1}{2} : 2\pi$. This coefficient, therefore,

$$= \frac{15'',42}{4\pi} = 1'',23.$$

And from (31), it appears that the coefficient of $\cos 2l$, in the Solar Nutation in obliquity, is to the annual solar precession as

$$\frac{\sin I}{2} : 2\pi \,.\, \cos I;$$

whence this coefficient

$$= \frac{15'',42}{4\pi \cot I} = 0'',53.$$

46. By (38), the lunar annual precession

$$= B \,.\, \frac{6\pi^2}{T'\omega} \,.\, \frac{T}{T'} \,.\, \frac{\cos I}{n+1} \,.\, \left(1 - \frac{3}{2}\sin^2 i\right).$$

Now, $T'\omega =$ angle described by the diurnal revolution of the Earth in one revolution of the Moon $= 2\pi \,.\, 27{,}32$:

$$\frac{T}{T'} = \frac{366{,}26}{27{,}32} : \quad i = 5^\circ . 8' . 50'';$$

suppose the Moon's mass $\frac{1}{70}$ that of the Earth, or $n = 70$; hence, the lunar annual precession

$$= B \,.\, \frac{3\pi \,.\, 366{,}26 \,.\, \cos 23^\circ . 28' \times ,98791}{(27{,}32)^2 \,.\, 71}.$$

This reduced to seconds, as the former was,

$$= \frac{B \,.\, 9\,(60)^2 \,.\, 366{,}26 \,.\, \cos 23^\circ . 28' \times ,98791}{(27{,}32)^2 \,.\, 71};$$

putting the same value for B, this $= 38'',57$.

47. By (38), the coefficient of $\sin\frac{2\pi t}{\tau}$, or sin long. Moon's ascending node, in the lunar equation of the equinoxes in longitude, is

$$B.\frac{3\pi.\tau.\cos 2I.\sin 2i}{2T''^2.\omega(n+1).\sin I}.$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{\tau}{T''^2\omega}=\frac{\tau}{T}.\frac{T}{T'}.\frac{1}{T''\omega}=\frac{18{,}6.366{,}26}{(27{,}32)^2.2\pi};$$

hence, this coefficient

$$=B.\frac{3.18{,}6.366{,}26.\cos 2I.\sin 2i}{4(27{,}32)^2.71.\sin I},$$

and in seconds

$$=B.\frac{9.60^2.18{,}6.366{,}26.\cos 46^0.56'.\sin 10^0.17'.40''}{4\pi(27{,}32)^2.71.\sin 23^0.28'}.$$

Giving B the same value as before, the number of seconds is 19,3.

And comparing (38) with (39), it is seen that the coefficient just found is to the coefficient of cos long. ascending node in the lunar nutation in obliquity, as

$$\frac{\cos 2I}{\sin I}:\cos I, \text{ or as } 1:\tfrac{1}{2}\tan 2I:$$

whence this coefficient in seconds

$$=\frac{19{,}3.\tan 46^0.56'}{2}=10{,}33.$$

The observed values of these coefficients are 18″,036 and 9″,6.

48. Adding together the numbers found in (44) and (46), the whole annual precession = 53″,99. The observed value is 50″,1.

The computed and observed values would generally be closely reconciled by assuming the Moon's mass $=\frac{1}{80}$.

51. The values of a and b, formerly adopted by most astronomers, are 50″,1 and 9″,6. Substituting these in the formulæ above, $n = 68{,}9$, and $B = {,}0029225$. Assuming the law of density mentioned above, $qc = 160^{\circ}.53'$, and

$$e = {,}0030812 = \frac{1}{324{,}5}.$$

52. Dr Brinkley, in the *Philosophical Transactions* for 1821, has reduced the value of b to 9″,25; and a value closely agreeing with this has now been received by astronomers in general. This gives $n = 78{,}2$ and $B = {,}0031911$; thence $qc = 149^{\circ}.10'$, and

$$e = {,}0032973 = \frac{1}{303{,}3}.$$

CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS.

1. In solving problems of maxima and minima by the Differential Calculus, it is necessary to express the quantity, which is to be made a maximum or minimum, in terms of the independent variable, or at least to find an equation between them; in all cases it is necessary to assign a relation between the function (u) and the independent variable (x), so that for any given value of x, the corresponding value of u actually can be found. When this is the case, $\frac{du}{dx}$ can be found; and if we make it $= 0$, an equation is obtained, which, combined if necessary with the original equation, determines the value of x or u, corresponding to the maximum or minimum value of u; and the problem is solved.

2. But it is sometimes necessary to solve problems of maxima and minima, when the relation between u and x cannot be expressed, u depending generally upon an integral $\int_x V$, where V involves y and its differential coefficients, and where it is the *object* of the problem to find the *relation* between y and x. Suppose, for instance, it were required to find the curve of quickest descent from one given point to another: then, if x be measured horizontally from the first point, and y vertically, and if the time $= u$, we have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{\sqrt{\left\{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right\}}}{\sqrt{(2gy)}}, \text{ or } u = \int_x \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(2gy)}},$$

$$\text{where } p = \frac{dy}{dx}.$$

This expression plainly cannot be integrated except the relation of y to x be given; but this it is the object of the problem to discover. Here then the methods of the Differential Calculus

entirely fail: and some new process must be devised for the solution of problems similar to the preceding.

3. The method given by Lagrange bears a close analogy to the methods of the Differential Calculus. In order to find what must be the relation between x and y, which will make u a maximum or minimum, we must conceive an expression to be assumed for y, and this expression to be then altered by the quantity δy, δy being some function of x. Now, in order that the assumed value of y may possess the desired property of making u a maximum or minimum, it is necessary that, upon substituting $y+\delta y$ and $y-\delta y$ for y, u may, by both substitutions, be increased, or by both be diminished. From this it follows, by reasoning precisely similar to that employed in the Differential Calculus, that the sum of the terms depending on the first power of δy, in the new values of u, must $= 0$. If then we can by any means express this sum, we shall be able to find the relation between x and y, that will make u a maximum or minimum.

4. This method is sufficient when, supposing u expressed by an integral, the values of x at the limits are known: as, for instance, in the problem of (2), the extreme points of the curve are given. But these may be undetermined, as in the problem "To find the line of quickest descent from one given curve to another given curve." Suppose Aa, Bb, (fig. 32), to be the given curves; APB the curve required. If we suppose δy to have such a form that for the values of x, corresponding to the points A and B, δy is $= 0$, the curve APB will be changed by this variation to such a curve as ApB. But though the consideration of the effect of this variation will assist us in discovering the curve APB, which is the line of shortest descent from the point A to the point B, it plainly will not enable us to determine what points of the given curves must be selected for the extremities of the curve required. If we suppose the form of δy to be such, that δy is not $= 0$ for the values of x corresponding to the points A and B, this variation will change the curve APB into $A'P'B'$, in which the values of x for A' and B', are the same as those for A and B. Since this new curve is not

terminated by the given curves, the variation is not such as the conditions of the problem require. The method which we have given, is, therefore, defective; its deficiency is supplied in the following manner.

5. Instead of supposing the curve to be varied by the variation of only one of its co-ordinates (y), suppose both co-ordinates to be varied; that is, suppose the co-ordinates of the new curve to be

$$x' = x + \delta x, \text{ and } y' = y + \delta y,$$

δx and δy being functions of x. This amounts to supposing, that in fig. 33, x and y being the co-ordinates of P,

$$NN' = \delta x, \text{ and } QP' = \delta y;$$

and that, by taking successively other points of AB, a series of points is determined, through which $A'B'$ is drawn. Now, if we take care to give δx and δy, at the extremities of AB, such a relation, that the point A' will be found in the curve Aa, and the point B' in the curve Bb, the variation will be such as the conditions of the problem require. And as the form of the function, which we suppose to represent δx or δy generally, is absolutely arbitrary, subjected to no other condition than that δx and δy at the limits shall have a given ratio; this variation is the most general, which it is possible for us to give.

6. That the value of u may be a maximum or minimum, the sum of the terms depending on the first powers of δx and δy, as is shewn by the same kind of reasoning as that used in the Differential Calculus, must $= 0$. In finding the variation of u, therefore, we may confine ourselves to the terms depending on the first power of δx and δy.

7. For this purpose, we will find δp, δq, &c.,

$$\text{where } p = \frac{dy}{dx}, \quad q = \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \text{ &c.,}$$

as far as the first power of δx and δy.

The original value of p was $\frac{dy}{dx}$; the value, after giving to x and y a variation, is $\frac{dy'}{dx'}$;

$$\text{hence, } \delta p = \frac{dy'}{dx'} - \frac{dy}{dx}.$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{dy'}{dx'} = \frac{\frac{dy'}{dx}}{\frac{dx'}{dx}} = \frac{\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{d.\delta y}{dx}}{1 + \frac{d.\delta x}{dx}}$$

$$= \frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{d.\delta y}{dx} - \frac{dy}{dx}.\frac{d.\delta x}{dx};$$

$$\therefore \delta p = \frac{d.\delta y}{dx} - p\,\frac{d.\delta x}{dx}.$$

$$\text{Similarly, } \delta q = \frac{dp'}{dx'} - \frac{dp}{dx} = \frac{\frac{dp'}{dx}}{\frac{dx'}{dx}} - \frac{dp}{dx}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{dp}{dx} + \frac{d.\delta p}{dx}}{1 + \frac{d.\delta x}{dx}} - \frac{dp}{dx} = \frac{d.\delta p}{dx} - q\,\frac{d.\delta x}{dx}.$$

$$\text{And } \delta r = \frac{d.\delta q}{dx} - r\,\frac{d.\delta x}{dx}, \text{ \&c.}$$

8. Let $u = \int_x V$; then $\delta u = \int_{x_1} V' - \int_x V$,

(V' being the same function of x', y', &c. that V is of x, y, &c.)

$$= \int_x V' \frac{dx'}{dx} - \int_x V = \int_x \left(V' \frac{dx'}{dx} - V\right).$$

Now, suppose V to be a function of x, y, p, q, &c.,

and let $\frac{dV}{dx} = M$, $\frac{dV}{dy} = N$, $\frac{dV}{dp} = P$, $\frac{dV}{dq} = Q$, &c.;

then, (to the first power of δx, &c.)

$$V' = V + M\delta x + N\delta y + P\delta p + Q\delta q + \text{\&c.},$$

$$\text{and } \frac{dx'}{dx} = 1 + \frac{d.\delta x}{dx};$$

$$\therefore\ V'\frac{dx'}{dx} - V = V\frac{d.\delta x}{dx} + M\delta x + N\delta y + P\delta p + Q\delta q + \&c.$$

Hence, δu, (integrating the first term by parts)

$$= V\delta x - \int_x \delta x \frac{d(V)}{dx} + \int_x (M\delta x + N\delta y + P\delta p + Q\delta q + \&c.).$$

The integrations are performed with respect to x, considering y, p, q, &c. as functions of x; hence, for $\frac{d(V)}{dx}$ we must put

$$\frac{dV}{dx} + \frac{dV}{dy}\cdot\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{dV}{dp}\cdot\frac{dp}{dx} + \frac{dV}{dq}\cdot\frac{dq}{dx} + \&c.$$

$$= M + Np + Pq + Qr + \&c.;$$

$$\text{then, } \delta u = V\delta x + \int_x \{N(\delta y - p\delta x)$$

$$+ P(\delta p - q\delta x) + Q(\delta q - r\delta x) + \&c.\}.$$

9. Now, upon substituting the values found above for δp, δq, &c., we find

$$\delta p - q\delta x = \frac{d.\delta y}{dx} - p\frac{d.\delta x}{dx} - q\delta x = \frac{d(\delta y - p\delta x)}{dx};$$

$$\delta q - r\delta x = \frac{d.\delta p}{dx} - q\frac{d.\delta x}{dx} - r\delta x$$

$$= \frac{d(\delta p - q\delta x)}{dx} = \frac{d^2(\delta y - p\delta x)}{dx^2};$$

and so on. Let $\delta y - p\delta x = \omega$; then $\delta u =$

$$V\delta x + \int_x (N\omega + P\frac{d\omega}{dx} + Q\frac{d^2\omega}{dx^2} + \&c.).$$

Integrating by parts,

$$\int_x P\frac{d\omega}{dx} = P\omega - \int_x \omega\frac{d(P)}{dx};$$

$$\int_x Q\frac{d^2\omega}{dx^2} = Q\frac{d\omega}{dx} - \frac{d(Q)}{dx}\omega + \int_x \omega\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2};$$

and so for the others: it being observed, that $\frac{d(P)}{dx}$, &c. signify the differential coefficients with respect to x, considering y, p, q, &c. as functions of x. Hence, we have,

$$\delta u = V\delta x + \omega\{P - \frac{d(Q)}{dx} + \&c.\}$$
$$+ \frac{d\omega}{dx}(Q - \&c.)$$
$$+ \&c.$$
$$+ \int_x \omega\{N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c.\}.$$

And, putting for ω, $\frac{d\omega}{dx}$, &c. their values $\delta y - p\delta x$, $\delta p - q\delta x$, &c.,

$$\delta u = V\delta x + (\delta y - p\delta x)\{P - \frac{d(Q)}{dx} + \&c.\}$$
$$+ (\delta p - q\delta x)\{Q - \&c.\}$$
$$+ \&c.$$
$$+ \int_x \omega\{N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c.\}.$$

Or, since this quantity results from integration, and must, therefore, be taken between limits, if we put $x_{,}$, $y_{,}$, $p_{,}$, $V_{,}$, &c. for the values of x, y, p, V, &c., at the first limit, and $x_{,,}$, $y_{,,}$, $q_{,,}$, $V_{,,}$, &c. for those at the second limit, we have

$$\delta u = V_{,,}\delta x_{,,} - V_{,}\delta x_{,}$$
$$+ (\delta y_{,,} - p_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\{P_{,,} - \frac{d(Q_{,,})}{dx_{,,}} + \&c.\}$$
$$- (\delta y_{,} - p_{,}\delta x_{,})\{P_{,} - \frac{d(Q_{,})}{dx_{,}} + \&c.\}$$

$$+(\delta p_{,,}-q_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\,(Q_{,,}-\&c.)-(\delta p_{,}-q_{,}\delta x_{,})\,(Q_{,}-\&c.)$$
$$+\&c. \qquad\qquad -\&c.$$
$$+\int_x \omega\,\{N-\frac{d(P)}{dx}+\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2}-\&c.\},$$

the last integral being supposed to be taken between the same limits as the others.

10. When u is a maximum or minimum, the expression above must $=0$. Now this expression consists of two parts perfectly different; the first involving only the values of δx and δy at the limits, the second being an integral dependent on the general values of δx and δy. Now it would be possible to assign different forms for δx and δy, which should leave their values at the limits unaltered, while the value of the integral

$$\int_x \omega\,\{N-\frac{d(P)}{dx}+\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2}-\&c.\}$$

should be altered in any way whatever. In order then that δu may $=0$, whatever be the form of δx and δy, we must make these two parts separately $=0$; which can be done only by making

$$N-\frac{d(P)}{dx}+\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2}-\&c.=0,$$

and

$$V_{,,}\delta x_{,,}-V_{,}\delta x_{,}+(\delta y_{,,}-p_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\,\{P_{,,}-\frac{d(Q_{,,})}{dx_{,,}}+\&c.\}$$
$$-(\delta y_{,}-p_{,}\delta x_{,})\,\{P_{,}-\frac{d(Q_{,})}{dx_{,}}+\&c.\}+\&c.=0.$$

In the latter of these equations, we must eliminate, by means of given relations, as many as possible of the quantities $\delta x_{,}$, $\delta x_{,,}$, $\delta y_{,}$, &c., and make the coefficient of each remaining one separately equal to nothing.

11. The equation

$$N-\frac{d(P)}{dx}+\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2}-\&c.=0,$$

may, in most cases, be rendered more easy of application by integration. Thus, suppose there enter into V only y and p; the equation is reduced to

$$N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} = 0, \quad \text{or } Np = p\frac{d(P)}{dx};$$

$$\therefore \frac{d(V)}{dx} = N\frac{dy}{dx} + P\frac{dp}{dx} = p\frac{d(P)}{dx} + P\frac{dp}{dx};$$

$$\text{integrating, } V = Pp + C.$$

Suppose V involved only p and q; then the equation is reduced to $-\frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} = 0$,

$$\text{or } \frac{d(P)}{dx} = \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2}, \qquad P = \frac{d(Q)}{dx} + C;$$

$$\therefore \frac{d(V)}{dx} = P\frac{dp}{dx} + Q\frac{dq}{dx} = q\frac{d(Q)}{dx} + Cq + Q\frac{dq}{dx};$$

$$\text{integrating, } V = Qq + Cp + C'.$$

Or, suppose V contained only y and q; then

$$N + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} = 0, \quad \text{or } N = -\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2};$$

$$\therefore \frac{d(V)}{dx} = N\frac{dy}{dx} + Q\frac{dq}{dx} = -p\frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} + Q\frac{dq}{dx};$$

$$\text{integrating, } V = Qq - p\frac{d(Q)}{dx} + C.$$

And similarly in other cases.

12. We proceed to illustrate, by examples, the application of these formulæ.

It is required to find the shortest line that can be drawn from one given point to another given point.

$$\text{Here } u = \int_x \sqrt{(1+p^2)}; \quad V = \sqrt{(1+p^2)},$$

into which p only enters; the equation

$$N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \&c. = 0,$$

becomes $\frac{d(P)}{dx} = 0, \quad P = C, \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{p}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} = C;$

$$\therefore\ p = \frac{C}{\sqrt{(1-C^2)}} = C';$$

and it is a straight line. Since the extremities are invariable, $\delta x_{,}$, $\delta x_{,,}$, $\delta y_{,}$, $\delta y_{,,}$, are all $= 0$; and, therefore, the first part of δu vanishes without any relation between V, P, &c.

13. It is required to find the shortest line that can be drawn from one given curve to another given curve.

Here $u = \int_x \sqrt{(1+p^2)}, \quad V = \sqrt{(1+p^2)},$

and, as before,

$$\frac{d(P)}{dx} = 0, \quad P \text{ or } \frac{p}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} = C, \quad p = \frac{C}{\sqrt{(1-C^2)}} = C'.$$

The other equation becomes

$$V_{,,}\delta x_{,,} - V_{,}\delta x_{,} + P_{,,}(\delta y_{,,} - p_{,,}\delta x_{,,}) - P_{,}(\delta y_{,} - p_{,}\delta x_{,}) = 0,$$

$$\text{or } P_{,,}\delta y_{,,} + (V_{,,} - P_{,,}p_{,,})\,\delta x_{,,} - P_{,}\delta y_{,} - (V_{,} - P_{,}p_{,})\,\delta x_{,} = 0.$$

Let AB, (fig. 33), be the line required; then, in changing AB to $A'B'$, as the point A' is to be found in the curve Aa, the ratio of δx to δy, or of At to tA', must be the same as the ratio of the increment of x to the increment of y, in the curve Aa. Let $\frac{dy}{dx} = m$ be the differential equation of the curve Aa; then $\delta y_{,}$ must $= m\delta x_{,}$. In the same manner, if $\frac{dy}{dx} = n$ be the differential equation of the curve Bb, $\delta y_{,,} = n\delta x_{,,}$. Also,

$$p_{,} = C'; \qquad p_{,,} = C';$$

$$V_{,} - P_{,}p_{,} = \sqrt{(1+p_{,}^2)} - \frac{p_{,}^2}{\sqrt{(1+p_{,}^2)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+p_{,}^2)}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}};$$

$$V_{,,} - P_{,,}p_{,,} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}};$$

$$\text{and } P_{,} = P_{,,} = \frac{C'}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}}.$$

Substituting, the equation becomes

$$\left\{\frac{nC'}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}}\right\}\delta x_{,,} - \left\{\frac{mC'}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1+C'^2)}}\right\}\delta x_{,} = 0,$$

and since we cannot assign any relation which will, in all cases, subsist between $\delta x_{,}$ and $\delta x_{,,}$, we must make each coefficient $= 0$,

$$\text{or } 1 + nC' = 0, \qquad 1 + mC' = 0.$$

These equations shew, that the line required must cut both the given curves at right angles.

14. A body descends along a curve, under the action of gravity, from one given point to another given point: it is required to find the curve of quickest descent.

Let the higher point be made the origin of co-ordinates.

Here $t = \int_x \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(2gy)}}$; and, therefore, $u = \int_x \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y)}}$ must be a minimum; $V = \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y)}}$; and as this contains only y and p, we must have, by (11),

$$V = Pp + \frac{1}{C}.$$

$$\text{Now } P = \frac{p}{\sqrt{(y)}\sqrt{(1+p^2)}};$$

$$\therefore \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y)}} = \frac{p^2}{\sqrt{(y)}\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} + \frac{1}{C},$$

$$\text{or } \sqrt{(y)}\sqrt{(1+p^2)} = C;$$

$$\therefore \frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{1}{p} = \frac{y}{\sqrt{(C^2y - y^2)}};$$

$$\text{integrating, } x + C' = \frac{C^2}{2} \text{ ver sin}^{-1} \frac{2y}{C^2} - \sqrt{(C^2 y - y^2)};$$

the equation to a cycloid, whose base is horizontal, whose vertex is downwards, and whose cusp is at the higher of the given points.

15. It is required to find the curve of quickest descent from one given curve to another given curve, the velocity at every point being that acquired by falling from a given horizontal line.

Here, (as in the last), $V = \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y)}}$; and the equation

$$N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \&c. = 0,$$

$$\text{gives } \sqrt{(y)}\sqrt{(1+p^2)} = C.$$

$$\text{Also } V - Pp = \frac{1}{C}; \quad \text{and } P = \frac{p}{\sqrt{(y)}\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} = \frac{p}{C}.$$

Hence, the equation for the limits (10) becomes

$$\frac{p_{,,}}{C}\delta y_{,,} + \frac{1}{C}\delta x_{,,} - \frac{p_{,}}{C}\delta y_{,} - \frac{1}{C}\delta x_{,} = 0;$$

or, if $\frac{dy}{dx} = m$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = n$, be the differential equations to the given curves, $\delta y_{,}$ must $= m\delta x_{,}$, and $\delta y_{,,}$ must $= n\delta x_{,,}$, and

$$\frac{np_{,,}+1}{C}\delta x_{,,} - \frac{mp_{,}+1}{C}\delta x_{,} = 0.$$

Since there is no relation between $\delta x_{,}$, and $\delta x_{,,}$, we must have

$$np_{,,} + 1 = 0, \quad mp_{,} + 1 = 0;$$

that is, the cycloid will cut both the curves at right angles. The cusp of the cycloid, as appears from the equation, will not be at the point at which the falling body leaves the first curve, but will be in the given horizontal line.

16. To find the form of a solid of revolution, that the resistance in moving through a fluid in the direction of its axis, on the usual suppositions, may be a minimum.

Let x be measured along the axis of revolution.

The resistance $\propto \int_x y \frac{p^3}{1+p^3}$;

$$\therefore\ V = \frac{yp^3}{1+p^3};\quad P = y\frac{3p^2(1+p^3)-2p^4}{(1+p^3)^2} = y\frac{3p^2+p^4}{(1+p^3)^2};$$

and the equation $V = Pp + C$ gives

$$y\frac{p^3+p^5}{(1+p^3)^2} = y\frac{3p^3+p^5}{(1+p^3)^2} + C,$$

$$\text{or } \frac{2yp^3}{(1+p^3)^2} + C = 0,$$

the differential equation to the curve, by whose revolution the solid required is generated.

17. To find the curve, which, of all that can be drawn between two given points, contains between the curve, the evolute, and the radii of curvature at the extremities, the least area.

If h be the increment of x at any point, the corresponding increment of the arc is ultimately $h\sqrt{(1+p^2)}$; the radius of curvature $= \frac{(1+p^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{-q}$; hence, the increment of the area is ultimately $h\frac{(1+p^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{-2q}$; $\therefore\ u = \int_x \frac{(1+p^2)^2}{q}$ must be a minimum.

$$\text{Here, } V = \frac{(1+p^2)^2}{q};$$

and as this involves only p and q,

$$V = Qq + Cp + C', \text{ by (11).}$$

$$\text{And } Q = -\frac{(1+p^2)^2}{q^2};\quad \therefore\ \frac{2(1+p^2)^2}{q} = Cp + C'.$$

$$\text{Hence, } \frac{(Cp + C')\,q}{(1+p^2)^2} = 2;$$

$$\text{integrating, } \frac{-C + C'p}{1+p^2} + C' \tan^{-1} p = 4\,(x+a).$$

$$\text{And } \frac{(Cp^2 + C'p)\,q}{(1+p^2)^2} = 2p;$$

$$\text{integrating, } \frac{-C' - Cp}{1+p^2} + C \tan^{-1} p = 4\,(y+b).$$

Eliminating $\tan^{-1} p$,

$$\frac{C'^2 - C^2 + 2CC'p}{1+p^2} = 4\,\{C\,(x+a) - C'\,(y+b)\}.$$

$$\text{Let } C = 4f \sin\theta; \qquad C' = 4f\cos\theta;$$

substituting,

$$f\frac{\cos 2\theta + \sin 2\theta \,.\, p}{1+p^2} = \sin\theta\,.\,(x+a) - \cos\theta\,.\,(y+b).$$

To transform this into a more simple equation, we will first change the origin of co-ordinates, preserving their direction; if x' and y' be measured from a point whose co-ordinates are $-a$ and $-b$,

$$\text{then, } x' = x + a, \quad y' = y + b, \quad p' = p,$$

and the equation becomes

$$f\frac{\cos 2\theta + \sin 2\theta \,.\, p'}{1+p'^2} = \sin\theta\,.\,x' - \cos\theta\,.\,y'.$$

Now, take a new system of co-ordinates x'' and y'', (fig. 34) having the same origin as x' and y', but inclined to them at an angle θ; then

$$y' = x'' \sin\theta - y'' \cos\theta; \quad x' = x'' \cos\theta + y'' \sin\theta;$$

$$p' = \frac{dy'}{dx'} = \frac{\dfrac{dy'}{dx''}}{\dfrac{dx'}{dx''}} = \frac{\sin\theta - \cos\theta\,.\,p''}{\cos\theta + \sin\theta\,.\,p''};$$

$$\text{and substituting, } f\frac{\cos^2\theta-\sin^2\theta\,.\,p''^2}{1+p''^2}=y'';$$

$$\therefore \frac{f}{1+p''^2}=y''+f\sin^2\theta, \quad \text{or } (y''+f\sin^2\theta)\,(1+p''^2)=f,$$

the equation to a cycloid. If the position of the tangents at the extreme points be given, the constants, a, b, f, θ, must be determined, so as to make the cycloid pass through the given points, and touch the given tangents. If the extreme points only be fixed, leaving the directions of the tangents indeterminate, $\delta x_{,}$, $\delta y_{,}$, $\delta x_{,,}$, $\delta y_{,,}$, are $=0$; and the equation

$$V_{,,}\delta x_{,,}-V_{,}\delta x_{,}$$
$$+(\delta y_{,,}-p_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\left\{P_{,,}-\frac{d\,(Q_{,,})}{dx_{,,}}\right\}-(\delta y_{,}-p_{,}\delta x_{,})\left\{P_{,}-\frac{d\,(Q_{,})}{dx_{,}}\right\}$$
$$+(\delta p_{,,}-q_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\,Q_{,,}-(\delta p_{,}-q_{,}\delta x_{,})\,Q_{,}$$
$$=0,$$

is reduced to

$$Q_{,,}\delta p_{,,}-Q_{,}\delta p_{,}=0.$$

Let $\phi_{,}$ and $\phi_{,,}$ be the angles which the directions of the tangents at the extreme points make with the axis of x; then

$$p_{,,}=\tan\phi_{,,}; \quad \delta p_{,,}=(1+p_{,,}^2)\,\delta\phi_{,,}; \quad \delta p_{,}=(1+p_{,}^2)\,\delta\phi_{,};$$

$$\text{also } Q_{,,}=\frac{-(1+p_{,,}^2)^2}{q_{,,}^2}, \quad Q_{,}=\frac{-(1+p_{,}^2)^2}{q_{,}^2};$$

$$\text{substituting, } \frac{-(1+p_{,,}^2)^3}{q_{,,}^2}\delta\phi_{,,}+\frac{(1+p_{,}^2)^3}{q_{,}^2}\delta\phi_{,}=0;$$

and making equal to nothing the coefficients of $\delta\phi_{,,}$ and $\delta\phi_{,}$, we find

$$\left\{\frac{(1+p_{,,}^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{q_{,,}}\right\}^2=0, \qquad \left\{\frac{(1+p_{,}^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{q_{,}}\right\}^2=0;$$

that is, at the extremities, the radii of curvature are each $=0$; therefore these points are cusps; therefore the curve is a complete cycloid.

18. In all the examples above, we have supposed, as is commonly the case, that V does not involve the limits of the integral. But it may happen, that V will involve the values of x, y, p, &c. at the limits. In that case we must recur to the investigation in (8); instead of giving V' the value which it has there, we must put

$$V' = V + \frac{dV}{dx_{,}}\delta x_{,} + \frac{dV}{dy_{,}}\delta y_{,} + \&c.$$
$$+ M\delta x + N\delta y + P\delta p + \&c.$$

By going through the same operation as is there performed, we find δu

$$= V_{,,}\delta x_{,,} - V_{,}\delta x_{,}$$
$$+ (\delta y_{,,} - p_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\left\{P_{,,} - \frac{d(Q_{,,})}{dx_{,,}} + \&c.\right\}$$
$$- (\delta y_{,} - p_{,}\delta x_{,})\left\{P_{,} - \frac{d(Q_{,})}{dx_{,}} + \&c.\right\}$$
$$+ \&c.$$
$$+ \int_x \omega \left\{N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c.\right\}$$
$$+ \int_x \left(\frac{dV}{dx_{,}}\delta x_{,} + \frac{dV}{dy_{,}}\delta y_{,} + \&c.\right).$$

Now $\delta x_{,}$, $\delta y_{,}$, &c., are not functions of x generally, but of the limiting values of x; and, therefore, in the integration they may be considered constant with respect to x, and may be put before the integral sign as multipliers. The last line, therefore, is not to be connected with that immediately preceding, but with the former parts. Thus we have δu

$$= V_{,,}\delta x_{,,} - V_{,}\delta x_{,} + \delta x_{,}\int_x \frac{dV}{dx_{,}} + \delta y_{,}\int_x \frac{dV}{dy_{,}} + \&c.$$
$$+ (\delta y_{,,} - p_{,,}\delta x_{,,})\,(P_{,,} - \&c.) - (\delta y_{,} - p_{,}\delta x_{,})\,(P_{,} - \&c.)$$
$$+ \&c.$$
$$+ \int_x \omega \left\{N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \&c.\right\}.$$

19. Suppose, for instance, it were required to find the curve of quickest descent from one given curve to another given curve, the motion being supposed to commence at the first.

$$\text{Here, } t=\int_s \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{\{2g\,(y-y_1)\}}};$$

$$\text{let } u=\int_s \frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y-y_1)}}; \text{ then } V=\frac{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y-y_1)}};$$

$$P=\frac{p}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}\sqrt{(y-y_1)}};$$

and by (11),

$$V=Pp+\frac{1}{C}, \text{ or } \sqrt{(y-y_1)}\sqrt{(1+p^2)}=C,$$

and the curve is a cycloid in the same position as before, its cusp being at the point from which the motion begins. Now x_1, x_{11}, y_{11}, do not enter into V: and to integrate $\frac{dV}{dy_1}$, we observe that, from the form of V in this particular case,

$$\frac{dV}{dy_1}=-\frac{dV}{dy}=-N=-\frac{d\,(P)}{dx}\left\{\text{since } N-\frac{d\,(P)}{dx}=0\right\};$$

$$\therefore \int_s \frac{dV}{dy_1}=-P:$$

which, taken between its limits, is $-P_{11}+P_1$. Hence, we have for the first part of δu,

$$\begin{aligned} &V_{11}\delta x_{11}+P_{11}(\delta y_{11}-p_{11}\delta x_{11})-V_1\delta x_1-P_1(\delta y_1-p_1\delta x_1)+(P_1-P_{11})\,\delta y_1 \\ &\quad=(V_{11}-P_{11}p_{11})\,\delta x_{11}+P_{11}\delta y_{11}-(V_1-P_1p_1)\,\delta x_1-P_1\delta y_1 \\ &\quad=\frac{1}{C}\delta x_{11}+\frac{p_{11}}{C}\delta y_{11}-\frac{1}{C}\delta x_1-\frac{p_{11}}{C}\delta y_1. \end{aligned}$$

And, if the equations to the limiting curves be

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=m, \quad \frac{dy}{dx}=n,$$

we must, as before, put $\delta y_{,} = m\delta x_{,}$, $\delta y_{,,} = n\delta x_{,,}$, and we find

$$(1 + p_{,,}n)\,\delta x_{,,} - (1 + p_{,,}m)\,\delta x_{,} = 0:$$

then, since $\delta x_{,}$ and $\delta x_{,,}$ are indeterminate, we shall have

$$1 + p_{,,}n = 0,$$

which shews that the cycloid cuts the second curve at right angles,

$$\text{and} \quad 1 + p_{,,}m = 0,$$

which gives $m = n$, and shews that at the points where the cycloid meets both curves, their tangents are parallel.

20. There yet remains a very extensive class of problems: those in which the value of one function (v) is given, while another (u) is to be made a maximum or minimum. For instance; it is required to find the form of a curve, whose length is given, that the area contained by it may be the greatest possible. If we take the variation of u as in (9), we must not as in (10) make the entire variation, under all circumstances, $= 0$; for it is not necessary that δu be $= 0$ for any values whatever of δx and δy, but only for such values as make $\delta v = 0$; a condition which would by that process be entirely neglected. If, however, we make $\delta u + a\delta v = 0$ (a being a constant to be determined), on the supposition that δx and δy have any values whatever, then, the values of δx and δy which make $\delta v = 0$, and no other, will make $\delta u = 0$. And, at the same time, an additional constant is introduced into the equation between x and y, which enables us to give to v the value required in the statement of the problem. Hence, when u is to be made a maximum or minimum, while the value of v is constant, we must make $\delta(u + av) = 0$, proceeding in the same manner as in the simpler cases. And, if it were required that u should be a maximum or minimum, the values of the functions v and w being constant, the same reasoning would shew that we must make $\delta(u + av + bw) = 0$; and so for any number of functions.

*20. The reasoning, upon which is established the necessity for making the variation of $u + av = 0$, will perhaps be appre-

hended more clearly in the following form. The variations δx and δy which are to be given to x and y are to be *only* such as will make $\delta v = 0$. Consequently, if we suppose that variations δx and δy are made in the neighbourhood of the point $x_{,,,}$ tending to produce one effect upon the value of v, we must suppose that variations are made in the neighbourhood of at least one other point $x_{,,,,}$ tending to produce an equal and opposite effect upon the value of v. [Thus, if v be the length of the curve, which is given; then, if at one part we flatten a small portion of the curve so as to diminish its length, we must at some other part or parts increase its curvature so as to increase its length.] Let us confine our attention to the alteration near a single point $x_{,,,,}$ as balancing that near a single point $x_{,,,}$. Let Ω be the integral of ω through the small space which includes the variations near either point: and put $\phi(x)$ for $N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c.$ as related to the variation of v. The variation of v, arising from the variations δx, δy, near a point, will $= \Omega \cdot \phi(x)$*. Hence the variations of v near the points $x_{,,,}$, $x_{,,,,}$, are respectively

$$\Omega_{,,,} \cdot \phi(x_{,,,}), \quad \Omega_{,,,,} \cdot \phi(x_{,,,,});$$

and consequently, to make the change in $v = 0$, we must make

$$\Omega_{,,,} \cdot \phi(x_{,,,}) + \Omega_{,,,,} \cdot \phi(x_{,,,,}) = 0;$$

and therefore $\Omega_{,,,,} = -\Omega_{,,,} \cdot \frac{\phi(x_{,,,})}{\phi(x_{,,,,})}$.

---

* If $x = X + h$, where h is variable but extremely small, and X is for the moment constant, then

$$\int_h \omega \cdot \phi(x) = \int_h \omega \cdot \phi(X + h)$$

$$= \int_h \omega \left\{ \phi(X) + \phi'(X)\frac{h}{1} + \phi''(X)\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \&c. \right\}$$

$$= \phi(X)\int_h \omega + \phi'(X)\int_h \frac{\omega h}{1} + \phi''(X)\int_h \frac{\omega h^2}{1.2} + \&c.$$

which is sensibly equal to its first term, or to $\phi(x)\int_x \omega$, or to

$$\Omega \cdot \phi(x).$$

Putting $\psi(x)$ for $N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c.$ as related to the variation of u, the variations of u near the points $x_{,,,}$, $x_{,,,,}$, are respectively $\Omega_{,,,} \cdot \psi(x_{,,,})$, $\Omega_{,,,,} \cdot \psi(x_{,,,,})$. And as u is to be a maximum or minimum, the sum of these variations (by the usual reasoning on maxima and minima) is to $= 0$:

$$\text{or } \Omega_{,,,} \cdot \psi(x_{,,,}) + \Omega_{,,,,} \cdot \psi(x_{,,,,}) = 0,$$

$$\text{whence } \Omega_{,,,,} = -\Omega_{,,,} \cdot \frac{\psi(x_{,,,})}{\psi(x_{,,,,})}.$$

Equating this with the former,

$$\frac{\phi(x_{,,,})}{\psi(x_{,,,})} = \frac{\phi(x_{,,,,})}{\psi(x_{,,,,})};$$

and as this must hold, whatever values we take for $x_{,,,}$ and $x_{,,,,}$, it follows that $\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)}$ is constant. Let it $= -\frac{1}{a}$:

$$\text{then } a \times \left(N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c., \text{ for } v\right)$$

$$+ \left(N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \frac{d^2(Q)}{dx^2} - \&c., \text{ for } u\right)$$

$$= 0,$$

and this amounts to the same as saying that the variation of $u + av$ is $= 0$.

When this condition holds, it will readily be seen that, if we balance the change about the point $x_{,,,}$ by changes at numerous points, as regards v, the equation of maximum or minimum of u is always secured. It will also be seen that if the changes are supposed to be made at the limits of the integration, the same condition is required and is sufficient.

21. Taking the instance in (20), the area $= \int_x y$: the length $= \int_x \sqrt{(1 + p^2)}$;

$\therefore\ u + av = \int_x \{y + a\sqrt{(1 + p^2)}\}$; $\quad \therefore\ V = y + a\sqrt{(1 + p^2)}$:

and, by (11), $V = Pp + C$; or

$$y + a\sqrt{(1+p^2)} = \frac{ap^2}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} + C;$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} = C - y; \quad \frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{1}{p} = \frac{C-y}{\sqrt{\{a^2-(C-y)^2\}}},$$

$$x = C' - \sqrt{\{a^2-(C-y)^2\}}; \quad \therefore (x-C')^2 + (y-C)^2 = a^2,$$

the equation to a circular arc. If the limits be fixed, the values of the constant must be determined so as to make the length of the arc equal to the given length, and to make it pass through the two given points. If the limits be not fixed, suppose the first and last ordinates AM, BN, fig. 35, to be given, their abscissæ being not given; then, since $\delta y_{,} = 0$, $\delta y_{,,} = 0$, the equation for the limits reduces itself to

$$(V_{,,} - P_{,,}p_{,,})\,\delta x_{,,} - (V_{,} - P_{,}p_{,})\,\delta x_{,} = 0;$$

from which

$$V_{,,} - P_{,,}p_{,,} = 0, \quad V_{,} - P_{,}p_{,} = 0.$$

Since $V - Pp = C$, these equations are satisfied by making $C = 0$;

$$\therefore (x-C')^2 + y^2 = a^2:$$

that is, when the lengths of the ordinates AM, BN, and the arc AB are given, the area $AMNB$ is a maximum if AB be a circular arc, whose center C is in the line MN. If AM, BN, each $= 0$, MN is the chord of AB: and it appears that the curve which, with a given length, contains between its chord and its arc the greatest area, is the semicircle.

22. Given the length of a curve, to find its form, that its center of gravity may be the lowest possible. Let the length $= b$; then, the depth of the center of gravity $= \frac{1}{b}\int_x y\sqrt{(1+p^2)}$: the length $= \int_x \sqrt{(1+p^2)}$;

$$\text{hence } V = a\sqrt{(1+p^2)} + \frac{y\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{b};$$

and, making $V = Pp + C$,

$$\frac{a + \frac{y}{b}}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} = C,$$

whence $x = bC \log [y + ba + \sqrt{\{(y+ba)^2 - b^2C^2\}}] + C'$;

the equation to the catenary. If the extreme points be not fixed, but move on curves, it will be found that the catenary will cut the curves at right angles.

23. Given the surface of a solid of revolution, to find its nature, that the solid content may be a maximum. Let x be measured along the axis of revolution;

$$\text{the surface} = 2\pi \int_x y \sqrt{(1+p^2)}; \text{ the solidity} = \pi \int_x y^2;$$

$$\therefore V = y^2 + ay\sqrt{(1+p^2)};$$

$$V = Pp + C \text{ gives } \frac{ay}{\sqrt{(1+p^2)}} = C - y^2,$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{C - y^2}{\sqrt{\{a^2y^2 - (C-y^2)^2\}}}.$$

If the first and last ordinates of the generating curve, and the distance between them, be fixed, this equation (supposing it integrated) is sufficient; the three constants which the integral equation will contain must be determined so as to make the first and last ordinates, and the surface, equal to the given quantities. If the distance between the first and last ordinates be not given, then $\delta y_{,} = 0$, $\delta y_{,,} = 0$, and the equation for the limits is

$$(V_{,,} - P_{,,}p_{,,})\,\delta x_{,,} - (V_{,} - P_{,}p_{,})\,\delta x_{,} = 0, \quad \text{or } C\delta x_{,,} - C\delta x_{,} = 0;$$

and, as there is now no relation between $\delta x_{,,}$ and $\delta x_{,}$, $C = 0$.

$$\text{Hence, } \frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{-y^2}{\sqrt{(a^2y^2 - y^4)}} = \frac{-y}{\sqrt{(a^2 - y^2)}};$$

$$\therefore x + C' = \sqrt{(a^2 - y^2)},$$

the equation to a circle, whose center is in the line of abscissæ: and the solid is, therefore, a portion of a sphere included

between two planes perpendicular to a diameter. If the first and last ordinates be 0, the solid is a whole sphere.

24. Given the whole surface of a solid of revolution (including the circular ends), to find its form, that the solid content may be a maximum. The solidity $= \pi \int_x y^2$: the surface $= 2\pi \int_x y \sqrt{(1+p^2)} + \pi (y_,^2 + y_{,,}^2)$; hence, we must make

$$\delta \{ \int_x y^2 + a \int_x y \sqrt{(1+p^2)} + \frac{a}{2} (y_,^2 + y_{,,}^2) \} = 0.$$

The part under the sign of integration will be the same as in the last problem, and the equation derived from it will be the same, or

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{C - y^2}{\sqrt{\{a^2 y^2 - (C-y^2)^2\}}}.$$

The part depending on the variation of the limits, besides the usual terms

$$(V_{,,} - P_{,,} p_{,,}) \delta x_{,,} - (V_, - P_, p_,) \delta x_, + P_{,,} \delta y_{,,} - P_, \delta y_,$$

must have the terms which express the variation of $\frac{a}{2} (y_,^2 + y_{,,}^2)$,

$$\text{that is, } a (y_, \delta y_, + y_{,,} \delta y_{,,}).$$

Making the whole $= 0$,

$$C \delta x_{,,} - C \delta x_, + a y_{,,} \left\{ 1 + \frac{p_{,,}}{\sqrt{(1+p_{,,}^2)}} \right\} \delta y_{,,}$$

$$+ a y_, \left\{ 1 - \frac{p_,}{\sqrt{(1+p_,^2)}} \right\} \delta y_, = 0.$$

The first two coefficients shew that $C = 0$, and that the solid is part of a sphere; the third and fourth require either that $y_{,,} = 0$, $y_, = 0$; or that $\frac{1}{p_{,,}} = 0$, $\frac{1}{p_,} = 0$, which agree with the former; hence, the solid is an entire sphere.

25. Required the curve of quickest descent from one given point to another given point, the length of the curve being given.

$$\text{Here } V = \frac{a\sqrt{(1+p^2)}}{\sqrt{(y)}} + \sqrt{(1+p^2)};$$

$$\text{and } V = Pp + C \text{ gives } \frac{a}{\sqrt{(y)}} + 1 = C\sqrt{(1+p^2)}:$$

the differential equation to the curve. The constants must be determined so as to make the length of the curve equal to the given quantity, and to make the curve pass through both points.

26. Given the mass of a solid of revolution, required its form, that the attraction upon a point in the axis may be a maximum. Let the solid be divided into slices by planes perpendicular to the axis of revolution; then, since the attraction of a circle, whose thickness is h and radius y, upon a point at the distance x from its center, is ultimately

$$2\pi h\left\{1 - \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x^2+y^2)}}\right\},$$

the attraction of the solid will

$$= 2\pi \int_x \left\{1 - \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x^2+y^2)}}\right\}.$$

The solidity $= \pi \int_x y^2$. Hence,

$$V = 1 - \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x^2+y^2)}} + ay^2;$$

the equation $N - \frac{d(P)}{dx} + \&c. = 0$ is reduced to $N = 0$, or

$$\frac{xy}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} + 2ay = 0, \quad \text{or } x + 2a(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 0,$$

the equation to the curve by the revolution of which the solid is generated. If the first and last values of x be given, a must be determined, so that the included solid = the given solidity. If the first and last values of x are indeterminate, the equation of the limits is

$$V_{,,}\delta x_{,,} - V_{,}\delta x_{,} = 0, \quad \text{or } V_{,,} = 0, \quad V_{,} = 0, \quad \therefore y_{,,} = 0, \quad y_{,} = 0;$$

and the solid must be that generated by the revolution of the whole curve, whose equation is

$$x + 2a\,(x^2 + y^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 0,$$

a being determined so that the whole solidity = the given solidity.

27. The rules and examples above will serve to elucidate all the cases that commonly occur; and the same principles may easily be extended to more difficult problems. For investigations of the cases where u is given by double integration, or by the solution of a differential equation, or where V is a function of two or more independent variables, or where V depends upon another integral, the reader is referred to Lacroix, *Traité du Calcul Différentiel et du Calcul Intégral*, Tome 2$^{\text{ème}}$, or to Woodhouse's *Isoperimetrical Problems*.

ON THE

UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS.

ON UNDULATIONS GENERALLY.

PROP. 1. To explain the nature of an Undulation.

1. The characteristic of an undulation is, the continued transmission in one direction of a *relative state* of particles amongst each other, while the motion of each particle separately considered is a reciprocating motion. The disturbance of the particles from their state of rest, and their motion, may be in any direction whatever.

2. For example: in fig. 36, let the line (α) represent a number of particles in their position of rest: and suppose that in consequence of a disturbance they are at a given time T in the position (β): at the time $T+\frac{\tau}{4}$, in the position (γ): at the time $T+\frac{2\tau}{4}$, in the position (δ): at the time $T+\frac{3\tau}{4}$, in the position (ϵ): and at the time $T+\tau$, in the position (ζ): and in intermediate positions at times intermediate to these. At the time T the particles are in the state of greatest condensation about a, a', and a''. Suppose we fix our attention on one of these condensed groups, as for instance that of which a' is the center. At the time $T+\frac{\tau}{4}$ the center of the condensed group has glided from a' to d', not by the motion of all the particles in that direction, but by such a difference of motions that the particles about a' are not so close together as they were, and the particles about d' are closer together than they were. At the time $T+\frac{2\tau}{4}$ the point of greatest condensation has advanced to g', precisely the point

where at the time T there was the least condensation: at the time $T+\frac{3\tau}{4}$, it has advanced to k': and at the time $T+\tau$, to a''. The particles are now, it may be observed, in just the same state as at the time T, for a'' was then the center of a condensed group. After this, everything goes on in the same manner, beginning at the time $T+\tau$, as it did beginning at the time T. All that we have said with respect to the condensed mass about a' applies to those about a, a'', and a'''. Now if these motions were really going on before our eyes, we should see several *condensations* (not the condensed particles) passing uniformly and continuously from the left to the right of the line of particles.

But if we fix our attention on any one of these particles, we shall see that it has a reciprocating or oscillating motion. The particle a is advancing from T to $T+\frac{\tau}{4}$, when it has attained its greatest advance: it recedes then to $T+\frac{3\tau}{4}$: it then advances again. The particle d advances from T (when it is at its minimum advance) to $T+\frac{2\tau}{4}$: it then recedes to $T+\tau$. The particle g recedes to $T+\frac{\tau}{4}$, then advances to $T+\frac{3\tau}{4}$, then recedes. And so for the others. The varying state of particles which we have here supposed, satisfies therefore the conditions mentioned in (1), and therefore this is an instance of undulation, the motion of every particle being backwards and forwards in the same line as the direction of transmission of the wave*.

3. As another example, let (β), (γ), (δ), (ϵ), (ζ), of fig. 37, represent successive states of the particles which when at rest were in the position (α). If we fix our attention on one of the most elevated parts, as for instance k, at T, we find that at

* This is the kind of undulation which in the air produces sound, and is the only kind which, till within a few years, was used for the explanation of the phenomena of Optics.

$T+\frac{\tau}{4}$ the elevation has passed to a'; at $T+\frac{2\tau}{4}$ to d': &c.: though the particles have had no motion whatever in that direction. And if these motions were actually before us, we should see several elevations passing uniformly and continuously from the left to the right. But if we fixed our attention on any one particle, we should see that it has an oscillating motion above and below the line. The particle a for instance, is at its greatest elevation at $T+\frac{\tau}{4}$, and at its greatest depression at $T+\frac{3\tau}{4}$: d is at its greatest depression at T, at its greatest elevation at $T+\frac{2\tau}{4}$, and at its greatest depression at $T+\tau$: and so for the others. This varying state of particles is therefore another instance of undulation, the motion of every particle being at right angles to the direction of transmission of the wave.

We might conceive more complicated cases of undulation, as when the motion of the particles is compounded of the two motions supposed in these two cases*; or when there is one motion similar to that represented in fig. 37 in the plane of the paper, and another perpendicular to that plane†; &c. The last of these suppositions is that to which we shall hereafter refer the phænomena of polarization, and of Optics in general.

PROP. 2. The length of a wave does not depend on the extent of vibration of each particle.

4. It is easily seen that the interval between corresponding points of two waves of condensation in fig. 36 (which is the distance from a to a', a' to a'', &c. at T, or the distance from d to d', d' to d'', &c. at $T+\frac{\tau}{4}$, &c.) is wholly independent of the extent of vibration of each particle. For if each particle vibrated only half as far as is now supposed, still at T, a would be a point where the particles are most condensed, and a' would be the next point where they are most condensed, and a'' the next,

* This is the kind of undulation which takes place on the surface of deep water in a calm.

† This is the undulation of a musical string.

&c. The interval between similar points of two waves (which we shall call the *length of a wave*, and shall always denote by the letter λ) would be the same as at present: the only difference would be that the particles about a, a', &c. would not be so closely condensed, nor those about g, g', &c. so widely separated as at present. Similarly the length of a wave in fig. 37 would be unaltered if the vibration of the particles were altered in any ratio: the only difference would be that the elevation of the high points and the depression of the low points would be altered in that ratio.

PROP. 3. The length of a wave depends on the velocity of transmission, and on the time of vibration of each particle.

5. In the cases both of fig. 36 and of fig. 37 (and in every other conceivable case of a continued sequence of waves) we see that every particle has returned to the same state at $T+\tau$ as at T, that is, that the vibration of every particle is completed in the time τ. But in this time the wave has appeared to glide over a space equal to the interval between corresponding points of two waves, or λ. Hence we find,

Space described by the wave in the time of vibration of a particle $= \lambda$.

$$\text{Velocity of wave} = \frac{\lambda}{\text{time of vibration of a particle}}.$$

PROP. 4. To express algebraically the transmission of an undulation.

6. The quantity for which we shall seek an expression is, the distance of any point from its point of rest, in a function of the time and of the distance of that point of rest from some fixed point. Let x be the original distance of any point in the line (a) from some fixed point: to find an expression for its disturbance at the time t, in a function of x and t, consistent with the conditions of an undulation. By the original description of an undulation (1), putting v for the velocity of the wave's transmission, it is easily seen that whatever be the state of disturbance at the time t of a particle whose original ordinate is x, the same

state of disturbance must hold at the time $t+t'$ for a particle whose original ordinate is $x+vt'$. Or if ϕ express the form of the function,

$$\phi(x, t) \text{ must} = \phi\{(x+vt'),\ (t+t')\},$$

whatever be the value of t'. It will be found on trial that $\phi(vt-x)$ satisfies this condition, ϕ being any function whatever. For putting $t+t'$ for t, and $x+vt'$ for x, it becomes

$$\phi\{v(t+t')-(x+vt')\} = \phi(vt-x),$$

the same as before. But it may be found analytically thus. Expanding the second side we have

$$\phi(x, t) = \phi(x, t) + \frac{d.\phi(x, t)}{dx} vt' + \frac{d.\phi(x, t)}{dt} t' + \&c.,$$

$$\text{or } v\frac{d.\phi(x, t)}{dx} + \frac{d.\phi(x, t)}{dt} = 0,$$

the general solution of which gives

$$\phi(x, t) = \phi(vt-x)^*.$$

7. This expression however is too general to be of much use to us, and we will choose a particular form that will be more convenient. Suppose we fix on this condition to determine the form of the function: the vibration of each particle shall follow the same law as the vibration of a cycloidal pendulum. The distance of a cycloidal pendulum from its place of rest is expressed by

$$a\sin\left\{t\sqrt{\left(\frac{g}{l}\right)} + C\right\},\ \text{or } a\sin(nt+C).$$

The required function then for the disturbance of a particle is

$$a\sin\left\{\frac{n}{v}(vt-x) + A\right\}.$$

---

* This is the expression found, by investigation from *mechanical* principles, for the disturbance of the particles of air when sound passes along a tube of uniform bore, or for the disturbance of an elastic string (as that of a musical instrument) fixed at both ends.

For while we consider the motion of a single particle only, x is constant, and the expression is

$$a \sin (nt + C), \text{ where } C = A - \frac{nx}{v}.$$

At the same time it is a function of $vt - x$, and therefore satisfies the condition requisite for an undulation. We will therefore assume as the expression for the disturbance

$$a \sin (nt - \frac{nx}{v} + A).$$

But it is plain that, without any loss of generality, we may get rid of A by altering the origin of time from which t is reckoned, or the origin of linear measure from which x is reckoned. We may therefore take

$$a \sin \left(nt - \frac{nx}{v}\right)$$

as the expression for the disturbance when one undulation only (consisting of an indefinite number of similar waves) is considered.

8. A form somewhat more convenient may be given thus. The expression

$$a \sin (nt - \frac{nx}{v} + A)$$

goes through all its periodical values while nt increases by 2π, or while t increases by $\frac{2\pi}{n}$. $\frac{2\pi}{n}$ is therefore the time of vibration of a particle. But by (5)

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{\text{time of vibration}} = \frac{\lambda}{\frac{2\pi}{n}} = \frac{\lambda n}{2\pi}.$$

Consequently $n = \frac{2\pi v}{\lambda}$, and therefore the disturbance

$$= a \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + A\right\}^*,$$

* This is the form of the function tacitly assumed by Newton for the disturbance of particles of air, in his investigation of the velocity of sound. (*Principia*, Lib. II. Prop. 47.)

for which we may put

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

when a single undulation only is considered. It is to be observed that a is the maximum vibration of any particle.

PROP. 5. To explain the interference of undulations.

9. By *interference* is meant the co-existence of two undulations in which the length of a wave is the same. The conception of interference is not in any circumstances easy*, and it is more particularly difficult with regard to Physical Optics, from our ignorance of the physical causes to which the undulation is due.

10. †If we investigate, from the known properties of air, the motion of the particles (supposed parallel to a fixed line), we find this differential equation for the disturbance of a particle

$$\frac{d^2X}{dt^2} - v^2 \frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = 0$$

(v^2 being a constant, $= mgH$ in the common notation, and X being the disturbance from the state of rest), and the solution is

$$X = \phi (vt - x) + \psi (vt + x),$$

where the form of the functions is to be determined by the initial circumstances. Or if we suppose the wave of air to move only in one direction, the expression for the disturbance will

---

* The simplest illustration is perhaps to be found in the crossing of two waves on the surface of water, each of which affects the surface in the same manner as if the other were not there. If we conceive two series of waves, produced by agitating the surface at two points, to spread in circular forms with equal and uniform velocities, and if one agitation was created a little before the other, so that the wave proceeding from one has proceeded as far (in a given direction) as the hollow between two waves proceeding from the other, then it may be imagined that at every point where this holds, the elevation of one wave may exactly fill up the hollow of the other, and the surface will be, in fact, undisturbed.

† The reader who is not familiar with the investigation of the problem of Sound may omit the next three articles.

be $\phi(vt-x)$. And this may be divided into several different expressions,

$$\psi(vt-x)+\chi(vt-x)+\upsilon(vt-x)+\&c.$$

where the form of each is to be determined by the initial circumstances, or by the cause of the undulation. If there was only a single original cause for the undulations, there would be only a single term $\psi(vt-x)$ to be preserved. But if there were several distinct original causes for the undulations, there would be a single term corresponding to each of these to be preserved, and the whole disturbance would be the sum of all these terms. And it is particularly to be remarked, that the whole disturbance thus found as the effect of all the original causes together, is precisely the sum (with their proper signs) of a number of disturbances, each of which would have been produced by one of the original causes acting separately.

11. Now if we examine to what this property of the solution of the differential equation (namely that it can be broken up into several parts all similar to each other and to the whole) is due, we find it is owing to the circumstance that the differential coefficients of u were raised only to the first power in the equation, or (to express it in other words) that the equation was linear. For the differential coefficient of the sum of a number of functions is the same as the sum of the differential coefficients: but the square of the differential coefficient of a sum of functions is not the same as the sum of their squares, &c. If then the differential coefficients (and the unknown quantity itself if it enters in the equation) be all of the first dimension, the substitution of a sum of functions is the same as the sum of their substitutions separately, and therefore if each of those functions satisfies the equation, their sum will satisfy the equation. But if they are raised to a higher power, the substitution of the sum is not the same as the sum of the substitutions, and therefore if each function satisfies the equation, their sum will not.

12. If now we retrace the steps of the investigation for air, it will be seen that the *linearity* of the differential equa-

tion depends upon this physical fact, that upon altering by a small quantity the relative position of particles, the forces which they exert undergo variations very nearly proportional to that small quantity. And in any other case where this holds, the equations will be linear; and the wave-disturbance of any particle, produced by a number of agitating causes, will be the sum of all the wave-disturbances which these causes would singly have produced. We can hardly conceive any law of constitution of a medium in which undulations are propagated, where this does not hold, and we shall therefore suppose it to be true for light.

13. Taking it then as a fact that the disturbance of every particle produced by two co-existent undulations will be the sum of the disturbances which they would produce separately, we will consider the nature of the disturbance produced by the superposition of two such undulations as those treated of in (7) and (8), each of which is represented geometrically by fig. 36, if the vibrations are in the direction of the wave's transmission, and by fig. 37, if they are perpendicular to that direction. For convenience of figure, we will suppose them of the latter class: but all that we say will apply as well to the former. We will suppose the length of a wave the same in both undulations. In fig. 38, let the Italic letters of (α) represent the state of an undulation, at the time T, where the law of vibration is

$$a \sin \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x + A),$$

and let (β) represent the state of another undulation at the same time where the law of vibration is

$$b \sin \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x + B).$$

If from any point in (α) we measure upwards a distance equal to the elevation of the corresponding point of (β), or measure downwards a distance equal to the depression of the corresponding point of (β), we shall determine the position of the Roman letters. Their distances from the straight line represent the effect of the superposition of the two undulations. This is

evidently an undulation of the same kind, and with waves of the same length, as either of the others. But in the instance as we have supposed it, the addition of the undulation (β) to (α) has diminished the maximum vibration of the latter, and has made the maximum to exist at a different part of the line. Thus we see that the magnitude of vibration in an undulation may be diminished by the addition of another undulation transmitted in the same direction. This is a point of great importance, and deserves the reader's attentive consideration.

14. The geometrical figures which we have given are merely illustrations: the conclusion that we have arrived at will be more readily obtained from the algebraic expressions. Adding together the two disturbances

$$a \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + A\right\} \quad \text{and} \quad b \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + B\right\},$$

we have for the whole disturbance

$$(a \cos A + b \cos B) \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

$$+ (a \sin A + b \sin B) \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

This may be put under the form

$$c \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + C\right\},$$

if $c \cos C = a \cos A + b \cos B$, $\quad c \sin C = a \sin A + b \sin B$.

It is very important to remark that the square of c, the new coefficient, is the sum of the squares of the coefficients of

$$\sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\} \text{ and } \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

We shall have occasion frequently to refer to this theorem.

In the present instance,

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \cos (A - B):$$

and the quotient of $c \sin C$ by $c \cos C$ gives

$$\tan C = \frac{a \sin A + b \sin B}{a \cos A + b \cos B}.$$

The form of the expression

$$c \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + C \right\}$$

shews that the length of a wave is the same as in either of the undulations compounded; but the difference of value of C from A and B shews that the maximum of vibration for a given particle does not generally take place with the same value of t as for either of the undulations compounded. The magnitude of the maximum vibration, which is c or

$$\sqrt{\{a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \cos (A - B)\}},$$

depends on the value of $A - B$: its greatest value is $a + b$, when $A - B = 0$, and its least value is $a \sim b$, when $A \sim B = 180^\circ$. In these two cases C is equal to one at least of the two angles A and B.

PROP. 6. To examine the effects of interference of two equal and similar undulations: and to shew that when one is $(p + \frac{1}{2}) \times$ length of the wave behind the other (p being a whole number) they will destroy each other.

15. In the case of equal vibration, $a = b$. The value of c is then

$$\sqrt{\{2a^2 + 2a^2 \cos (A - B)\}} = 2a \cos \frac{A - B}{2},$$

$$\text{and } \tan C = \frac{\sin A + \sin B}{\cos A + \cos B} = \tan \frac{A + B}{2}, \quad \text{or } C = \frac{A + B}{2}.$$

If $A - B = 0$, the value of c is $2a$, and $C = A$: that is, if we add two such undulations as (β) and (ζ) (fig. 37), we shall have an undulation in which the maxima are at the same places, and the maximum vibration is double what it was before. With any other value of $A - B$, c is less than $2a$: and when $B = A \pm 180^\circ$,

c is 0, that is, there is no motion whatever. To understand this clearly, we must consider what is meant by the expression

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + B \right\},$$

or, (in this case of destruction of the motion)

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + A \pm \pi \right\}.$$

This is the same as

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \left(vt - x \pm \frac{\lambda}{2} \right) + A \right\}.$$

Now this is exactly the same expression as

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + A \right\},$$

putting $x \mp \frac{\lambda}{2}$ instead of x. That is, the expression for the disturbance in this second undulation, if $B = A \pm 180^\circ$, is the same as that in the first, provided instead of x we take $x \mp \frac{\lambda}{2}$. That is, one of the undulations may be represented by the same construction as the other, provided we suppose it in advance or in arrear of the other by half the length of a wave. The undulations (β) and (δ), or (γ) and (ϵ) in figures 36 and 37 have this relation to one another. And it will very easily be seen in fig. 37, that if we compound (δ) with (β) by a process similar to that which we used in fig. 38, (13), the elevations of particles in (δ) will correspond to equal depressions in (β), and *vice versâ*, and consequently by their combination the particles will all be brought to their original position. The same will be true after the time $\frac{\tau}{4}$ when (β) has been changed to (γ), and at the same time (δ) has been changed to (ϵ); and at every other time: and therefore there will be continued rest. Thus we arrive at the extraordinary conclusion that one undulation may be absolutely destroyed by another with waves of the same length transmitted in the same direction, provided that the maxima of vibrations are equal, and that one follows the other by half the length of a

wave. Since the retardation of a whole length of a wave, or two whole lengths, &c., produces no alteration in an undulation, it is plain that a retardation of $\frac{3\lambda}{2}$, $\frac{5\lambda}{2}$, &c. will produce the same effect as a retardation of $\frac{\lambda}{2}$; and thus two undulations will destroy each other if the maxima of vibration be the same and the waves be of the same length and transmitted in the same direction; and if one follow the other by $\frac{\lambda}{2}$, or $\frac{3\lambda}{2}$, or $\frac{5\lambda}{2}$, &c.

16. The reader is requested particularly to remark this apparently strange conclusion. It is of the greatest importance in Physical Optics, for the following reason. We shall refer hereafter to experiments which shew that the mixture of two pencils of light will produce darkness. This fact seems to defy any attempt at explanation on the supposition that light is occasioned by the emission of material particles. But in consequence of the conclusion at which we have just arrived, it is perfectly explicable on the supposition that light consists of a series of waves of either of the kinds mentioned in (2) and (3), transmitted by some medium which pervades space. It is only necessary for perfect agreement that, in the two pencils which mix, the waves of one precede those of the other by spaces which may be represented by

$$\frac{\lambda}{2}, \quad \text{or } \frac{3\lambda}{2}, \quad \text{or } \frac{5\lambda}{2}, \text{ &c.},$$

which is found experimentally to be true. Any other hypothesis, however, from which the same conclusion could be deduced would be, *primâ facie*, equally entitled to our attention.

PROP. 7. To find the result of the interference of any number of waves.

17. We have shewn in (14) the method of compounding the effects of two waves: the effect of several is found in just the same manner. Suppose for instance, the disturbance produced by one undulation was expressed by

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + A \right\} :$$

that of a second, by

$$b \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+B\right\};$$

that of a third, by

$$e \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+E\right\}, \text{ \&c.}$$

The sum of these is

$$(a\cos A + b\cos B + e\cos E + \text{\&c.}) \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}$$

$$+ (a\sin A + b\sin B + e\sin E + \text{\&c.}) \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\},$$

which we will call

$$F \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\} + G\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}.$$

This, as in (14), may be put under the form

$$c \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+C\right\},$$

if $F = c\cos C$, $G = c\sin C$;

$$\text{whence } c = \sqrt{(F^2+G^2)}, \quad \tan C = \frac{G}{F}.$$

In some cases, where the effects of an indefinitely great number of indefinitely small waves are to be combined, F and G may be found by integration: c and C are then determined by the same process as that just given.

18. It remains now only to notice some cases of undulation not included in those already treated of. One is, that a single wave may be transmitted through a medium (as we know to be true with regard to air), and then our theorems about interference are not true. This however will not come under consideration, as there is reason to think that a single wave in air or in the medium of light would not produce the sensation of sound or colour. We shall generally consider the undulation as a succession of a great (but not infinite) number of waves. Another is, that the magnitude of the maximum vibration of a particle may

depend on its situation: for instance, if waves diverge from a center, the vibrations must be more violent in the neighbourhood of that center than at a distance from it. This will be represented by expressing the extent of vibration at any time by

$$\psi(x) \cdot \phi(vt - x),$$

or by the sum of several such functions. Since two successive waves here would not be equal, our theorem about interferences of waves lagging $\frac{\lambda}{2}$, $\frac{3\lambda}{2}$, &c. would not be strictly true: but it is easily conceivable that, at a distance from the center of divergence, the neighbouring waves would be so nearly equal that our expressions would have no sensible error.

19. Another case is, the interference of undulations whose waves are of different length. We know with respect to air that the velocity of transmission is the same for waves of all lengths: and we might expect the same to hold good with regard to light. We shall afterwards refer to experiments which appear to shew that this is not true. Still whether v be constant or not, it is impossible to unite two such terms as

$$a \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + A\right\} \text{ and } b \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda'}(v't - x) + B\right\},$$

so as to destroy the original form. We have seen (17) that when any number of waves is combined, supposing v and λ the same for all, their sum contains no trace of the distinction of waves in which it originated; and fixing upon any one point, or considering x as constant, the vibration is there expressed by

$$c \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi v}{\lambda} t + \left(C - \frac{2\pi x}{\lambda}\right)\right\},$$

the same form as that for the vibration of a cycloidal pendulum. But the two expressions

$$a \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi v}{\lambda} t + \left(A - \frac{2\pi x}{\lambda}\right)\right\} \text{ and } b \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi v'}{\lambda'} t + \left(B - \frac{2\pi x}{\lambda'}\right)\right\},$$

cannot be combined into that form, unless $\frac{v}{\lambda} = \frac{v'}{\lambda'}$, which there

is no reason to think true. The consideration therefore of waves of different lengths may be kept perfectly separate, as their ultimate effect will be the same as the sum of all their separate effects, without any possibility of their destroying or modifying one another.

20. The reader is requested to attend to the conventional signification of the following terms.

By a *wave* we mean all the particles included between two which are in similar states of displacement and of motion. For instance, in any one of the cases (β), (γ), (δ), (ϵ), (ζ) of fig. 36 or 37, the particles included between b and b' form a wave: or those between f and f'' form a wave: &c. It is easily seen that a wave includes particles in every possible state of displacement and of motion consistent with undulatory vibration.

The *length of a wave* we have explained to be the distance between two particles similarly displaced and moving similarly. The interval, in time, of two waves (that is, the interval between the arrival of two successive waves at the same point), it will be recollected, is the same as the time of vibration of any particle, (5).

By the *phase* of a wave, we shall denote the situation of a particle in a wave, considered as affecting its displacement and motion. For instance, b and b' in fig. 36 or 37, are in *similar phases*, because their displacements are equal, and their motions are also equal. But in (β) fig. 37, b and f are not in the same phase: for though their displacements are equal, their motions are in opposite directions. Similarly f and h are not in the same phase, for their displacements are different though their motions are equal. It is readily seen that particles are in the same phase when the distance between them is a multiple of the length of a wave.

We shall say that particles are in *opposite phases* when the displacement and motion of one are equal and opposite to those of the other. For instance, a and g, or e' and l', in (β), (γ), (δ), (ϵ), or (ζ), of fig. 36 or 37 are in opposite phases. It is easy to

perceive that particles are in opposite phases when their distance is an odd multiple of half the length of a wave.

In speaking of waves where the displacement of a particle is represented by

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + A \right\},$$

we shall consider the arc

$$\left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + A \right\}$$

as the measure of the *phase.*

When we consider a wave as extending over space in a direction different from that in which it is transmitted, we shall use the term *front of a wave* to denote a continuous line passing through all those points which are in the same phase. Thus in fig. 39, suppose that a series of waves of an undulation are passing from the side AB towards CD: and suppose that the line EF passes through a number of points which are simultaneously in the same phase: then EF is a front of a wave. If at the same time GH be another line passing through a number of points which are simultaneously in some other phase, GH is another front of a wave. In considering space of three dimensions it is plain that the front of a wave will generally be a surface.

21. We shall now state a principle of which we shall make extensive use in the calculation of Optical phenomena.

The effect of any wave in disturbing any given point may be found by taking the front of the wave at any given time, dividing it into an indefinite number of small parts, considering the agitation of each of these small parts as the cause of a small wave which will disturb the given point, and finding by summation or integration the aggregate of all the disturbances of the given point produced by the small waves coming from all points of the great wave.

In demonstration of this principle it seems sufficient to say that the agitation of one part at one time is really and truly the

cause of the agitation of another part at another time: and that the effect of the great wave, which really is a number of small agitations, will by (12) be the sum of the effects of all the small agitations.

22. A question now arises. What is to limit the waves diverging from each of these small sources of motion? The disturbance spreads generally in a spherical form, so that the front of each little wave is a sphere: are we to suppose the sphere complete, so that each small undulation is propagated backwards as well as forwards?

The following answer appears to be correct, but its application in several cases seems doubtful. The effect of each small wave must be limited by the same considerations which limit the effect of the great wave. Now we know, from the algebraical investigation, that a single wave may be transmitted along a stretched cord, or in air, without being followed by another*. In this case it is plain that the present agitation of one point causes the future agitation of the points in the direction in which the wave is going, but of none in the direction from which it came. In figure 39 for instance, if a single wave is going from *AB* towards *CD*, and if *EF* be the front of the wave at any time, then we know that the displacement in *EF* is the cause of future displacement in *GH*, because in consequence of the existence of this wave there will hereafter be a

---

* The function X which expresses the disturbance may be *discontinuous*, that is, may be expressed by different algebraical forms for different values of $vt-x$, (which we will call w), provided that $\frac{dX}{dw}$ does not alter *per saltum*. For instance $X=0$ while w is less than b: $X=a$ versin $\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(w-b)\right\}$ from $w=b$ till $w=b+\lambda$: $X=0$ while w is $>b+\lambda$. This is a discontinuous function expressing a single wave (since the particles are only disturbed when $vt-x$ is $>b<b+\lambda$). And it satisfies the condition just mentioned, since $\frac{dX}{dw}$ is 0 till $w=b$: its value is then $a\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(w-b)\right\}$ from $w=b$ to $w=b+\lambda$, that is, it increases gradually from 0 to $a\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$ and diminishes gradually from $a\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$ to 0: and when w is $>b+\lambda$, $\frac{dX}{dw}$ is 0.

wave at GH: but we know that the displacement in EF causes no future displacement between EF and AB, because, though the displacement in EF exists, there will hereafter be no wave between AB and EF. If then we divide EF into a great number of parts, we must consider the displacement in each as causing a hemispherical or nearly hemisherical wave, which diverges only before the front of the great wave and not behind it.

APPLICATION OF THIS THEORY TO THE EXPLANATION OF THE PHÆNOMENA OF LIGHT WHICH DO NOT DEPEND ON POLARIZATION.

23. We shall suppose that light is the undulation of a medium called *ether* which pervades all transparent bodies. Respecting the direction of vibration of each particle we shall make no supposition till we treat of polarized light, as the results of this section are independent of the direction of vibration: to fix the ideas, however, the reader may conceive it to be of the kind represented in fig. 37. We shall suppose that a great number of similar waves follow without interruption, and that the function which expresses the displacement of a particle is

$$a \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + A\right\}.$$

When in our final results we have found the expression

$$c \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} vt + C - \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} x\right\}$$

for the displacement of the particles touching a screen or touching the eye, we shall assume the intensity of the light to be represented* by c^2. We shall suppose that the colour of light

* We must take some even power of c to represent the intensity, since the undulation where the vibration is expressed by

$$-c \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+C\right\}$$

differs in no respect from that whose vibration is expressed by

$$+c \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+C\right\},$$

depends on the value of λ, but that λ is always very small: that for extreme red rays it is 0,0000266 inch: less for yellow: still less for green, blue, and indigo successively, and least for the reddish violet rays, for which $\lambda = 0{,}0000167$ inch. Common white light we shall suppose to consist of a mixture of waves of all lengths intermediate to these.

PROP. 8. A succession of waves, whose fronts are parallel to the screen CD (fig. 40) in which is the comparatively small opening AB, is moving towards the screen: to find the magnitude of vibration on any point G of the semicircle CGD.

24. Let H be the center of AB and of the semicircle, and let $HG = r$, $CHG = \theta$, $HA = b$: divide AB into a great number

---

except that it is half the length of a wave before or behind it. The propriety of using the second power may be thus shewn. If two candles giving the same light be placed near each other and shine on the same screen, we say that there is twice as much light as if one only were shining on it: and this may be regarded as the experimental definition of double the quantity of light. Now if the vibration excited by one of these be

$$c \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + C\right\},$$

and that excited by the other be

$$c \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + D\right\},$$

the whole vibration will be the sum of these, or

$$c\sqrt{\{2 + 2\cos(C - D)\}} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + E\right\},$$

$$\text{where } \tan E = \frac{\sin C + \sin D}{\cos C + \cos D}.$$

If the lights be represented by the square of the coefficient we have

$$\text{light from a single candle} = c^2$$
$$\text{light from two candles} = 2c^2 + 2c^2 \cos(C - D).$$

The value of $C - D$ may be any whatever, and it is probable that in one second of time, from different systems of waves following each other, $\cos(C - D)$ may have gone through all its values many thousand times. To estimate the effect on the eye, we must take the mean of all its values. As the negative values are equal to the positive ones, the mean of all is 0. Thus we have

$$\text{light from two candles} = 2c^2.$$

By using the second power therefore we obtain a result which agrees with our experimental definition: and the same would appear if instead of two candles we had taken three or any other number. But the agreement will not hold if we take any other power of the coefficient as the representative of the illumination.

of small parts, and let the distance of one at Z from H be z, and its breadth δz: then

$$ZG = \sqrt{(r^2 - 2r\cos\theta \,.\, z + z^2)}.$$

When a wave comes to AB, consider separately the parts corresponding to the small divisions of AB. It seems reasonable to suppose that each of these small parts will cause a diverging wave of equal intensity for all values of θ. For if the medium were air, and a rush of particles took place as in fig. 36, from EF, the only effect in the small part under consideration would be to cause a condensation of air: and this would cause a wave of equal intensity for all values of θ. If the vibrations were like those of fig. 37, and perpendicular to the plane of the paper, the same thing appears evident: if parallel to the plane of the paper, it is not so clear what the proportion of intensities would be. The maximum of vibration when the wave reached G would, if it followed the same laws as in air*, vary nearly as $\frac{1}{ZG}$. Now

* When a wave of air diverges symmetrically through any given solid angle, if r be the original distance of any particle from the center, $r+u$ its distance at the time t, $r+h$ the original distance of a second particle; then the distance of the latter at the time t will be

$$r + u + h\left(1 + \frac{du}{dr}\right)$$

nearly: and the particles which formerly occupied a volume proportional to r^2h now occupy a volume proportional to

$$(r+u)^2 h\left(1 + \frac{du}{dr}\right),$$

or nearly proportional to

$$(r^2 + 2ru)h\left(1 + \frac{du}{dr}\right), \quad \text{or to } r^2 h\left(1 + \frac{2u}{r} + \frac{du}{dr}\right).$$

Consequently, if the elasticity be as the m^{th} power of the density, the elasticity

$$= \text{original elasticity} \times \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{2u}{r} + \frac{du}{dr}\right)^m}$$

$$= \text{original elasticity} \times \left(1 - m\frac{2u}{r} - m\frac{du}{dr}\right) \text{ nearly.}$$

The original elasticity would support in opposition to the force of gravity a column of air whose height is H. Supposing the section of the column to $= 1$, its volume is H, and its mass is $H \times$ mass of volume 1; and the original elasticity, estimated as an accelerating force, is $gH \times$ mass of volume 1: hence the elasticity in the disturbed state

$$= \text{mass of volume } 1 \times gH \times \left(1 - m\frac{2u}{r} - m\frac{du}{dr}\right).$$

all the little waves which originate from the different points of AB are in the same phase: hence we may express the disturbance which the little wave from the part δz produces at G by

$$c\delta z \frac{1}{ZG} \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - ZG)\right\}.$$

If then we take a portion of the column as disturbed, whose original length $= k$, the excess of the elastic force at one end above that at the other

$$= \text{mass of volume } 1 \,.\, mgH \,.\, k \,.\, \frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{2u}{r} + \frac{du}{dr}\right) \text{ nearly:}$$

and the mass is mass of volume k: hence the equation for the disturbance of the particles is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} = mgH \frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{2u}{r} + \frac{du}{dr}\right), \quad = v^2 \frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{2u}{r} + \frac{du}{dr}\right).$$

To solve this equation, let $y = r\int_r u$;

$$\text{then } \frac{d^2y}{dr^2} = 2u + r\frac{du}{dr}; \quad \text{also } \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = r\int_r \frac{d^2u}{dt^2};$$

and the equation becomes

$$\frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{1}{r}\cdot\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}\right) = v^2 \frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{1}{r}\cdot\frac{d^2y}{dr^2}\right);$$

$$\text{whence } \frac{1}{r}\cdot\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = \frac{v^2}{r}\cdot\frac{d^2y}{dr^2} + \chi''(t),$$

$$\text{and } \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} - v^2\frac{d^2y}{dr^2} = r\cdot\chi''(t).$$

Solving this partial differential equation,

$$y = r\cdot\chi(t) - \phi(vt - r) + \psi(vt + r)$$

$$\text{and } u = \frac{d}{dr}\left(\frac{y}{r}\right) = +\frac{\phi(vt-r)}{r^2} + \frac{\phi'(vt-r)}{r} - \frac{\psi(vt+r)}{r^2} + \frac{\psi'(vt+r)}{r}.$$

If we suppose the wave to travel outwards only,

$$u = \frac{1}{r}\phi'(vt - r) + \frac{1}{r^2}\phi(vt - r).$$

$$\text{If } \phi(vt - r) = -a\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r) + A\right\},$$

$$\phi'(vt - r) \text{ will} = \frac{2\pi a}{\lambda}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r) + A\right\},$$

and the disturbance

$$= \frac{2\pi a}{\lambda r}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r) + A\right\} - \frac{a}{r^2}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r) + A\right\}.$$

This may be put under the form

$$c\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r) + A - C\right\},$$

Expanding,

$$ZG = r - \cos\theta \,.\, z + \frac{\sin^2\theta}{2r} z^2 + \&c.$$

If z be so small, and r so large, that $\frac{z^2}{2r}$ will never exceed a fraction of λ, (or even if it amounts to several multiples of λ), the terms after the second may be omitted. Then the disturbance produced by one little wave is

$$\frac{c\delta z}{ZG} \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r + \cos\theta \,.\, z)\right\}:$$

and the sum of all the disturbances is

$$c\int_z \frac{1}{ZG} \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r + \cos\theta \,.\, z)\right\}.$$

In the integration we should produce no sensible error if we put r for ZG, and this makes the sum

$$\frac{c}{r}\int_z \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r + \cos\theta \,.\, z)\right\}.$$

Integrating, it is

$$\frac{-c\lambda}{2\pi r\cos\theta}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r + \cos\theta \,.\, z)\right\},$$

and taking this from $z = -b$ to $z = +b$, the disturbance at G is

$$\frac{c\lambda}{2\pi r\cos\theta}\left[\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r - \cos\theta \,.\, b)\right\} - \cos\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left\{(vt - r + \cos\theta \,.\, b)\right\}\right]$$

$$= \frac{c\lambda}{\pi r\cos\theta} \,.\, \sin\frac{2\pi b\cos\theta}{\lambda} \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r)\right\}.$$

---

where $c = \sqrt{\left(\frac{4\pi^2a^2}{\lambda^2r^2} + \frac{a^2}{r^4}\right)} = \frac{2\pi a}{\lambda r}\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{\lambda^2}{4\pi^2r^2}\right)}$, and $\tan C = \frac{\lambda}{2\pi r}$.

The expression for c shews that at a considerable distance the coefficient will be inversely as r: and as from $r = 0$ to $r = \infty$, C decreases from $\frac{\pi}{2}$ to 0, it appears that the wave is accelerated as it goes on, and ultimately gains a quarter of the length of a wave on the space which it would have described with the uniform velocity v or $\sqrt{(mgH)}$.

This represents a vibration whose maximum is

$$\frac{c\lambda}{\pi r \cos\theta} \cdot \sin\frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda}.$$

25. We shall now proceed to compare the values of this expression for different values of θ.

Case 1. Suppose λ much greater than b. (This will generally be the case with sound, as for all audible sounds λ varies from a few inches to several feet.)

Here $\frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda}$ will be a small arc, and will not differ much from its sine: putting the arc for the sine, the maximum of vibration becomes

$$\frac{c\lambda}{\pi r \cos\theta} \cdot \frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda}, \quad \text{or } \frac{2cb}{r},$$

which is the same for all values of θ.

Case 2. Suppose λ much smaller than b. (This will generally be the case with light.)

For the part nearly opposite to the entering wave, $\cos\theta$ is very small, and

$$\frac{c\lambda}{\pi r \cos\theta} \cdot \sin\frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda} = \frac{2cb}{r}.$$

In other parts the disturbance is 0 when

$$\frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda} = \pm\pi, \quad \text{or} = \pm 2\pi, \quad \text{or} = \pm 3\pi, \text{ \&c.},$$

that is, when

$$\cos\theta = \pm\frac{\lambda}{2b}, \quad \text{or} = \pm\frac{2\lambda}{2b}, \quad \text{or} = \pm\frac{3\lambda}{2b}, \text{ \&c.}$$

Hence there is a succession of points in which there is absolute darkness. Of the intermediate parts, the brightest will be found (nearly) by making

$$\sin\frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda} = \pm 1:$$

$$\left(\text{omitting the value } \frac{2\pi b \cos\theta}{\lambda} = \pm\frac{\pi}{2}\right):$$

then the maximum of vibration is $\frac{c\lambda}{\pi r \cos\theta}$. Consequently the

intensity of light at the brightest part of one of the bright portions is to that of the part nearly opposite* to the entering wave, as $\frac{c^2\lambda^2}{\pi^2 r^2 \cos^2\theta}$ to $\frac{4c^2b^2}{r^2}$, or as λ^2 to $4\pi^2 . b^2 . \cos^2\theta$, or as $\frac{\lambda^2}{4\pi^2 b^2 \cos^2\theta}$ to 1. If $\frac{\lambda^2}{b^2}$ be so small as for light (for instance if $\lambda = 0{,}00002$ and $b = 0{,}1$ inch, $\frac{\lambda^2}{b^2} = \frac{1}{25000000}$), it is plain that the value of this ratio will be extremely small when $\cos\theta$ has any sensible value, and we may say without perceptible error that, except nearly opposite to the entering wave, there will be complete darkness all round.

26. If in the investigation we had included the terms depending on z^2, we should merely have had a very small addition to

$$\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r + \cos\theta . z),$$

and this addition would not sensibly have altered in value while $\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - r + \cos\theta . z)$ increased by 2π. It will easily be seen that in Case 1 this would have produced no effect, and in Case 2 the maxima of brightness and the absolute darkness would only have been shifted a little way; their number, relative position, and the intensity of light, remaining sensibly the same*. And if for ZG we had put its more accurate value $r - \cos\theta . z$, the terms added to the expression would not have been sensible.

27. The conclusion in Case 2 may also be obtained thus. In fig. 41 divide AB into a number of equal parts Aa, ab, bc, &c. such that the distance of A from G is less than that of a by $\frac{\lambda}{2}$: that of a less than that of b by $\frac{\lambda}{2}$; and so on. The waves from corresponding parts of Aa and ab are, at starting, in the same phase. Consequently when they reach G, the wave from a part

* We shall hereafter consider cases in which these terms are sensible.

of Aa is in advance of that from the corresponding part of ab by $\frac{\lambda}{2}$, or they are in opposite phases, and therefore, by (15), they destroy each other. Thus every part of Aa destroys a corresponding part of ab, and therefore the whole effect of Ab is 0. Similarly the whole effect of bd is 0; &c. Thus if the number of parts be even, there is no vibration produced at G: if it be odd, there is only the vibration produced by the last of the small parts. But, for the position nearly in front of the wave, all the parts are nearly at the same distance, and the vibration is produced by the added effects of all the small waves coming from every part of AB. If Case 1 be considered in the same way, it appears that the difference of the paths of the waves from different parts of the opening is so small in proportion to the length of a wave, that all when they fall on G may be considered to be in the same phase, and therefore every part of the semicircle is in the same state of vibration.

28. The conclusions at which we have arrived are very important as removing the original objection to the undulatory theory of light. It was objected that if light were produced by an undulation similar to that producing sound, it ought to spread in the same manner as sound: that if light coming from a bright point entered a room by a small hole, it ought (instead of going on straight to illuminate a spot on the opposite side) to spread through the room in the same manner as a sound coming in the same direction and through the same hole. The answer appears in the results of the last investigation: the length of the waves of air is much greater than the aperture, that of the waves of light much less: and the same investigation which shews that in the former case the sound ought to spread equally in all directions, shews that in the latter the light ought to be insensible except nearly in front of the hole. We have reason to think that when sound passes through a very large aperture, or when it is reflected from a large surface (which amounts nearly to the same thing) it is hardly sensible except in front of the opening, or in the direction of reflection.

29. Our conclusion with regard to light is also important as removing one source of doubt in several succeeding investiga-

tions. In our ignorance of the law of intensity of the vibrations propagated from a center in different directions, we have supposed the intensity equal in all directions: and yet with this supposition we have found that when the aperture is much larger than λ, there is no sensible illumination except nearly in the direction in which the wave was going before it reached the aperture. The same would be true if the intensity diminished according to some function of the angle made with the original direction of the wave. Since then the illumination is (as far as the senses will be able to judge) nothing, except the obliquity is small, whatever be the function, we may assume that function of any form most convenient, provided that it does not alter rapidly in the neighbourhood of the original direction, and does not increase considerably as the angle of obliquity increases.

30. From the result of this investigation it appears also that the motion of every small part of the wave is perpendicular to the front of the wave. For in fig. 40 that part of the wave which passes through the orifice AB illuminates only that part of the semi-circle which is defined by drawing a straight line perpendicular to the front: and in the same manner if we had covered AB and opened another orifice, we should have found that the only illumination was on the part determined by drawing a straight line through the new orifice perpendicular to the front. In this we see the origin of the idea of rays of light. The reader is particularly requested to observe that this theorem is proved only by the demonstration of the proposition above, and depends entirely on this assumption, that the waves of light move with the same velocity in all directions. We shall hereafter speak of cases in which the motion of the wave is not perpendicular to its front.

It will readily be seen that the whole of this applies as well to the motion of the small parts of a wave whose front is not plane.

PROP. 9. To explain the reflection of light on the undulatory theory.

31. We shall again refer to the motion of sound for an analogical illustration of this point. In fig. 42 let $ABCD$ be

the front of a wave (which for simplicity we suppose plane, every part moving in parallel directions) advancing in the direction BB' or CC'' and meeting the smooth wall $C''B'$. Then it appears from the investigation of sound* that after any part of

---

* Let x, y, z, be the original co-ordinates of any particle of air: and at the time t let them be $x+X$, $y+Y$, $z+Z$. Then the particle which originally had for co-ordinate $x+\delta x$ will at the time t have

$$x+\delta x+X+\frac{dX}{dx}\delta x \text{ nearly};$$

or the distance between two particles in the direction of x, which was originally δx, is, at the time t, $\delta x\left(1+\frac{dX}{dx}\right)$ nearly. Similarly the distances in the directions of y and z which were originally δy and δz are at the time t,

$$\delta y\left(1+\frac{dY}{dy}\right) \text{ and } \delta z\left(1+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right).$$

Consequently, the air which occupied the rectangular parallelopiped whose sides were δx, δy, δz, now occupies the parallelopiped, nearly rectangular, whose sides are

$$\delta x\left(1+\frac{dX}{dx}\right),\quad \delta y\left(1+\frac{dY}{dy}\right),\quad \delta z\left(1+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right).$$

And if the elasticity (represented by the pressure upon a unit of surface) was originally P, and varied as (density)^m, (m being nearly $\frac{4}{3}$), the elasticity of the air in this parallelopiped is nearly

$$P\left(1-m\frac{dX}{dx}-m\frac{dY}{dy}-m\frac{dZ}{dz}\right).$$

This then is the expression for the elasticity of the air about that point whose co-ordinates were originally x, y, z: the alteration of elasticity being supposed small.

Consequently, at the time t, the elasticity about that point whose co-ordinates were originally $x+h$, y, z, is

$$P\left(1-m\frac{dX}{dx}-m\frac{dY}{dy}-m\frac{dZ}{dz}\right)+P\frac{d}{dx}\left(1-m\frac{dX}{dx}-m\frac{dY}{dy}-m\frac{dZ}{dz}\right)h.$$

And therefore if there is a small parallelopiped whose sides were h, k, l, the excess of pressure which urges it on in the direction of x is

$$-P\frac{d}{dx}\left(1-m\frac{dX}{dx}-m\frac{dY}{dy}-m\frac{dZ}{dz}\right)h\,.\,kl$$

$$=mPhkl\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dX}{dx}+\frac{dY}{dy}+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right).$$

And if W were the original weight of the air in volume 1, the weight of this parallelopiped is $W\,.\,hkl$. Consequently the acceleration in direction of x is

$$\frac{mPhkl}{Whkl}\cdot\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dX}{dx}+\frac{dY}{dy}+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right)\times \text{acceleration produced by gravity}$$

$$=\frac{mP}{W}g\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dX}{dx}+\frac{dY}{dy}+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right);$$

this wave, as BCD, has come in contact with the wall, it will proceed in the direction $C''E$, making with the wall the same

---

$$\text{or } \frac{d^2(x+X)}{dt^2} = \frac{mP}{W}\, g\, \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dX}{dx}+\frac{dY}{dy}+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right).$$

Let H be the height of a homogeneous atmosphere: by which we mean that the pressure P would support a column whose height is H and base 1, weighing W for every unit of volume: that is $P = HW$. Then

$$\frac{d^2(x+X)}{dt^2}, \text{ or } \frac{d^2X}{dt^2} = mgH\, \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dX}{dx}+\frac{dY}{dy}+\frac{dZ}{dz}\right):$$

and similar equations hold for y and z. These are the general equations for the small disturbances of air.

These equations cannot be integrated generally: but a number of different integrals can be found, adapted to particular purposes. For instance, putting $mgH = v^2$,

$$X = \frac{x-a}{r^2}\phi'(vt-r) + \frac{x-a}{r^3}\phi(vt-r)$$

$$+ \frac{x-a}{r^2}\psi'(vt+r) - \frac{x-a}{r^3}\psi(vt+r)$$

$$\text{where } r = \sqrt{(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+(z-c)^2};$$

with similar expressions, *mutatis mutandis*, for Y and Z. This is the general expression for spherical waves going to and from the center whose co-ordinates are a, b, c.

$$\text{Again } \begin{aligned} X &= \cos\alpha \,.\, \phi(vt - x\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma), \\ Y &= \cos\beta \,.\, \phi(vt - x\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma), \\ Z &= \cos\gamma \,.\, \phi(vt - x\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma), \end{aligned}$$

where $\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1$; $\cos\alpha$, $\cos\beta$, $\cos\gamma$, being positive or negative.

This is the equation for plane waves going in the direction of a line which makes with x, y, and z, the angles α, β, γ.

It is particularly to be remarked that the sum of any number of these solutions may be taken for one solution: and also that the functions may be discontinuous, with the limitation mentioned in the note to (22).

Now suppose the plane wave to be interrupted by a wall, whose equation is $x = c$. Since the particles of air constantly remain in contact with the wall, we must have $X = 0$ when $x = c$, whatever be the values of y and z. It is plain that the form above given for X will not satisfy this condition, and that no single function would do so. But with the addition of another function we may satisfy it. Thus, if

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \cos\alpha \,.\, \phi(vt - x\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma) \\ &\quad - \cos\alpha \,.\, \phi\{vt + (x-2c)\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma\}, \\ Y &= \cos\beta \,.\, \phi(vt - x\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma) \\ &\quad + \cos\beta \,.\, \phi\{vt + (x-2c)\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma\}, \\ Z &= \cos\gamma \,.\, \phi(vt - x\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma) \\ &\quad + \cos\gamma \,.\, \phi\{vt + (x-2c)\cos\alpha - y\cos\beta - z\cos\gamma\}. \end{aligned}$$

The differential equations are satisfied, and the condition $X = 0$ when $x = c$ is also satisfied. The first terms of X, Y, Z, taken together, express the original wave,

angle as CC'', but on the opposite side of the perpendicular: and the front of the wave will be $B'C'D'$, making with the wall the same angle as BCD, but on the opposite side: the extent of vibration &c. remaining as before. And this appears to justify us sufficiently in the assertion that the waves of light may be reflected in the same manner. With regard to the smoothness of the reflecting surface, all that is necessary is that the elevations or depressions do not exceed a fraction of λ.

32. The following is a more independent method of arriving at the same result, and appears satisfactory. In fig. 43 let ABC be the front of a wave going in the direction of AA'. As soon as each successive small portion of this has reached the surface, we will consider it as causing an agitation in the ether next in contact with the surface, and will suppose that agitation to be the center of a spherical wave, diverging with the same velocity as the plane wave {see the note to (24)}. Let us now consider the state of things when A has reached A'. B has reached B' some time before: and would at this time have arrived at D if not interrupted. Consequently it has diverged into a sphere ab whose radius $= B'D$. C reached the surface at a still longer time previous, and would at this time have reached E: it has therefore diverged into a sphere cd whose radius is CE. The same holds for every intermediate point. If now we examine the nature of the front of the grand wave formed by all these little waves, we see that it must be the plane which touches all the spheres, and which evidently makes the same angle with CA' that $A'E$ or AC makes with it, but inclined the opposite way. The motion of the wave, which is perpendicular to this front, makes therefore the same angle after reflection as before.

It must be remarked that this demonstration is in no wise affected if we suppose *all* the spherical waves to be accelerated

---

whose direction makes angles α, β, γ, with x, y, z; the second express the new or reflected wave, whose direction makes angles $180^0 - \alpha$, β, and γ with x, y, and z. This shews that the direction of reflection follows the law commonly enounced as the law of reflection. The intensity of the reflected wave is the same as that of the incident wave. This is the theory of oblique echos.

or retarded by the same quantity. If then we should find occasion hereafter to assert that in some cases the direction of vibration is changed at reflection, or (which amounts to the same) that half the length of a wave must be added to or subtracted from the path after reflection, the demonstration of the law of reflection will not be invalidated.

PROP. 10. To explain the refraction of light on the undulatory theory.

33. We must assume that the waves are transmitted with smaller velocity in glass, water, &c., and in all substances commonly called refracting media, than in what we call vacuum. This assumption appears in the highest degree probable, whether we suppose the vibrations in the refracting media to be vibrations of the same ether, incumbered by its connexion with the particles of the refracting body, or we suppose the vibrations to be vibrations of the particles of the refracting body.

34. Now in fig. 44, let ABC be the front of a wave going in the direction of AA'. As soon as each successive small portion of this wave has reached the surface CA' of the refracting medium, suppose it to cause an agitation in the ether or the particles of the medium at that surface, and consider that agitation to be the center of a wave, which diverges in a spherical form in the medium with a less velocity than the velocity of the plane wave. Consider the state of the particles when A has arrived at A'. B has reached B' some time before, and would have arrived at D if not interrupted by the refracting medium. Consequently it has diverged into a sphere ab whose radius is less than $B'D$ in the proportion in which the velocity is diminished. Let μ be the number expressing this proportion: then

$$B'b = \frac{1}{\mu} B'D.$$

Similarly C has reached the surface still longer before, and has therefore diverged into a sphere whose radius

$$Cc = \frac{1}{\mu} CE.$$

The same holds for every intermediate point. Now the front of the grand wave formed by all these little waves is evidently the plane which touches all the spheres; and therefore makes with the refracting surface an angle whose sine is $\frac{Cc}{CA'}$. This angle is equal to the angle which the direction of the wave (or the perpendicular to its front) makes with the perpendicular to the refracting surface: it is therefore the angle of refraction. Consequently

$$\sin . \text{refraction} = \frac{Cc}{CA'}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } \sin . \text{incidence} = \frac{CE}{CA'}.$$

$$\text{Therefore } \frac{\sin \text{ refraction}}{\sin \text{ incidence}} = \frac{Cc}{CE} = \frac{1}{\mu}.$$

35. It is easily seen that a similar demonstration applies when the waves are transmitted in the second medium with greater velocity than in the first: which we suppose to represent the circumstances of light coming out of a refracting medium into vacuum. If in this case, fig. 45, the angle of incidence is so great that Cc (the radius of the wave diverging from C) is greater than CA', that is, if $AA' . \mu$ is greater than CA' or $\frac{AA'}{\sin ACA'}$, or $\sin ACA'$ is greater than $\frac{1}{\mu}$, or $\sin .$ incidence greater than $\frac{1}{\mu}$, no plane can be found which touches all the spheres. There will be no grand wave therefore: and the little waves causing displacements in different directions will very soon destroy each other. Thus there will be no refracted ray. This is a well known law of optics.

It must be remarked that the demonstrations of (32) and (34) are not free from obscurity, for the reason mentioned in (22).

36. There is another phænomenon attendant on refraction which we can explain but vaguely, though it is easily seen that the explanation is not without foundation. The particles of ether next in contact with the glass, (if we suppose glass to be

the refracting medium) communicating motion to the denser ether within the glass, may be considered as small bodies striking large ones. Now if they followed the same law as elastic bodies*, a certain motion would be communicated to the large bodies, and the small bodies would lose their original motion and would receive a motion in the *opposite* direction. The motion of the struck bodies causes the refracted wave of which we have just spoken; the motion remaining to the striking bodies will cause a reflected wave in the ether. The magnitude of the reflection will plainly be diminished as the difference between the particles is diminished. Thus refraction is always accompanied by reflection: and the reflection is more feeble as the vibrating media on both sides of the surface approach more nearly to the same state: that is, as the refractive index approaches to 1. This is experimentally true.

37. If, however, the rays are passing from glass to air, we must represent the state of the particles by large bodies striking small ones. The small bodies receive a motion, which causes the refracted wave: the large bodies will preserve a part of their motion in the *same* direction, and this will cause a reflected wave. Thus when light passes through glass there will be reflection at both surfaces. But there is this difference between the two reflections: one is caused by a vibration in the same direction as that of the incident ray, and the other by a vibration in the direction opposite to that of the incident ray. We shall find this distinction important in explaining a fundamental experiment (65).

The same thing may be thus shewn. If we suppose a mass of glass to be cracked and the separated parts to be again pressed close together, there will be no more reflection than from the interior of a mass of glass: that is, there will be none at all. Still as there are really two surfaces in contact, each of which

* The motions would follow this law, if the particles acted on one another like those of air by condensation or rarefaction of the fluid between them: or in the manner which Fresnel supposes (to be alluded to hereafter): or in any way which makes the force equal at equal distances of the particles. We are not therefore making the forced supposition of particles impinging on each other.

separately reflects, we must suppose the reflections to be of such a kind that they destroy each other. Consequently if the vibration from one reflection be in one direction, that from the other reflection must be in the opposite direction.

38. We shall now state an obscurity in the undulatory theory of refraction which has not yet been entirely elucidated, but which does not appear to present any particular difficulty. The index of refraction we have found to be the proportion of the velocities of the waves in vacuum and in the refracting medium. Now it is well known that, experimentally, the refractive index is different for rays of different colours, that is, for waves whose lengths are different. It is evident then that waves whose lengths are different are transmitted with different velocities either in vacuum*, or in the refracting medium, or in both. The difference does not depend on the extent of vibration of each particle, for the refractive index is the same for a bright light as for a feeble one, but merely on the length of the wave, or on the time of vibration†. We are unable to explain this; and one analogy which has guided us in several instances fails here entirely. There is no such difference between the velocities of transmission of long and short waves of air. The sounds of the deepest and the highest bells of a peal are heard at any distance in the same order. Happily another analogy comes in to our aid, derived from undulations in which the vibrations

* If the velocities for different rays were different in vacuum, the aberration of stars (which is inversely as the velocity) would be different for different colours, and every star would appear as a spectrum whose length would be parallel to the direction of the Earth's motion. We know of no reason to think that this is true.

† The difficulty might perhaps be explained thus. We have every reason to think that a part of the velocity of sound depends on the circumstance that the *law of elasticity* of the air is altered by the *instantaneous* development of latent heat on compression, or the contrary effect on expansion. Now if this heat required *time* for its development, the quantity of heat developed would depend on the time during which the particles remained in nearly the same relative state, that is on the time of vibration. Consequently the law of elasticity would be different for different times of vibration, or for different lengths of waves: and therefore the velocity of transmission would be different for waves of different lengths. If we suppose some cause which is put in action by the vibration of the particles to affect in a similar manner the elasticity of the medium of light, and if we conceive the degree of development of that cause to depend on time, we shall have a sufficient explanation of the unequal refrangibility of differently coloured rays.

have a much greater similarity than those of air to the vibrations which appear to constitute light. The velocities of waves of water vary with the length of the wave, the long waves always travelling with the greatest speed. In this respect there is a fair analogy between the relations of the velocity to the length of the wave, in glass or other refracting substances (as regards luminiferous waves), and in water (as regards waves of water). But the proportion of the velocity of a long wave of water to a short one is not invariable, but depends upon the depth of the water*. In this may be found an analogy, of a less satisfactory kind, to the change in the relation of the velocity to the length of the wave, on comparing one refractive medium with another. We may remark, however, that if we calculate theoretically the velocity of a wave of light, on the supposition that the distance between the particles of ether is a sensible quantity in comparison with the length of a wave, we find that the velocity is different for waves of different lengths. (See the note to Art. 103). The very close approximation to observed proportions of velocity which has already been attained by calculations of this kind seems to offer good reason for supposing that the explanation will be made complete. On the whole, we regard the slight imperfection of the theory as deserving attention, but not as offering the most trifling difficulty to the general adoption of the theory.

PROP. 11. To explain the course of waves after reflection or refraction.

39. First we must give a construction for determining the front of a wave at any time from knowing its front at any previous time. In fig. 46 let AB be a small part of the curved front of a wave: and draw Aa, Bb, normals to the front, and let

---

* Putting k for the depth of the water, λ for the length of a wave, the velocity of the waves is

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{g\lambda}{2\pi}\cdot\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi k}{\lambda}}-e^{-\frac{2\pi k}{\lambda}}}{e^{\frac{2\pi k}{\lambda}}+e^{-\frac{2\pi k}{\lambda}}}\right)}.$$

See *Encyclopædia Metropolitana, Tides and Waves*, Art. 168.

$Aa = Bb$. Then by (30), the motion of the part A of the wave is in the direction Aa, and the motion of the part B is in the direction Bb: and their velocities are equal. Consequently after a short time the front of the wave will pass through a, b, and through every other point as c, d, &c., determined by this condition that Cc, Dd, &c. are perpendicular to the original front and are equal to Aa. Now by (30) the motion of the part of the wave at a will be perpendicular to the new front $abcd$. But as $Bb = Aa$, it is easily seen that ab is parallel to AB and is therefore perpendicular to Aa: and therefore the motion of the new front will be in the direction of Aa produced: that is in the same straight line as before. In the same manner it would appear that all its succeeding motion will be in the same straight line. And the velocity will be equal for all points of the wave. Thus we arrive at the following construction. Draw AP, BQ, CR, DS, &c. normals to the original front, and make AP, BQ, CR, DS, &c. equal to the space through which a wave will travel in the time for which the form is required. The front of the wave at that time will be the locus of the points P, Q, R, S. The relation between the old and the new front is therefore this: every line which is normal to one is also normal to the other. If we confine ourselves to space of two dimensions, this is comprehended in saying that they have the same evolute. This applies equally to the motion of a wave in vacuum or in glass, or in any other refracting medium, provided that the velocity of a wave's motion is equal in all directions.

40. Suppose now (to fix upon a particular case) a plane wave is received on a reflecting paraboloid whose axis is parallel to the direction of the wave's motion, or perpendicular to its front. In fig. 47 let AD be one position of the wave, $A'D'$ a succeeding position, and so on. From (31) and (32) it appears that the front of each small part of the wave makes the same angle with the surface after reflection as before, but on the opposite side of the normal: and that consequently the line representing the direction of the wave's motion, and which is perpendicular to the front, makes the same angle with the normal before and after reflection. As all the lines representing the direction of motion of different points of the wave are parallel

to the axis of the paraboloid, those which represent the direction of motion after reflection (by a well known theorem) converge to F the focus. Consequently the form of the wave, which by (39) is the surface to which all these lines are normals, is a spherical surface whose center is F. Thus then at one time $A'D'$ will be the front of the wave: at a later time BC will be the form of that part which is not reflected, and $A''B$, $D''C$, the form of those parts which are reflected, the part incident at A' having been reflected to A'': at a still later time, bc will be the form of the part not reflected, and $A'''B'b$, $D'''C'c$ the form of the reflected parts, the part incident at A' having been reflected to A''', and that incident at B having been reflected to B', &c.: and when the whole has been reflected, all trace of the original form of the wave will be lost, and the existing form will be only a spherical surface of which F is the center. The concave spherical wave goes on towards F, contracting till it passes through that point, when all the different small parts cross, and then they form a diverging spherical wave of which F is the center.

It is easily seen that an explanation of exactly the same kind applies to the effects of refraction, the velocity of the wave being supposed to be altered in a given ratio as in (33) and (34), and the direction of the motion of each part of the wave being always supposed perpendicular to that part of the front.

41. We have explained the motion of the wave after reflection or refraction as if the terminating edges of the front of the wave did not cause any disturbance beyond the line perpendicular to the front: as if for instance there were a certain disturbance all along the line $A''B$ which afterwards arrived at $A'''B'$ without causing the least disturbance in the ether beyond A'''. This however is not true, and we shall hereafter take into account the effects of the lateral spread of the waves.

42. From the nature of the demonstration it appears that whenever all the small parts of a wave meet each other after reflection or refraction, they have described paths corresponding to equal times. In the case of reflection, this is the same as

saying that the whole paths (consisting of the sum of those before and after reflection) must be the same for every point: but in the case of refraction a different statement is necessary. For if the waves move in glass (or other refracting media) with a velocity which is $\frac{1}{\mu} \times$ that in vacuum, then the path in glass, as compared with that in air, is not to be estimated by its length, but by $\mu \times$ its length. And therefore when all the small parts of a wave meet each other after refraction, the sum of the path in vacuum and $\mu \times$ the path in glass is the same for all.

43. This principle may be advantageously applied in the solution of some problems. Suppose for instance it is required to find the form of a refracting surface BP, fig. 48, which shall cause the wave diverging from A to converge to C. The principle above mentioned gives us at once this equation,

$$AP + \mu . PC = \text{constant}:$$

which is the same as Newton's in the 97th Proposition of the Principia.

44. A *focus* therefore may be defined as the point to which a spherical wave converges, or from which it diverges. It may also be defined as the point at which little waves from all parts of a great wave arrive at the same time. It will readily be seen that our demonstration and our definition include equally real and imaginary foci, in the same manner as the theorems and definitions of common optics.

45. It appears from (40) that the wave, after converging to a point, diverges from it in the same manner as if that point were a center of excitation, or a source of light. In all experiments therefore in which it is wished to produce a series of waves diverging from a point, the image of the Sun's disk, produced by a lens of short focal length, may be used instead of a luminous body.

PROP. 12. A series of waves diverges from a point A, fig. 49, and falls upon two plane mirrors BC, CD, inclined at a very small angle α, and touching each other in the line whose pro-

jection on the paper is C: to find the intensity of illumination on different parts of the screen EF where the streams of light reflected from the two mirrors are mixed.

46. Let G be the virtual image (determined by the rules of common optics) of A, produced by reflection at BC: H that produced by reflection at CD. Then instead of supposing the light to have come originally from A, we may without error in our results suppose it to originate in two sources at G and H. For the course of any part of a wave after reflection from BC is just the same as if it had come from G; and the length of its path measured in a straight line from G is the same as the sum of the paths of the incident and reflected ray, since the distance of A and of G from the point of reflection is the same (thus the part of the wave which is incident at N is reflected in the direction NM which is the same as GN produced, by (32) and (39), and the length of its path $AN+MN$ is the same as GM, since $AN=GN$). But that the circumstances may be exactly represented, we must suppose the fictitious wave to start from G at the same time at which the real wave starts from A, and to have the same intensity. Similarly we must suppose the other wave to start from H at the same time and with the same intensity as that which starts from A; and therefore at the same time and with the same intensity as that which starts from G. The problem is therefore reduced to this: to find the intensity of illumination on the screen when waves start at the same instant and with the same intensity from G and H.

47. Join GH, bisect it in L, and produce LC to meet the screen in O: let M be any point at a small distance from O; $AC=a$: $CO=b$. Since the angle between the mirrors is α, it is easily seen that $GCH=2\alpha$. And since $GC=AC=HC$, CL is perpendicular to GH and bisects the angle GCH. Consequently

$$GL=LH=a\sin\alpha: \text{ and } LO=a\cos\alpha+b.$$

Then for the disturbance produced at M by the wave coming from G {taking the same expression as in (8) and (24)} we have

$$\frac{c}{GM}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-GM+A)\right\}.$$

The variation in the value of GM is so small that without sensible error we may in the coefficient put GO or LO instead of GM; and thus the disturbance produced at M by the wave coming from G is

$$\frac{c}{LO}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-GM+A)\right\}.$$

Similarly the disturbance produced by the wave coming from H is

$$\frac{c}{LO}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-HM+B)\right\}.$$

B however must be equal to A, because the waves on leaving G and H respectively are in the same phase at the same time (which is represented by putting 0 for GM and HM, and requires B to be the same as A). Hence the whole disturbance of the ether at M is

$$\frac{c}{LO}\left[\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-GM+A)\right\}+\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-HM+A)\right\}\right],$$

$$\text{or } \frac{2c}{LO}\cos\left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda}(GH-HM)\right\}.\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt-\frac{GH+HM}{2}+A\right)\right\},$$

and consequently, by (23), the intensity of the light at M is represented by

$$\frac{4c^2}{LO^2}\cos^2\left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda}(GM-HM)\right\}.$$

48. Now

$$GM^2=LO^2+(GL+OM)^2=(a\cos\alpha+b)^2+(a\sin\alpha+OM)^2,$$

and consequently

$$GM=a\cos\alpha+b+\tfrac{1}{2}.\frac{(a\sin\alpha+OM)^2}{a\cos\alpha+b}\text{ nearly.}$$

Similarly

$$HM=a\cos\alpha+b+\tfrac{1}{2}.\frac{(a\sin\alpha-OM)^2}{a\cos\alpha+b}\text{ nearly:}$$

therefore

$$GM-HM=\frac{2a\sin\alpha.OM}{a\cos\alpha+b}=\frac{2a\sin\alpha}{a+b}OM\text{ nearly:}$$

and therefore the brightness at M is represented by

$$\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}\cos^2\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\cdot\frac{a\sin\alpha}{a+b}\,OM\right).$$

This varies according to the position of M.

(1) Suppose M to coincide with O: $OM=0$: and the brightness is $\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}$. This is its greatest value.

(2) Suppose $OM=\pm\frac{a+b}{a\sin\alpha}\cdot\frac{\lambda}{4}$.

$$\text{Then } \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\cdot\frac{a\sin\alpha}{a+b}\,OM=\pm\frac{\pi}{2},$$

and the brightness

$$=\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}\cos^2\frac{\pi}{2}=0,$$

or there is absolute blackness.

(3) Suppose $OM=\pm\frac{a+b}{a\sin\alpha}\cdot\frac{2\lambda}{4}$.

$$\text{Then } \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\cdot\frac{a\sin\alpha}{a+b}\,OM=\pm\pi,$$

and the brightness

$$=\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}\cos^2\pi=\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2},$$

the same as when $OM=0$.

(4) Suppose $OM=\pm\frac{a+b}{a\sin\alpha}\cdot\frac{3\lambda}{4}$:

$$\text{then } \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\cdot\frac{a\sin\alpha}{a+b}\,OM=\pm\frac{3\pi}{2},$$

and the brightness

$$=\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}\cos^2\frac{3\pi}{2},$$

or there is darkness.

(5) Generally, if

$$OM = \pm 2n \frac{a+b}{a \sin \alpha} \cdot \frac{\lambda}{4}, \; n \text{ being a whole number,}$$

the brightness has its maximum value $\frac{4c^2}{(d+b)^2}$:

and if $$OM = \pm (2n+1) \frac{a+b}{a \sin \alpha} \cdot \frac{\lambda}{4},$$

there is blackness.

Between these values of OM, the brightness has intermediate values.

Thus it appears that there will be a series of points at equal distances along the line IK, at which the illumination is alternately maximum and minimum, beginning at O where it is maximum; and that at the points of minimum illumination the light is actually evanescent. Now considering the screen as extended in the direction perpendicular to the paper, and observing that the investigation which applies to M applies to every point in the line perpendicular to the paper at M, it is easily seen that the appearance on the screen is a series of bars alternately bright and black.

49. We have supposed the plane of reflection to be perpendicular to the edge where the two mirrors touch. If however it had been inclined in any manner, the result would have been precisely the same.

50. We have not yet considered the effect of a mixture of light of different colours in the same pencil (such as exists in white sun-light, and in most kinds of artificial light). According to the suppositions made in (23) this is represented by supposing the light to consist of different series of waves which may or may not be intermixed, the value of λ being different for each different series: and by (19) these different series cannot affect one another, and therefore the effect of each in producing illumination of its peculiar colour is to be considered separately, and the sum of the effects of all the illuminations to be taken afterwards.

51. Now if we examine the expression for the illumination, it will appear that at O the intensity is $\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}$ whatever be the value of λ. Consequently, that point is illuminated by each of the differently coloured lights, with four times the quantity of illumination which there would have been if the light from one mirror only had fallen upon it. But there is no other point in similar circumstances. For if we put λ', λ'', λ''', &c. for the lengths of waves of differently coloured lights, λ' being the smallest and corresponding to the blue light, and c', c'', c''', &c. for the coefficient of displacement, and if we consider the point where $OM = \frac{a+b}{a \sin a} \cdot \frac{\lambda'}{2}$, we find

for the intensity of the blue light, $\frac{4c'^2}{(a+b)^2}$,

for the intensity of the next kind of light, $\frac{4c''^2}{(a+b)^2} \cos^2 \frac{\pi\lambda'}{\lambda''}$,

for the intensity of the third kind of light, $\frac{4c'''^2}{(a+b)^2} \cos^2 \frac{\pi\lambda'}{\lambda'''}$;

and so on. If they had been in the same proportion as in the light reflected from a single mirror, the intensities would have been

$$\frac{4c'^2}{(a+b)^2}, \quad \frac{4c''^2}{(a+b)^2}, \quad \frac{4c'''^2}{(a+b)^2}, \text{ &c.}$$

The different colours therefore are not mixed in the same proportion as in the original light. The same may be shewn of any other point: and thus if the original light be white, no point of the screen will be illuminated with white light except the middle of the central bright bar.

52. The same thing may be thus shewn. The breadth of the bright and dark bars for each colour is proportional to the value of λ for that colour (48). Consequently the bars are narrower for the blue rays than for the green: narrower for the green than for the yellow; &c. by (23). The line passing through the paper at O is however to be the center of a bright

bar of each colour. In that line therefore there will be a perfect mixture of all the colours: at a line on each side there will be nearly a total absence of all: but beyond this the red bars will sensibly overshoot the yellow and green and blue bars, and the more as we recede farther from the center. Consequently the bars will be coloured, the bright bars being red on the outside and blue on the inside. And after two or three bars, the outside of the red bars will mingle with the inside of the next blue bars, and there will be no such thing as a black bar. This will continue as we recede from O till the colours become mixed in such a way that it is impossible to distinguish the bars, and the whole is a mass of tolerably uniform white light. This indistinctness of bars, and ultimately their disappearance, always take place when one of the mixed streams of light has described a path longer than that of the other by several lengths of waves. In general, when white light is used, no bars can be seen where the length of one path exceeds that of the other by ten or twelve times the mean value of λ.

53. The quantity λ, as we have mentioned in (23), is so small that it could not be made sensible to the eye. But $\sin\alpha$ may be made as small as we please, and consequently $\frac{a+b}{a\sin\alpha}\lambda$ may be made large enough to be easily visible to the eye. It is by this and similar means that the lengths of waves for differently coloured light have been measured.

54. The agreement of the facts of experiment with these conclusions from the theory is most complete. And this may be considered as the fundamental experiment on which the undulatory theory is established. It is perfectly certain in this experiment that the mixture of two streams of light, whether white or coloured, does produce black. The bars next the central white are remarkably black: and the dark bars beyond the next bright bars are also very black: and upon intercepting either stream of light all these dark bars become bright. It appears plain that no theory of emission of particles can explain this fact: and it seems difficult to conceive that any theory except that of undulations can explain it.

55. We shall occasionally have to mention the system of bright and dark bars described in (52). We shall generally call them the *fringes of interference.*

56. The reader is particularly requested to observe that, when $a+b$ or the distance of G and H from the screen is given, the breadth of the bars for any given colour is inversely as $a \sin \alpha$ (48), or inversely as GH. And generally, the nearer together are the two sources of waves which interfere, the broader are the fringes of interference.

PROP. 13. A series of waves diverging from a point A, fig. 50, falls upon the prism BCD, each of whose sides BC, CD, makes the small angle α with the third side: to find the intensity of illumination on different parts of the screen EF where the two streams are mixed.

57. The investigation is exactly similar to that of the last proposition, with this difference only. By common Optics,

$$AG = AH = CA\,(\mu - 1) \sin \alpha \text{ nearly}, = (\mu - 1)\, a \sin \alpha \text{ nearly}.$$

In the former investigation we had $GL = LH = a \sin \alpha$. Consequently where we find $a \sin \alpha$ in the former investigation we may put $(\mu - 1)\, a \sin \alpha$, and we shall have the correct expression for this case. Thus the intensity of illumination

$$= \frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2} \cos^2 \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{(\mu - 1)\, a \sin \alpha}{a+b}\, OM \right\},$$

and the interval at which the centers of the bright and black bars succeed each other is

$$\frac{a+b}{(\mu - 1)\, a \sin \alpha} \cdot \frac{\lambda}{4}.$$

58. The results are exactly similar to those obtained in (50), (51), (52), (the absolute breadth of the bars being different) with the following exception. The breadth of the bars for different colours does not (as before) depend simply on λ, but on $\frac{\lambda}{\mu - 1}$. Now μ varies with λ: it is greatest for the blue rays or those for which λ is least, and less for those for which

λ is greater, through all the different colours. Consequently the breadths of the bars formed by the different colours are not in the same proportion as before, but are more unequal. The mixture of colours therefore at the edges of those bars which are a little removed from the central bar is not the same as before; and after a smaller number from the center, the colours of the different bars are mixed with each other (52).

PROP. 14. Suppose that in the experiment of Prop. 12 or 13, Articles (46) to (57), a thin piece of glass PQ is placed in the path of one of the pencils of light: to find the alteration produced in the fringes of interference.

59. Let T be the thickness of the glass: and consider the case of Prop. 12, Article (46). It is plain that, as in (42), the length of that portion of the path of one pencil which traverses the glass is not to be estimated by its linear measure, but by $\mu\times$ that measure, inasmuch as the motion of the wave is slower in glass than in air by that proportion. We must consider therefore that, instead of describing the space T in air, the wave describes a space equivalent to μT in air; and therefore the effect of the glass is the same as that of lengthening the path by $(\mu-1)\,T$. Instead of HM in the expression of (47) we must put

$$HM+(\mu-1)\,T:$$

and the intensity of light at M is now

$$\frac{4c^2}{LO^2}\cos^2\left[\frac{\pi}{\lambda}\{GM-HM-(\mu-1)\,T\}\right],$$

which as in (48) is changed to

$$\frac{4c^2}{(a+b)^2}\cos^2\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(\frac{a\sin\alpha}{a+b}\,OM-\frac{\mu-1}{2}\,T\right)\right\}:$$

and the places of maximum brightness are now determined by making

$$\frac{a\sin\alpha}{a+b}\,OM-\frac{\mu-1}{2}\,T=0,\quad\text{or}\quad=\pm\frac{\lambda}{2},\quad\text{or}\quad=\pm\lambda,\ \&c.:$$

or by making

$$OM = \frac{a+b}{2a \sin \alpha} (\mu - 1) T, \quad \text{or } = \frac{a+b}{2a \sin \alpha} \{(\mu - 1) T \pm \lambda\},$$

$$\text{or } = \frac{a+b}{2a \sin \alpha} \{(\mu - 1) T \pm 2\lambda\}, \text{ \&c.}$$

60. Now if $\mu - 1$ were the same for rays of all colours, it is evident that these expressions would be precisely the same as those found for the bright points in (48), increased by a constant

$$\frac{a+b}{2a \sin \alpha} (\mu - 1) T.$$

That is, the whole system of fringes would be shifted towards K, without any other alteration. As $\mu - 1$ is not constant, this is not strictly true: the fringes are shifted, but there is also an alteration of colour arising from the difference of spaces (not even proportional to the breadth of the bars) through which the differently coloured bars are shifted.

61. It will readily be imagined that if a piece of common glass were interposed, the lengths

$$GM \text{ and } HM + (\mu - 1) T$$

would, on account of the exceeding smallness of λ, differ in every point between I and K by many multiples of λ, and therefore (52) no fringes would be visible. The experiment may however be successfully performed by taking two pieces of glass from the same plate, whose difference of thickness will be very small, and placing one in the path of one pencil, and the other in the path of the other. But it may be better performed by taking a pretty uniform piece of glass, cutting it across the middle, and holding one half perpendicular to the path of one pencil, and the other half inclined to the path of the other. It is evident that the obliquity of passage produces the same effect as the use of a thicker piece of glass: and by gentle inclination the difference of paths may be made as small as we please.

62. The difference of paths is to be calculated thus. In fig. 51 let $WXYZ$ be the path of a portion of the wave perpendicular to one half, and $RSTV$ the path of another portion (which for simplicity we suppose moving in a parallel direction) through the other half whose angle of inclination is β. Let T' be the thickness. From T draw Ts perpendicular to RS produced. Since the front of the wave in air, when the portion in question is incident at S, is perpendicular to RS at the point S; and since, when the portion has reached T, the front of the wave in air is perpendicular to TV at the point T; it is plain that the wave has advanced in the direction perpendicular to its front only through the space Ss. But the time which has been occupied in this progress is the time of describing ST in glass or $\mu . ST$ in air. Consequently the retardation (measured by the space which the wave would have advanced further, if it had moved in air) is

$$\mu . ST - Ss.$$

And the retardation of the portion incident at X is

$$(\mu - 1)\, XY \text{ or } (\mu - 1)\, T'.$$

Therefore the upper pencil is more retarded than the lower by

$$\mu . ST - Ss - (\mu - 1)\, T'.$$

The angle of incidence is β: and if γ be the angle of refraction,

$$ST = \frac{T'}{\cos \gamma}, \text{ and } Ss = \frac{T' . \cos (\beta - \gamma)}{\cos \gamma}.$$

$$\text{also } \mu = \frac{\sin \beta}{\sin \gamma};$$

$\therefore$ the retardation =

$$T' \left\{ \frac{\sin \beta}{\sin \gamma \cos \gamma} - \frac{\cos (\beta - \gamma)}{\cos \gamma} - \frac{\sin \beta}{\sin \gamma} + 1 \right\}$$

$$= 2\, T' \left(\sin^2 \frac{\beta}{2} - \mu . \sin^2 \frac{\gamma}{2} \right).$$

If β be small,

$$\sin \frac{\gamma}{2} = \frac{1}{\mu} \sin \frac{\beta}{2} \text{ very nearly,}$$

and the retardation

$$= 2T'\left(1-\frac{1}{\mu}\right)\sin^2\frac{\beta}{2} \text{ nearly.}$$

This is to be substituted for $(\mu-1)\,T$ in the expressions of (59) and (60); and the resulting quantity $\frac{a+b}{a\sin\alpha}\,T'\left(1-\frac{1}{\mu}\right)\sin^2\frac{\beta}{2}$ measures the shift of the central bar towards the side on which is the inclined glass.

63. These conclusions are fully supported by experiment: and this is important as establishing one of the fundamental points of the undulatory theory of Optics, namely that light moves more slowly in glass than in air. The whole of the investigation of the last proposition depends on this assumption.

PROP. 15. A series of waves is incident upon two plates of glass separated by a very small interval (fig. 52); part of the light is reflected at the lower surface of the first glass and part at the upper surface of the second glass: and these portions interfere: to find the intensity of the mixture.

64. Let AB be the path of one portion which is refracted in the direction BC, and of which one part is reflected in the direction CD, while another part is refracted at C and falls on the second plate at E, is partially reflected to F, and partially refracted in the direction FG parallel to CD. Draw FD perpendicular to CD. Then the path which one wave has described in going from C to D, measured by the equivalent path in vacuum, is $\mu\,.\,CD$: while that which the other has described in going from C to F (where its front has the same position as the front of that which has reached D) is $CE+EF$. The excess of the latter above the former is

$$CE+EF-\mu\,.\,CD.$$

Let D be the distance of the plates, γ the angle of incidence at C, β the angle of refraction. Then

$$CE+EF=\frac{2D}{\cos\beta}:$$

and $$CD=FC\,.\sin\gamma=2D\,.\tan\beta\,.\sin\gamma;$$

$$\text{also } \mu = \frac{\sin\beta}{\sin\gamma};$$

therefore the excess

$$= \frac{2D}{\cos\beta} - \frac{2D\sin^2\beta}{\cos\beta} = 2D\cos\beta.$$

If then the extent of vibration in the light reflected from C be $A\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}$, where the distance x is measured by the equivalent path in air; then the extent of vibration in the wave reflected from E will be represented by

$$B\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x-2D\cos\beta)\right\};$$

and the whole intensity will be the intensity of the light in which the displacement of a particle is represented by the sum of these quantities. It must be recollected that by the reasoning in (37) we are entitled to suppose that the signs of A and B are different.

65. We have here however omitted the consideration of that part of the light which is reflected from F to H, again partially reflected at H and partially refracted at K: and the other parts successively reflected. It is plain that (putting V for $2D\cos\beta$) the part refracted at K will be retarded $2V$: that at the next point $3V$: and so on. Now suppose that when light goes from glass to air, the incident vibration being

$$a\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\},$$

the reflected vibration is

$$b\,.\,a\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\},$$

and the refracted vibration

$$c\,.\,a\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\},$$

and suppose that when light goes from air to glass, the coefficient is multiplied by e for the reflected vibration, and by f for the refracted vibration. Then if the coefficient for the light passing in the direction BC is a, that for the vibration reflected at C will be

ab: that for the vibration refracted at F, $acef$: that for the vibration refracted at K, ace^3f: and so on. Thus the whole vibration is

$$ab\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}+acef\left[\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x-V)\right\}\right.$$

$$\left.+e^2\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x-2V)\right\}+e^4\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x-3V)\right\}+\&c.\right]$$

$$=a\left[b\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}+cef\frac{\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x-V)\right\}-e^2\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}}{1-2e^2\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}V\right)+e^4}\right].$$

We shall anticipate so much of succeeding investigations (see Art. 128 and 129) as to state that, whether the vibrations are in or perpendicular to the plane of incidence*, there is reason to think that

$$\frac{e}{b}=-1, \text{ and } cf=1-e^2.$$

Using these equations to simplify the expression; resolving it into the form

$$F\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}+G\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}$$

as in (17); and, as in (17) and (23), taking F^2+G^2 to represent the intensity, we find for the brightness of the reflected light

$$\frac{4a^2e^2\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{\lambda}V\right)}{1-2e^2\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}V\right)+e^4}, \text{ or } \frac{4a^2e^2\sin^2\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}D\cos\beta\right)}{(1-e^2)^2+4e^2\sin^2\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}D\cos\beta\right)}.$$

66. The supposition that we have made is that of a thin plate of air or vacuum inclosed between plates of glass, or mica, &c. But it is plain that the investigations apply in every respect to a thin plate of fluid with air on both sides: as for instance a soap-bubble. To examine particular cases,

---

* When there are vibrations of both these kinds, it is necessary to calculate the illumination from each, and to take their sum.

(1) If $D=0$, the intensity $=0$ whatever be the value of λ. Thus it is found that where plates of glass &c., are absolutely in contact or very nearly so, there is no reflection: and when a soap-bubble has arrived at its thinnest state, just before bursting, the upper part appears perfectly black.

(2) The intensity is also 0 if

$$D\cos\beta=\frac{\lambda}{2},\ \lambda,\ \frac{3\lambda}{2},\ \&c.$$

But when light of different colours is mixed, it will be impossible to make the light of all the different colours vanish with the same value of D, and thus no value of D will produce perfect blackness.

(3) If $D\cos\beta=\frac{\lambda}{4}$, and if we take the value of λ corresponding to the mean rays (as the green-yellow), the intensity of light in the different colours will be nearly in the same proportion as in the incident light, or the reflected light will be nearly white. But this will not take place on increasing the value of D, or the reflected light will be coloured; till D is become so large that for a great number of different kinds of light, corresponding to very small differences of λ, $\frac{4D\cos\beta}{\lambda}$ has the values of successive odd numbers; the different kinds of light will then be mixed in nearly equal proportions, and the mixture will be white.

PROP. 16. In the circumstances of the last proposition, to find the intensity of the light refracted into the second plate.

67. It is readily seen that the coefficient of the vibration refracted at E is $a.cf$: that of the vibration refracted at H is $a.ce^2f$: and so on. Also the wave entering at H is behind that which entered at E by the same quantity V as before. Hence the sum of the vibrations will be

$$a.cf\left[\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}+e^2\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x-V)\right\}+\&c.\right]$$

$$=a.cf\frac{\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}-e^2\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x+V)\right\}}{1-2e^2\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}V\right)+e^4}.$$

Treating this in the same manner as in (65), the intensity of light is found to be

$$\frac{a^2(1-e^2)^2}{(1-e^2)^2+4e^2\sin^2\frac{\pi V}{\lambda}}.$$

68. The proportional variations of this expression are much smaller than those of the expression of (65); its greatest value being a^2, and its least $\frac{a^2(1-e^2)^2}{(1+e^2)^2}$. The absolute variations are however exactly the same: and in fact the sum of the two expressions is always $=a^2$. This is expressed by saying that one of the intensities is *complementary* to the other. This relation spares us the necessity of examining every particular case of the value of D. If for any particular value of D the expression of (65) is maximum for any particular colour, that of (67) is minimum for the same colour: and so on. Thus if for some value of D the expression of (65) gave maximum intensity of red light, less of yellow, the mean intensity of green, less of blue, and nothing of violet (the mixture of which would produce a rich yellow): then the expression of (67) would give the minimum intensity of red light, more of yellow, the mean intensity of green, more of blue, and the maximum of violet (the mixture of which would produce a greenish blue diluted with much white). It is to be remarked that in the case of transmitted light the colours can never be so vivid as in reflected light, because none of the colours ever wholly disappears, as no values of D and λ will make the expression of (67) $=0$.

PROP. 17. Two glass prisms, right-angled or nearly so, (fig. 53) are placed with their hypotenusal sides nearly in contact: light is incident in such a manner that the angle of internal incidence at the hypotenusal side is nearly equal to the angle of total reflection: part of the light is reflected through the first prism, and part is refracted through the second: to find the expressions for the intensities.

69. The investigations and results are exactly the same as those of Prop. 15 and 16: but this case deserves a particular

consideration for the following reason. In this case there is no difficulty (which there is in the others) in making the angle of incidence approach as near as we please to the angle of total reflection, and consequently no difficulty in making β (which is the angle of refraction from the first prism into air) as nearly $= 90^\circ$ as we please, or $\cos\beta$ as small as we please. Consequently $D\cos\beta$ may be made extremely small without making D very small. Now if $D\cos\beta$ in Prop. 15 and 16 were *moderately* small $\left(\text{as for instance } \frac{1}{1000}\text{inch}\right)$, we might find about twenty different colours of light dividing the colours from red to violet by tolerably equal shades, each of which, in consequence of the difference of their values of λ, would make

$$\sin^2\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} D\cos\beta\right) = 1:$$

and between these colours, the expression would have all its changes of value. The mixture of light would therefore be produced by taking parcels from all the various shades of colour, and mixing them in the same proportion as in common light; and therefore would be nearly white. But when $D\cos\beta$ in this proposition is *extremely* small (for instance less than any value of λ, or not many times greater), not one colour perhaps, or not more than one or two, can be found, for which

$$\sin^2\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} D\cos\beta\right) = 1:$$

and thus there will be an excess of some colours, and the light will be strongly coloured.

70. There is also another reason. By a small change of the angle of incidence we produce a small change in γ; and

$$\text{as } \frac{d\beta}{d\gamma} = \frac{\tan\beta}{\tan\gamma},$$

this produces a great change in β (β being nearly $= 90^\circ$). Consequently the change in $D\cos\beta$ is considerable: and the expression for the intensity of light will be varied much. If then the light of the clouds fall in different directions on this combination of prisms, or if the sun-light be made (by a lens) to

fall on it in different directions, the light both reflected and transmitted will form on a screen bands of light. As the position and breadth of these bands are different for every different colour, the mixture forms a very splendid series of coloured bands, in which the succession of colours differs from that produced by almost every other phenomenon of interferences. The same effect may be seen as well if the combination of prisms be held to the eye: when the light coming in different directions to the eye will exhibit the bands in great perfection.

PROP. 18. Two convex lenses of small curvature, or a convex lens and plane glass (fig. 54), are placed in contact: to find the intensity of the light reflected and transmitted at any point M.

71. The two surfaces at M will be so nearly parallel that we may without sensible error consider them as parallel*: and therefore the investigations of Prop. 15 and 16 apply. It is only necessary to find an expression for D in terms of OM, O being the point where the lenses are in contact. Let r be the radius of the lower surface of the upper lens: r' that of the upper surface of the lower lens. Then D or the separation at M is the sum of the versed sines of two circles whose radii are r and r', to the arcs whose chord is OM: and therefore

$$D = \frac{OM^2}{2r} + \frac{OM^2}{2r'} \text{ nearly} = OM^2 \left(\frac{1}{2r} + \frac{1}{2r'}\right).$$

The intensity of reflected light (65) will therefore be

$$\frac{4a^2e^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{\lambda} V\right)}{(1-e^2)^2 + 4e^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{\lambda} V\right)},$$

* As we shall suppose in the investigation that the separation of the two surfaces at M is but a small multiple of λ, it is evident that for the points immediately about M the defect from parallelism will produce an error amounting only to a very small fraction of λ: and therefore the small waves in (32) will have their effects added together in the direction in which light is reflected from one of the surfaces, nearly in the same degree as in the direction in which it is reflected from the other surface.

and that of the transmitted light (67) will be

$$\frac{a^2(1-e^2)^2}{(1-e^2)^2+4e^2\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{\lambda}V\right)},$$

where $V = OM^2.\cos\beta.\left(\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}\right)$.

(1) The reflected light vanishes when

$$V = 0, \text{ or } = \lambda, \text{ or } = 2\lambda, \&c.,$$

or when

$$OM^2 = 0, \text{ or } = \frac{\lambda\sec\beta}{\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}}, \text{ or } = \frac{2\lambda\sec\beta}{\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}}, \text{ or } = \frac{3\lambda\sec\beta}{\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}}, \&c.$$

Consequently for any particular colour there will be a dark spot at O and a series of dark rings of which O is the center, and the squares of whose diameters are in the proportion of 1, 2, 3, &c.

(2) The most brilliant light is reflected when

$$OM^2 = \frac{\lambda\sec\beta}{2\left(\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}\right)}, \text{ or } = \frac{3\lambda\sec\beta}{2\left(\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}\right)}, \text{ or } = \frac{5\lambda\sec\beta}{2\left(\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}\right)}, \&c.$$

Consequently between the dark rings there are bright rings, the squares of the diameters of whose most brilliant parts are in the proportion of

$$\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, \&c.$$

(3) The diameters of these rings are *cæteris paribus* as $\sqrt{(\sec\beta)}$. Consequently on inclining the incident ray, or on depressing the position of the eye by which they are viewed, the diameters of the rings increase.

(4) For differently coloured rays, the diameters of the rings vary as $\sqrt{(\lambda)}$. The different colours which are mixed in white light produce therefore a series of rings whose

diameters are different, and which overlapping each other produce a series of colours analogous to those mentioned in (52). The colours at last become mixed to such a degree that no traces of rings are visible.

(5) The diameters of the rings vary, *cæteris paribus*, as

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}\right)}}.$$

To make the rings large, therefore, $\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{r'}$ must be small, or r and r' must be large. If the lower glass be plane, or $\frac{1}{r'}=0$, the diameters of the rings vary as $\sqrt{(r)}$.

(6) The transmitted light, just as in (68), produces rings complementary to those produced by the reflected light. The center therefore is bright, and is surrounded by a dark ring, which is followed by bright and dark rings alternately, which soon become coloured and finally cease to be visible. The diameter of each ring is the same as that of the ring of opposite character produced by reflected light.

72. These are commonly called *Newton's rings*, from the circumstance that the measures which suggested the most important part of Sir Isaac Newton's theory of light, and which have served in a great degree for the foundation of all theories, were made by him on those rings. The colours of the successive rings, arising from the different mixtures of all the colours producing white light, are commonly called *Newton's scale of colours*. In describing them it is usual to describe them by the number of the ring (including the central spot in the reckoning) in which they occur. For instance, the blue of the second order is not the blue which surrounds the central black spot, but the blue which surrounds the first black ring. This scale is valuable, as giving us an invariable series of colours which can at any time be produced without difficulty. The colours described in (52) as resulting from the experiment of Prop. 12 (46) would do

as well, but the adjustment of the apparatus for that experiment is much more troublesome.

PROP. 19. Light diverging from a center A (fig. 55), is allowed to pass through a small aperture BC: to find the illumination on different points of the screen DE.

73. Suppose the wave diverging from A to proceed in a spherical form till it reaches CB: there suppose every part of it (within the limits of the aperture) to be the origin of a little wave proportional in intensity to the superficial extent of that part. By the principle of (21), the sum of the disturbances which each of these produces at M is to be taken for the whole disturbance there: and this being found, the intensity of light will be found as in the preceding problems. Draw AO perpendicular to the screen, and consider it as the axis of z, A being the origin: let x be in the plane of the paper perpendicular to AO, and y perpendicular to the paper. Let $AB=a$, $AO=a+b$: (then b is very nearly the distance of the screen from the aperture:) let x, y, and z be co-ordinates of any point P of the wave, and p and q co-ordinates of any point M of the screen in the directions of x and y (that in the direction of z being $a+b$). Suppose the front of the wave divided by lines perpendicular to the paper into narrow parallelograms, x and $x+\delta x$ being the co-ordinates of two of these lines: and suppose the parallelogram whose breadth is δx to be divided into small parallelograms by lines parallel to the paper, the co-ordinates of two lines being y and $y+\delta y$, or the surface of the small parallelogram formed by the intersection of these with the others being $\delta x \,.\, \delta y$. Then the displacement which the little wave originating at this surface would cause at M will be represented by

$$\delta x \,.\, \delta y \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\,(vt - PM)\right\}.$$

$$\text{Now } PM^2 = (p-x)^2 + (q-y)^2 + (a+b-z)^2,$$

which, since $x^2+y^2+z^2=a^2$,

$$\text{is } = (a+b)^2 + a^2 + p^2 + q^2 - 2px - 2qy - 2\,(a+b)\,z.$$

$$\text{But } z = \sqrt{(a^2-x^2-y^2)} = a - \frac{x^2}{2a} - \frac{y^2}{2a} \text{ nearly,}$$

as x and y are supposed to be small even at their greatest values: therefore

$$-2(a+b)z = -2a^2 - 2ab + \frac{a+b}{a}x^2 + \frac{a+b}{a}y^2:$$

and $$PM^2 = b^2 + p^2 + q^2 + \frac{a+b}{a}x^2 - 2px + \frac{a+b}{a}y^2 - 2qy,$$

whence

$$PM = b + \frac{p^2+q^2}{2b} + \frac{a+b}{2ab}x^2 - \frac{p}{b}x + \frac{a+b}{2ab}y^2 - \frac{q}{b}y \text{ nearly,}$$

$$\text{or} = b + \frac{p^2+q^2}{2(a+b)} + \frac{a+b}{2ab}\left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2$$

$$+ \frac{a+b}{2ab}\left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)^2.$$

Put B for $b + \frac{p^2+q^2}{2(a+b)}$;

then the displacement caused by the little wave is

$$\delta x.\delta y.\sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left\{vt - B - \frac{a+b}{2ab}\left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2 - \frac{a+b}{2ab}\left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right]$$

$$= \delta x.\delta y.\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\}.\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\lambda}.\frac{a+b}{ab}\left\{\left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right]$$

$$- \delta x.\delta y.\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\}.\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\lambda}.\frac{a+b}{ab}\left\{\left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right].$$

Call this $\delta x.\delta y.W$: and let v be the sum of all the disturbances for the slice between the lines whose ordinates are x and $x + \delta x$: w that for the whole surface. Since v increases by $\delta x.W.\delta y$ upon increasing y by δy,

$$\frac{dv}{dy} = \text{ultimate value of } \frac{\delta v}{\delta y} = \delta x.W,$$

$$\text{whence } v = \delta x \int_y W.$$

This integration is to be performed, and the limits of the values of y for the integral will be expressed in terms of x from a know-

ledge of the shape of the aperture. The effect of the narrow parallelogram being v or $\delta x \int_y W$, it is found in the same manner that the effect of the whole aperture is $\int_x \int_y W$. As $\sin \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)$ and $\cos \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)$ are not concerned in the integration, the whole displacement may be expressed thus:

$$\sin \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B) \int_x \int_y \cos \left[\frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left\{ \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b} \right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \right]$$

$$- \cos \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B) \int_x \int_y \sin \left[\frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left\{ \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b} \right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \right].$$

Let the integrals be E and F: then the whole displacement

$$= E \sin \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B) - F \cos \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B),$$

and hence {as in (14), (17), and (23)} the illumination is represented by $E^2 + F^2$.

74. Now

$$E = \int_x \int_y \left[\cos \left\{ \frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \times \cos \left\{ \frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \right.$$

$$\left. - \sin \left\{ \frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \times \sin \left\{ \frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \right];$$

proceeding therefore according to the precepts of (73), the first thing to be done is to find

$$\int_y \cos \left\{ \frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\} \text{ and } \int_y \sin \left\{ \frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(y - \frac{aq}{a+b} \right)^2 \right\}.$$

These integrals cannot generally be found in terms of y. Tables however have been formed* expressing the numerical value of the integrals,

$$\int_s \cos \frac{\pi s^2}{2} \text{ and } \int_s \sin \frac{\pi s^2}{2}$$

---

* Suppose U to be the function of unknown form which is the integral of S a

for different values of s, and there is no difficulty in applying them to the numerical expression of the *first* integral in our problem. But as the integral thus found is given in numbers, and not in an expression involving y and which can be expressed in terms of x, it is seldom possible to perform the second integration.

75. In certain cases however this may be effected. For example, suppose the aperture to be a parallelogram whose sides are $2e$ and $2f$ in the direction of x and y, the line AO passing through its center. Let

$$\frac{a+b}{\lambda ab}\left(y-\frac{aq}{a+b}\right)^2=\frac{s^2}{2};$$

$$\therefore\ y-\frac{aq}{a+b}=s\sqrt{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}},\ \text{and}\ \frac{dy}{ds}=\sqrt{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}};$$

$$\therefore\ \int_y \cos\left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda}\cdot\frac{a+b}{ab}\left(y-\frac{aq}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}=\sqrt{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}}\int_s \cos\frac{\pi s^2}{2};$$

and this is to be taken from $y=-f$ to $y=+f$,

or

$$\text{from } s=-\sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}}\left(f+\frac{aq}{a+b}\right)$$

$$\text{to } s=\sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}}\left(f-\frac{aq}{a+b}\right).$$

---

given function of s. Then the values of U corresponding to $s-h$ and $s+h$ are

$$U-\frac{dU}{ds}h+\frac{d^2U}{ds^2}\cdot\frac{h^2}{2}-\frac{d^3U}{ds^3}\cdot\frac{h^3}{2.3}+\&c.$$

$$\text{and } U+\frac{dU}{ds}h+\frac{d^2U}{ds^2}\cdot\frac{h^2}{2}+\frac{d^3U}{ds^3}\cdot\frac{h^3}{2.3}+\&c.$$

and therefore the value of the integral from $s-h$ to $s+h$ is

$$2\frac{dU}{ds}h+2\frac{d^3U}{ds^3}\cdot\frac{h^3}{2.3}+\&c.$$

$$\text{or } 2Sh+2\frac{d^3S}{ds^3}\cdot\frac{h^3}{2.3}+\&c.$$

which can be easily calculated: and by taking h small enough, one or two terms will be sufficient. In this way the values of the integral can be computed for successive limits, and the sum will be the integral up to any given value of s. A table of $\int_s \cos\frac{\pi s^2}{2}$ and $\int_s \sin\frac{\pi s^2}{2}$ will be given at the end of this Tract.

This will be the sum of the two numbers, in the table of $\int . \cos \frac{\pi s^2}{2}$, corresponding to

$$s = \sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}} \left(f + \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)$$

$$\text{and } s = \sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}} \left(f - \frac{aq}{a+b}\right).$$

Let these be A_1, A_2: and after proceeding in a similar way for the sine, let the numbers in the table of $\int . \sin \frac{\pi s^2}{2}$ corresponding to

$$s = \sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}} \left(f + \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)$$

$$\text{and } s = \sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}} \left(f - \frac{aq}{a+b}\right)$$

be B_1, B_2.

Then $E =$

$$\int_x \left[\sqrt{\left\{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}\right\}} (A_1 + A_2) \cos \left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right.$$

$$\left. - \sqrt{\left\{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}\right\}} (B_1 + B_2) \sin \left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right].$$

In the same manner $F =$

$$\int_x \left[\sqrt{\left\{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}\right\}} (A_1 + A_2) \sin \left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right.$$

$$\left. + \sqrt{\left\{\frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}\right\}} (B_1 + B_2) \cos \left\{\frac{\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{ab} \left(x - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)^2\right\}\right].$$

Integrating with respect to x in exactly the same manner between $x = -e$ and $x = +e$, and putting A_3, A_4, for the numbers in the table of $\int . \cos \frac{\pi s^2}{2}$ corresponding to

$$s = \sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}}\left(e + \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)$$

and $$s = \sqrt{\left\{\frac{2(a+b)}{\lambda ab}\right\}}\left(e - \frac{ap}{a+b}\right)$$

and B_3, B_4 for those in the table of $\int_s \sin \frac{\pi s^2}{2}$ corresponding to the same,

$$E = \frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}\left\{(A_1 + A_2)(A_3 + A_4) - (B_1 + B_2)(B_3 + B_4)\right\},$$

$$F = \frac{\lambda ab}{2(a+b)}\left\{(A_1 + A_2)(B_3 + B_4) + (B_1 + B_2)(A_3 + A_4)\right\}.$$

The intensity or $E^2 + F^2$

$$= \frac{\lambda^2 a^2 b^2}{4(a+b)^2}\left\{(A_1 + A_2)^2 + (B_1 + B_2)^2\right\} \cdot \left\{(A_3 + A_4)^2 + (B_3 + B_4)^2\right\}.$$

This expression (omitting the first factor) is the product of two factors, of which one depends entirely on q and the other depends entirely on p. If a certain value of p makes its factor small, every part of the screen for which p has that value will have a small intensity of light. A similar remark applies to the values of q which make the other factor small. Thus the screen will be crossed by bars of light of different intensity at right angles to each other.

*75. A nearly similar investigation applies to the investigation of the intensity in the shadow of an opake parallelogram with free passage for the light on all sides. It will be found that it is crossed by bars of light, the central bars being white.

76. Our limits will not allow us to examine in detail these cases. The discussion of the values for particular values of p and q depends entirely upon examination of the numerical results: and this must be done for a great number of values of p and q before any conjecture can be formed as to fringes, &c. about the edges. One of the simplest cases is, to find the

intensity of light produced by the shadow of a plate bounded by a straight line. If y is parallel to the edge, and x for the edge $= 0$, then the limits of the first integration are

$$\text{from } y = -\infty \text{ to } y = +\infty,$$

and those of the second

$$\text{from } x = 0 \text{ to } x = \infty.$$

This case has been fully considered by M. Fresnel, and he has arrived at this conclusion. If a plane be drawn through the bright point and the edge of the plate, and if the intersection of this with the screen be called the geometrical shadow: then on the dark side of the geometrical shadow the intensity of the light diminishes rapidly without increasing at all, and soon becomes insensible: but on the bright side the light increases and diminishes by several alternations before it acquires sensibly its full brightness, forming a succession of several bands on the bright side of the geometrical shadow. And as, for the same point, the limits for which the tabular numbers are taken are different for different values of λ, and as the factor of the whole varies with λ, the intensity of the differently coloured lights will be differently proportioned at different points, and thus the bands will be coloured, nearly as in (52). This phænomenon, known by the name of *Grimaldi's coloured fringes*, had long been observed, and an imperfect explanation was given by Newton. In Fresnel's *Mémoire sur la Diffraction* it was shewn, from accurate measures with various values of a and b, to be a consequence of the theory of undulations, (*Mémoires de l'Institut*, 1821).

77. Another instance is, if the form of the plate be a square *corner*, then besides the bands on the outside of the geometrical shadow there are seen within it hyperbolical curves as in fig. 56. The accurate investigation* may be performed as above: but

* In this and the preceding case, it is necessary to consider the effect produced by small waves diverging from distances sensibly different. In the investigation we suppose that the absolute effect of each of these is the same as the effect of a wave diverging from a surface of equal extent at a smaller distance. This is manifestly incorrect: but the inaccuracy produces no sensible error in the result, for the reason mentioned in (29).

a general explanation may be given thus. Let P and Q be points similarly situated on the two sides: the small waves diverging from their neighbourhood would, as in (48), produce bands by their interferences; and the breadth of these, by (56), would be inversely as the distance of P and Q. Consequently the nearer P and Q are taken to the solid angle, the broader will the bands be, and their form will therefore resemble the hyperbola. In this we have omitted the effects of interference of other portions of the light nearer to and further from the angle, but as the omitted parts would at different points produce effects nearly similar, it is probable that the general form of the curves will be similar to hyperbolas.

78. Another instance is, if the light fall on a very narrow slit, coloured bands of much greater breadth are thrown on the screen. The second case of (25) sufficiently explains their origin. If the slit be triangular, it is observed, (as was first remarked by Newton), that the bands are rectangular hyperbolas, the asymptotes being parallel and perpendicular to the axis of the triangle. This appears from the same investigation, as the intervals between the bands are inversely as b the breadth of the aperture, or inversely as the distance from the geometrical shadow of the triangle's vertex.

79. In the following instance we may find the intensity at one point without much trouble. Suppose the aperture in (73) to be a round hole: to find the intensity at that point of the screen which is the projection of its center. Divide the circle into rings, the inner and outer radii of one being r and $r+\delta r$, or its surface being $2\pi r\delta r$. The distance of every point of this ring from the point of the screen is

$$b+\frac{a+b}{2ab}r^2 \text{ nearly,}$$

and hence the whole displacement at the central point of the screen is

$$\int_r 2\pi r \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt-b-\frac{a+b}{2ab}r^2\right)\right\},$$

$$\text{or } \frac{\lambda ab}{a+b}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt-b-\frac{a+b}{2ab}r^2\right)\right\}.$$

If c be the radius of the hole, this is to be taken from $r = 0$ to $r = c$, and its value is

$$\frac{2\lambda ab}{a+b} \cdot \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - b - \frac{a+b}{4ab}c^2\right)\right\} \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{4ab}c^2\right).$$

The intensity of illumination is consequently

$$\frac{4\lambda^2 a^2 b^2}{(a+b)^2} \cdot \sin^2\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \cdot \frac{a+b}{4ab}c^2\right).$$

On referring to (71) it will be seen that this expression is nearly similar to the expression for the intensity of the reflected light in Newton's rings, considering the denominator in (71) as constant, and making

$$V = \frac{c^2(a+b)}{2ab}:$$

and consequently the colours are nearly the same for the same values of V. To obtain the colours corresponding to those of the inner rings, we must have V as small as possible, or $\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b}$ must be as small as possible, and therefore b must be as great as possible. On diminishing b, V increases. Consequently if we first place the screen at a very great distance and then bring it nearer to the aperture, the series of colours at the center will be the same as those found on tracing Newton's rings outwards: but as we cannot make $\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} = 0$, we cannot have all the orders beginning from the central black. This agrees with observation. For any other point of the screen, the intensity can be found only by the general method of (73).

*79. Instead of supposing a circular hole in a plate of unlimited extent, suppose the plate to be a small circular disk, with free passage for the light on all sides. The whole displacement will be expressed by the same formula

$$\int_r 2\pi r \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - b - \frac{a+b}{2ab}r^2\right)\right\};$$

but the limits of r will now be from c to ∞.

Let $\frac{\pi(a+b)}{\lambda ab}r^2 = s$: the expression becomes

$$\frac{\lambda ab}{a+b}\int_s \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-b)-s\right\};$$

and the limits of s are $\frac{\pi(a+b)}{\lambda ab}c^2$ and ∞. If we perform the integration in this state, we come upon the unintelligible symbol $\cos\infty$. To avoid this, and at the same time to represent an intensity of little waves slowly decreasing as the inclination increases, use the expression

$$\frac{\lambda ab}{a+b}\int_s \epsilon^{-fs}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-b)-s\right\},$$

where f may be so small that its effect through a considerable angle is almost insensible. The general integral is

$$\frac{\lambda ab}{(a+b)(1+f^2)}\epsilon^{-fs}\left[\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-b)-s\right\}-f\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-b)-s\right\}\right];$$

which vanishes for $s=\infty$, however small f may be. Omitting the trifling effect of f in the first value of s, the limited integral becomes

$$-\frac{\lambda ab}{a+b}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt-b-\frac{a+b}{2ab}c^2\right)\right\};$$

and the intensity of light is $\frac{\lambda^2a^2b^2}{(a+b)^2}$, in which the symbol c does not appear. The intensity of light, therefore, at the center, is the same as if $c=0$; that is, is the same as if there were no disk in the way.

For the intensity of light at any excentric point, the reader is referred to the *Philosophical Magazine*, 1841, January.

PROP. 20. Every thing remaining as in the last problem, except that, close to the hole, a lens is placed of such focal length that light diverging from A will be made to converge to O: to find the intensity of light on the screen.

80. From (44) it appears that the form of the front of the wave after refraction by the lens will be a sphere of which O is

the center. Let O, fig. 57, be the origin of co-ordinates: p and q the co-ordinates of a point M on the screen: x, y, z, those of P, z being parallel to OA. Then

$$PM^2 = (p-x)^2 + (q-y)^2 + z^2.$$

But by the equation to the surface of a sphere,

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = b^2:$$

hence

$$PM^2 = b^2 + p^2 + q^2 - 2px - 2qy,$$

$$\text{and } PM = b + \frac{p^2+q^2}{2b} - \frac{px}{b} - \frac{qy}{b} \text{ nearly.}$$

The terms depending on x^2 and y^2 will be insensible, as they will be multiplied by the very small quantities p^2 and q^2. Put B for $b + \frac{p^2+q^2}{2b}$: then, as in the first and last parts of (73), the whole displacement at M is

$$\int_x \int_y \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{px}{b} + \frac{qy}{b}\right)\right\}.$$

This expression is much simpler than that of (73), as there are no terms involving x^2 and y^2. The first integration can always be performed: it gives

$$-\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{px}{b} + \frac{qy}{b}\right)\right\};$$

and if y' and y'' are the least and greatest values of y for a given value of x (given by the equation to the aperture in terms of x), the first integral is, between these limits,

$$\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}\left[\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{px}{b} + \frac{qy'}{b}\right)\right\} - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{px}{b} + \frac{qy''}{b}\right)\right\}\right]$$

$$= \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\}\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}\left[\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px + qy')\right\} - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px + qy'')\right\}\right]$$

$$- \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\}\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}\left[\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px + qy')\right\} - \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px + qy'')\right\}\right].$$

Let the integrals of the terms within the brackets (with respect

to x and between the proper limits) be P and Q: then the coefficients of

$$\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-B)\right\} \text{ and } \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-B)\right\},$$

$$\text{are respectively } \frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}P \text{ and } -\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}Q,$$

and the intensity of the light is $\frac{b^2\lambda^2}{4\pi^2 q^2}(P^2+Q^2)$.

81. Ex. Let the aperture be a parallelogram whose sides are $2e$ and $2f$ in the direction of x and y. Here

$$y'=-f, \quad y''=+f:$$

$$\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px+qy')\right\}-\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px+qy'')\right\}$$

$$=\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px-qf)\right\}-\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px+qf)\right\}$$

$$=2\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}px\right).\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}qf\right),$$

the integral of which is

$$-\frac{b\lambda}{\pi p}\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}qf\right).\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}px\right);$$

which from $x=-e$ to $x=+e$ gives $P=0$. Also

$$\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px+qy')\right\}-\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px+qy'')\right\}$$

$$=\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px-qf)\right\}-\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}(px+qf)\right\}$$

$$=-2\cos\frac{2\pi px}{b\lambda}.\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{b\lambda},$$

the integral of which is

$$-\frac{b\lambda}{\pi p}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{b\lambda}.\sin\frac{2\pi px}{b\lambda},$$

which from $x=-e$ to $x=+e$ gives

$$Q=-\frac{2b\lambda}{\pi p}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{b\lambda}.\sin\frac{2\pi pe}{b\lambda}.$$

Hence the intensity is

$$\frac{b^4\lambda^4}{\pi^4p^2q^2}\sin^2\frac{2\pi qf}{b\lambda}.\sin^2\frac{2\pi pe}{b\lambda},$$

$$\text{or } 16e^2f^2\left(\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi qf}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{b\lambda}\right)^2\left(\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi pe}\sin\frac{2\pi pe}{b\lambda}\right)^2.$$

This expression is maximum when $p=0$, $q=0$: so that there is a bright point in the place of the image determined by common Optics. It is 0 when p is any multiple of $\frac{b\lambda}{2e}$, or when q is any multiple of $\frac{b\lambda}{2f}$. This shews that the screen is traversed by rectangular dark bars at equal intervals, the intervals in the direction of the length of the parallelogram being shorter than the others. For a given value of p, the brightness is greatest when $q=0$, or when q has one of the values which makes $\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi qf}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{b\lambda}$ maximum. Thus it appears that there will be a brilliant point at the center; a four-rayed cross through the center, the rays being interrupted at intervals; and a series of less bright patches in square arrangement in the angles of the cross: also the distances from the center are greater for the red rays than for the blue. When the parallelogram is narrow, the bright parts in the direction of one side form one of the kinds of spectra described by Fraunhofer.

82. Let the aperture be an equilateral triangle. Take x in the direction of the perpendicular to one side, and let the angle opposite this side be the origin of co-ordinates: let e be the whole length of the perpendicular. Then

$$y'=-x\tan 30^\circ:\quad y''=+x\tan 30^\circ.$$

Hence

$$P=\int_a\left[\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi x}{b\lambda}(p-q\tan 30^\circ)\right\}-\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi x}{b\lambda}(p+q\tan 30^\circ)\right\}\right],$$

$$= \frac{b\lambda}{2\pi(p - q\tan 30^0)} \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi x}{b\lambda}(p - q\tan 30^0)\right\}$$

$$- \frac{b\lambda}{2\pi(p + q\tan 30^0)} \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi x}{b\lambda}(p + q\tan 30^0)\right\},$$

the value of which from $x = 0$ to $x = e$ is found by putting e for x. And

$$Q = \int_x \left[\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi x}{b\lambda}(p - q\tan 30^0)\right\} - \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi x}{b\lambda}(p + q\tan 30^0)\right\}\right],$$

the value of which from $x = 0$ to $x = e$ is

$$\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi(p - q\tan 30^0)}\left[1 - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p - q\tan 30^0)\right\}\right]$$

$$- \frac{b\lambda}{2\pi(p + q\tan 30^0)}\left[1 - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p + q\tan 30^0)\right\}\right].$$

The sum of the squares is $\left(\text{omitting the factor } \frac{b^2\lambda^2}{4\pi^2}\right)$

$$\frac{1}{(p - q\tan 30^0)^2}\left[2 - 2\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p - q\tan 30^0)\right\}\right]$$

$$+ \frac{1}{(p + q\tan 30^0)^2}\left[2 - 2\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p + q\tan 30^0)\right\}\right]$$

$$- \frac{2}{p^2 - q^2\tan^2 30^0} \times$$

$$\left[1 + \cos\frac{4\pi eq\tan 30^0}{b\lambda} - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p - q\tan 30^0)\right\} - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p + q\tan 30^0)\right\}\right],$$

$$= \frac{2p^2 + 6q^2\tan^2 30^0}{(p^2 - q^2\tan^2 30^0)^2} - \frac{4pq\tan 30^0 + 4q^2\tan^2 30^0}{(p^2 - q^2\tan^2 30^0)^2}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p - q\tan 30^0)\right\}$$

$$+ \frac{4pq\tan 30^0 - 4q^2\tan^2 30^0}{(p^2 - q^2\tan^2 30^0)^2}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi e}{b\lambda}(p + q\tan 30^0)\right\}$$

$$- \frac{2p^2 - 2q^2\tan^2 30^0}{(p^2 - q^2\tan^2 30^0)^2}\cos\frac{4\pi eq\tan 30^0}{b\lambda}.$$

Let $p = r\cos\theta$, $q = r\sin\theta$: which is the same as referring M to the central point of the screen by polar co-ordinates. Then observing that $\tan^2 30 = \frac{1}{3}$, and restoring the factors

$$\frac{b^2\lambda^2}{4\pi^2} \text{ and } \frac{b^2\lambda^2}{4\pi^2 q^2},$$

this may be put in the form

$$\frac{3b^4\lambda^4}{32\pi^4 r^4} \cdot \frac{1}{\sin^2\theta \,.\, \sin^2(\theta - 60^0) \,.\, \sin^2(\theta - 120^0)}$$

$$\times \left[\frac{3}{4} - \sin(\theta - 60^0) \,.\, \sin(\theta - 120^0) \,.\, \cos\left(\frac{4\pi re}{b\lambda\sqrt{(3)}} \sin\theta\right)\right.$$

$$- \sin(\theta - 120^0) \,.\, \sin(\theta - 180^0) \,.\, \cos\left\{\frac{4\pi re}{b\lambda\sqrt{(3)}} \sin(\theta - 60^0)\right\}$$

$$\left. - \sin(\theta - 180^0) \,.\, \sin(\theta - 240^0) \,.\, \cos\left\{\frac{4\pi re}{b\lambda\sqrt{(3)}} \sin(\theta - 120^0)\right\}\right].$$

The maximum value it will be found is when $r = 0$, and is $= \frac{e^4}{3}$. The value is also considerable when $\theta = 0$, or $= 60^0$, or $= 120^0$, or $= 180^0$, or $= 240^0$, or $= 300^0$, when it is

$$\frac{\lambda^2 e^2 b^2}{3\pi^2 r^2}\left(1 - \frac{\lambda b}{\pi re} \sin\frac{2\pi re}{\lambda b}\right) + \frac{\lambda^4 b^4}{6\pi^4 r^4}\left(1 - \cos\frac{2\pi re}{\lambda b}\right),$$

(as will be found by commencing with the first integral formula of (80), and, for the ray, making $q = 0$; and, for the central point, making p also $= 0$). This points out exactly the star-like form observed by Sir J. Herschel (*Encycl. Metrop.* Light, Art. 772).

83. Let the aperture be a great number m of equal parallelograms of length $2f$ and breadth e at equal distances g. Here $y' = -f$, $y'' = +f$: and the expression to be integrated is

$$\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{p}{b}x - \frac{qf}{b}\right)\right\} - \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{p}{b}x + \frac{qf}{b}\right)\right\},$$

$$= 2\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b} \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{p}{b}x\right)\right\}.$$

The general integral is

$$-\frac{\lambda b}{\pi p} \sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b} \,.\, \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{p}{b}x\right)\right\}.$$

If k be the value of x corresponding to the first side of the first parallelogram, that corresponding to the first side of the $(n+1)^{\text{th}}$ parallelogram will be $k+n(e+g)$, and that corresponding to its last side $k+n(e+g)+e$. The integral therefore for the $(n+1)^{\text{th}}$ parallelogram is

$$\frac{\lambda b}{\pi p}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b}\cdot\left[\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt-B+\frac{pk}{b}+\frac{pn(e+g)}{b}\right)\right\}\right.$$

$$\left.-\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt-B+\frac{pk}{b}+\frac{pn(e+g)}{b}+\frac{pe}{b}\right)\right\}\right]$$

$$=\frac{2\lambda b}{\pi p}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b}\cdot\sin\frac{\pi pe}{\lambda b}\cdot\sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left\{vt-B+\frac{pk}{b}+\frac{pe}{2b}+\frac{p(e+g)}{b}n\right\}\right].$$

Let $B-\frac{pk}{b}-\frac{pe}{2b}=C$: then the whole displacement at M produced by all the parallelograms, {restoring the factor $\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}$ from (80)}, is

$$\frac{\lambda^2b^2}{\pi^2pq}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b}\cdot\sin\frac{\pi pe}{\lambda b}\,\Sigma\sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left\{vt-C+\frac{p(e+g)}{b}n\right\}\right].$$

The finite integral of the last term with respect to n is

$$\frac{-1}{2\sin\frac{p(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}}\cos\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left\{vt-C+\frac{p(e+g)}{b}(n-\tfrac{1}{2})\right\}\right],$$

which from $n=0$ to $n=m$ is

$$\frac{\sin\frac{mp(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}}{\sin\frac{p(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}}\sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left\{vt-C+\frac{p(e+g)}{b}\cdot\frac{m-1}{2}\right\}\right].$$

Thus, putting

$$C-\frac{p(e+g)}{b}\cdot\frac{m-1}{2}=D,$$

we have for the whole displacement

$$\frac{\lambda^2b^2}{\pi^2pq}\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b}\cdot\sin\frac{\pi pe}{\lambda b}\cdot\frac{\sin\frac{mp(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}}{\sin\frac{p(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}}\cdot\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-D)\right\}:$$

and consequently the intensity of the light is

$$4e^2f^2\left(\frac{\lambda b}{2\pi qf}\cdot\sin\frac{2\pi qf}{\lambda b}\right)^2\left(\frac{\lambda b}{\pi pe}\cdot\sin\frac{\pi pe}{\lambda b}\right)^2\left\{\frac{\sin\frac{p(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}m}{\sin\frac{p(e+g)\pi}{b\lambda}}\right\}^2.$$

84. The most remarkable variation of this depends on the last term. This may be represented by $\left(\frac{\sin m\theta}{\sin\theta}\right)^2$, where m is a large whole number. This has a great number of maxima corresponding to values of θ for which $m\theta$ is somewhat less than the successive odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (omitting $\frac{\pi}{2}$ itself); but the greatest maximum is that found by making $\sin\theta = 0$. Its value is then m^2, which is much greater than any of the others. For, the next maximum, when $m\theta = 258^0$ nearly, is

$$\left(\frac{\sin 258^0}{\sin\frac{258^0}{m}}\right)^2 \text{nearly} = m^2 \times 0{\cdot}0472;$$

the next is nearly $= m^2 \times 0{\cdot}016$: &c.; and when $\sin\theta$ is nearly $= 1$, the maximum is nearly 1. As we approach to the value $\theta = \pi$, one or two values are sensible, and then we reach the large maximum, of the same value as before. Suppose now we have placed on the object-glass of a telescope a grating consisting of 100 parallel wires. There will be a bright image of the luminous point formed at the center of the field, and one or two less bright on each side, so close that they cannot be distinguished: after this there will be others, but their intensity will diminish so rapidly (being at one of the *maxima* only $\frac{1}{10000}$ of that of the brightest) that they will be invisible; and at a distance there will be another point as bright as the first: and at an equal distance beyond it, another: and so on. Thus there will be a succession of luminous points at equal distances from each other, with no perceptible light between them. The distance of these points is found by making

$$\theta = 0, \text{ or } \pi, \text{ or } 2\pi \text{ \&c.}; \text{ or } p = 0, \text{ or } \frac{b\lambda}{e+g}, \text{ or } \frac{2b\lambda}{e+g}, \text{ \&c.}$$

This applies to any one kind of homogeneous light. When there is a mixture of differently coloured lights (as in white light), there will be a union of bright points of all the colours where $p = 0$, but at no other place. For, to arrive at the second bright point, we must go to a distance from the first proportional to λ. Consequently the next blue point will be nearer to the center than the next red point, &c. Thus in the center there will be a bright white point, but at the sides there will be spectra similar to those formed by a prism, their blue ends being nearest to the center. And as each bright point is almost perfectly insulated, the spectrum will be *pure;* that is, there will be no sensible mixture of colours in any part of it. This is verified completely by experiment: the spectra are so pure that, when the solar light is used, the fixed lines or interruptions of the spectrum, which are so delicate that only the best prisms will shew them, may be seen in the spectra formed as we have described.

85. We shall now consider the term

$$\left(\frac{\lambda b}{\pi p e} \cdot \sin \frac{\pi p e}{\lambda b}\right)^2.$$

When p is small, or when e is small, this is $= 1$. When p is increased to any multiple of $\frac{\lambda b}{e}$, it vanishes. Consequently, whenever the same value of p is a multiple of $\frac{\lambda b}{e}$ and of $\frac{\lambda b}{e+g}$, one of the spectra will disappear: that is, whenever e and g are commensurate. This is true in experiment. And at all events, the successive spectra are less bright than the central colourless image, this factor having its greatest value when $p = 0$.

It is unnecessary to consider the effect of the first factor, as it only points out the law of brightness in the direction of the length of the parallelograms.

86. The aperture is a circle, whose radius $= e$. (This is the ordinary state of a telescope.) Since the intensity will be equal

at equal distances in all directions from the center of the screen, let $p = r$, $q = 0$. It is evident that

$$y' = -\sqrt{(e^2 - x^2)},\ y'' = +\sqrt{(e^2 - x^2)}.$$

Then the expression to be integrated in (80) becomes

$$\int_x \int_y \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{rx}{b}\right)\right\}.$$

The first integral is obtained by multiplying the sine by y. Taking this between the limits, the expression becomes

$$\int_x 2\sqrt{(e^2 - x^2)} \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\left(vt - B + \frac{rx}{b}\right)\right\},$$

or

$$2\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\} \int_x \sqrt{(e^2 - x^2)} \cos\frac{2\pi rx}{b\lambda}$$

$$+ 2\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\} \int_x \sqrt{(e^2 - x^2)} \sin\frac{2\pi rx}{b\lambda},$$

which is to be integrated from $x = -e$ to $x = +e$.

The second line, it is evident, will vanish: and the expression is reduced to

$$2\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\} \int_x \sqrt{(e^2 - x^2)} \cos\frac{2\pi rx}{b\lambda}.$$

Let $\frac{x}{e} = w$, $\frac{2\pi re}{b\lambda} = n$: the expression becomes

$$2e^2 \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\} \int_w \sqrt{(1 - w^2)} \cos nw,$$

$$\text{from } w = -1 \text{ to } w = +1.$$

$$\text{Let } \phi(n) = \frac{4}{\pi} \int_w \sqrt{(1 - w^2)} \cos nw,$$

$$\text{from } w = 0 \text{ to } w = 1:$$

the expression is

$$\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - B)\right\} \times e^2\pi \cdot \phi(n);$$

and the intensity of light is

$$e^4\pi^2\{\phi(n)\}^2.$$

A table of values of $\phi(n)$ is given at the end of this work. On examining it, it will be seen that there is blackness when $n = 3{,}83$ or $7{,}14$ or $10{,}17$ (which indicates dark rings): and brightness when $n = 5{,}12$ or $8{,}43$ or $11{,}63$ (which indicates bright rings), with intensities respectively about $\frac{1}{57}$, $\frac{1}{240}$, and $\frac{1}{620}$, of that at the center.

The angular diameter of any ring as viewed from the center of the object-glass $= \frac{r}{b} = \frac{\lambda n}{2\pi e}$. Let this angular diameter in seconds be s, then $n = \frac{2\pi es}{\lambda} \sin 1''$. If e the radius of the object-glass be expressed in inches, and if for mean rays λ be 0,000022 inch, the last equation becomes

$$n = 1{,}3846 \times es.$$

Hence we have,

For the bright rings, $es = 3{,}70,\ 6{,}09,\ 8{,}40$;

For the black rings, $es = 2{,}76,\ 5{,}16,\ 7{,}32$.

These are the ordinary rings seen round a star when viewed with a good telescope.

It appears from this that the central image of a star (the star being considered as a point of light without visible dimensions) is not a point but a circular disk, diminishing in intensity of light towards the edges; whose extreme radius, in seconds, is defined by the equation

$$es = 2{,}76.$$

The larger is the aperture of the telescope, the smaller is the angular measure of the breadth of the disk.

*86. The aperture is an ellipse, whose semiaxes are e and f. Taking the general co-ordinates p and q for a point in the screen, and remarking that, in the expressions of (80), $y' = -\frac{f}{e}\sqrt{(e^2-x^2)}$,

and $y'' = +\frac{f}{e}\sqrt{(e^2-x^2)}$, it will be seen that the first of the four terms in the final expression for displacement is

$$\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-B)\right\}\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}\cos\left[\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}\left\{px-\frac{fq}{e}\sqrt{(e^2-x^2)}\right\}\right],$$

to be integrated from $x=-e$ to $x=+e$.

Now if we had investigated the displacement with a circular aperture of radius e, for a point on the screen whose co-ordinates are p and q', the first of the four terms would have been

$$\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-B)\right\}\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q'}\cos\left[\frac{2\pi}{b\lambda}\{px-q'\sqrt{(e^2-x^2)}\}\right].$$

Disregarding the change in the constant multiplier from $\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q}$ to $\frac{b\lambda}{2\pi q'}$, these expressions would be exactly the same and to be integrated between the same limits, if $\frac{fq}{e}=q'$: and the same holds for the other terms of the displacement. But it was found in (86) that, for the circular aperture, the brightness or darkness depends simply upon the value of r, where $r^2=p^2+q'^2$: and a ring of definite light is determined by the equation $r^2=$ constant, or $p^2+q'^2=$ constant. Therefore in the case of the elliptic aperture, a ring of definite light is determined by the equation $p^2+q'^2=$ constant, or $p^2+\frac{f^2q^2}{e^2}=$ constant. This is the equation to an ellipse whose semiaxis in the direction of p is to that in the direction of q as f to e. Consequently the central spot and the rings are elliptical, but the direction of the major axis of the rings corresponds to that of the minor axis of the aperture. This is found in experiment to be true.

87. The whole of the experiments which are the subject of Prop. 20, (80) to (*86), are easily made by limiting the aperture of the object glass of a telescope, or by placing gratings before it. The appearances which we have investigated are those that would be formed on a screen in the focus of the object glass; but it is well known by common Optics that the appearance presented to the eye, when an eye-glass is applied whose focus coincides with the focus of the object glass, is just the same as if

the light had been received on a screen placed there. Thus it is only necessary to limit the aperture and then to view a bright point (as a star), when the phænomena that we have described will be seen in great perfection.

88. The experiment of (83) &c. is particularly remarkable on this account. It shews that there is light diverging in all directions from the front of the grand wave where it meets the lens, which is insensible only because it is destroyed by other light. For if we view a luminous point with a telescope in its usual state, no side images are seen: on putting a grating on the object glass, which *intercepts* a part of the light, the side images are visible. That this depends simply on the obstruction of the light, and not on any reflection or refraction by the grating, is evident from this circumstance, that it is indifferent whether the grating consist of wire, or silk, or lines scratched on the glass with a diamond point, or lines ruled on a film of soap or grease. The same principle may be used to explain the spectra produced by the reflection of light from metallic surfaces on which lines are engraved at very small equal distances. In fig. 58 if light from F falls on a small reflecting surface Ad and is received on a screen GH, and if F and G be both distant, then a point G may be found such that the paths FAG, FBG, &c. will not sensibly differ in length; and therefore the small waves which are produced by the same great wave, coming from every part of the surface, will meet in the same phase at G. And this will be true whether any part of the surface is removed or not. But at H there will be no illumination, because we may divide the surface into parts A, a, B, b, &c. such that the path FaH (supposing the surface a continuous plane) is less than FAH by $\frac{\lambda}{2}$, and therefore the small wave coming from a will destroy that coming from A; the small wave coming from b will destroy that coming from B: and so on. Now suppose that we remove the parts a, b, c, d, &c. There is now no wave to destroy any one of those coming from A, B, &c.: and they will not destroy each other, because the path FBH being less than FAH by λ, FCH being less than FBH by λ, &c., they are all in the same phase. Consequently there will be brightness at H. For dif-

ferent values of λ it is evident that we must take points at different distances from G: and thus spectra will be formed nearly as in (84).

For calculations applying to various cases of interference, the reader is referred to several volumes of the *Philosophical Transactions*, the *Cambridge Transactions*, and the *Philosophical Magazine*. A most remarkable investigation by Professor Stokes on an apparent change in the periodic time of waves will be found in the *Philosophical Transactions*, 1852.

APPLICATION OF THE THEORY OF UNDULATIONS TO THE PHÆNOMENA OF POLARIZED LIGHT.

89. In the preceding investigations, no reference has been made to the direction in which the particles of the luminiferous ether vibrate. They might, like the particles of air in the transmission of sound, vibrate in the direction in which the wave is passing: or they might, like the particles of a musical string, vibrate perpendicularly to the direction of the wave, but all in one plane passing through that direction. To these, or any other conceivable vibrations, our investigations would apply equally well: all that is required being that they should be subject to the general law of undulations, and that for a considerable number of vibrations the extent and time of vibration should be the same. The phenomena of polarization, however, enable us to point out what is the kind of vibration.

90. The properties of Iceland spar (which, it has since been discovered, are possessed by the greater number of transparent crystals) first pointed out the characteristic law of polarization. If a pencil of common light be made to pass through a rhombohedron of this crystal, it is separated into two of equal intensity. This may be shewn either by viewing a small object through it, when two images will be seen; or by placing it behind a lens on which the light of the Sun or that of a lamp is thrown, when two images will be formed at the focus. A line drawn through those two images is in the direction of the shorter diagonal of the rhombic face of the crystal; the rhombohedron being supposed to be bounded by planes of cleavage, and the pencil of light being incident perpendicular to one of them.

91. On examining the paths of these pencils within the crystal, it is found that one of them obeys the ordinary laws of refraction, but the other follows a more complicated law (which we shall hereafter describe). The first is therefore called the Ordinary pencil, and the other the Extraordinary pencil: and they are frequently denoted by the letters *O* and *E*.

92. To the eye no difference is discoverable between the two pencils, or between either of them and a pencil of common light whose intensity is the same. Yet the properties of the light in the two pencils are different, and both are different from common light. For if we take one of the pencils (for instance *O*) and place a second rhombohedron before it; on turning the first rhombohedron it is found that in general the second crystal separates the pencil *O* into two of *unequal* intensity, one following the ordinary law and the other the extraordinary law (which we may call *Oo* and *Oe*), and that in certain relative positions of the crystal one of the pencils wholly disappears. On examining the positions it is found that, when the two rhombohedrons are in similar positions (that is, when all the planes of cleavage of one are parallel to those of the other), or when they are in opposite positions (that is when, keeping the same surfaces in contact, the first is turned 180° from the position just described), *Oe* disappears, and *Oo* only remains; that is, there is only an ordinary pencil produced by the second crystal. On the contrary, when the first rhombohedron is turned 90° either way from the position first described, *Oo* disappears, and *Oe* only remains: that is, there is only an extraordinary pencil produced. In any intermediate position that pencil is strongest which, in the nearest of the four positions that we have mentioned, does not vanish.

93. Now if instead of *O* we take the pencil *E*, the appearances are wholly changed. In general, as before, the second rhombohedron divides this into two pencils of unequal intensity, one following the ordinary and the other the extraordinary law (which we shall call *Eo* and *Ee*). But when the crystals are in similar or in opposite positions, *Eo* vanishes, and *Ee* only remains: that is, there is only an extraordinary pencil produced.

When one is turned 90° from the similar position, *Ee* vanishes and *Eo* remains: that is, there is only an ordinary pencil produced.

94. It appears then that neither* of these two pencils is similar to common light; for, when either of them is received on a second rhombohedron, it does not always produce two pencils: common light always does produce two. It appears also that they are not similar to each other; for, in certain positions of the second rhomb, *O* will produce only an ordinary ray, while *E* will produce only an extraordinary ray: in certain other positions, *O* will produce only an extraordinary ray, and *E* only an ordinary ray. The rays therefore have some peculiar properties depending on the position of the crystal. But between the properties of the two rays a remarkable relation can be found. When the rhombohedrons are in similar positions, *O* will produce only an ordinary ray. When the first is turned 90°, *E* will produce only an ordinary ray. Consequently, on turning the crystal 90°, *E* has the same properties which *O* had before turning it. Again, when the rhombohedrons are in similar positions, *E* will produce only an extraordinary ray. On turning the first through 90°, *O* will produce only an extraordinary ray. Consequently, on turning the crystal 90°, *O* has the same properties which *E* had before turning it. This shews clearly that the two pencils have properties of the same kind with reference to two planes passing through their direction and moving with the crystal; and that the two planes are at right angles to each other. If a plane passing through the direction of the pencil and the shorter diagonal of the rhombic face be called the principal plane† of the crystal, then we may assert that the properties of the Ordinary ray possess the same relation to the principal plane, which the properties of the Extraordinary ray possess to the plane at right angles to the principal plane. This is commonly expressed thus: the Ordinary ray is *polarized in the principal plane*, and the Extra-

* The reader will observe that the term Ordinary pencil does not signify that the pencil is similar in its properties to common light, but merely that it is subject to the same laws of refraction as common light.

† This term will be used hereafter in a more general sense.

ordinary ray is *polarized in a plane perpendicular to the principal plane.*

95. There are some crystals which possess the property of separating common light into an Ordinary and an Extraordinary pencil, and then absorbing one of them. Thus certain specimens of agate, and plates of tourmaline cut parallel to the axis, allow the Extraordinary pencil to pass, and nearly suppress the Ordinary. This however is only true when the plates have a certain thickness: for, when they are very thin, the Ordinary and Extraordinary pencils are seen to have equal intensities. But the method of exhibiting polarized light which is most extensively used in experiments is, to reflect common light from unsilvered glass or any other transparent substance, solid or fluid. It is found that if the tangent of the angle of incidence is equal to the refractive index, the whole of the reflected light is *polarized** in the same way as the Ordinary ray produced by the first rhombohedron of Iceland spar when its principal plane is parallel to the plane of reflection from the unsilvered glass, &c. For, if the second rhombohedron be placed in that position to receive the reflected ray (instead of receiving the ray from the first rhombohedron), an ordinary ray only is produced: if in the position differing 90° from this, an extraordinary ray only is produced: which (92) is exactly the same effect as that produced by *O*, the crystal having the position that we have described. This is expressed by saying that the reflected light is *polarized in the plane of reflection.* The angle of incidence which is proper for this is called the *polarizing angle.* The transmitted light, it is found, possesses in part the properties of the Extraordinary ray; the principal plane of the crystal with which we mentally compare it being still conceived to be parallel to the plane of reflection. For, if the second rhomb be placed in that position, the transmitted light produces both an ordinary and an extraordinary ray, but the former is

* This was the discovery of Malus. It was important at the time, as calling the attention of philosophers to the subject: but all the phænomena of coloured rings, &c. may be exhibited perfectly well without using this property of reflection.

less bright than the latter. This is expressed by saying that the transmitted light is *partially polarized in the plane perpendicular to the plane of reflection.* If a great number of plates of unsilvered glass be placed together, the reflected light appears completely polarized in the plane of reflection, and the transmitted light appears completely polarized in the plane perpendicular to the plane of reflection.

96. We have here considered the test of polarization to be, the formation of only one ray when the light passes through a crystal of Iceland spar. But as the reflection from unsilvered glass at the polarizing angle gives properties exactly similar to those of the Ordinary ray of Iceland spar (the principal plane of the spar being conceived parallel to the plane of reflection), it may be conjectured that light polarized in the plane perpendicular to the plane of reflection, as it would not furnish any Ordinary ray with Iceland spar, will not furnish a reflected ray from unsilvered glass, but will be entirely transmitted. This is verified by experiment: and thus we have an easy practical test of the polarization of light. If light incident at the polarizing angle on unsilvered glass is not susceptible of reflection, it is polarized in the plane perpendicular to the plane of reflection. And if, on turning the glass round the incident ray without varying the inclination, the reflected light does not vanish in any position of the glass, the light is not polarized. In the same manner the polarization of a ray may be ascertained by examining the state of the emergent ray, after incidence on a plate of tourmaline; if in any position of the tourmaline the emergent ray disappears, the plane of polarization of the incident ray is parallel to the plane then passing through the ray and through the axis of the tourmaline.

97. From this it will easily be inferred that if two such plates of tourmaline are placed with their axes at right angles to each other, no light can pass through them. For the light which is transmitted by the first is polarized in the plane perpendicular to its axis, that is, in the plane of the axis of the second: and therefore is not allowed to pass through the second. If one of the tourmalines be turned, light is immediately seen:

it increases till the axes of the tourmalines are parallel. In the same manner if in fig. 59 A be a plate or several parallel plates of unsilvered glass, and B an unsilvered glass* (whose posterior surface is blackened, to prevent reflection there), B being fixed on a block which turns round a spindle at C in the direction of AB: and if each of the glass surfaces make with AB an angle of about $33^{\circ}.13'$ (the refractive index of plate glass for mean rays being about $1{,}527 = \tan 56^{\circ}.47'$): then on receiving the light of the clouds on A in such a direction that the reflected light falls on B, and placing the eye to receive the light reflected from B, it is seen that when the planes of reflection coincide, or nearly coincide, a considerable quantity of light is reflected from B: as the planes of reflection are inclined, less light is reflected: and when (as in the figure) they are perpendicular to each other, no light is reflected. This is strictly true only for the light incident from A on B in direction of the line joining their centers: but it is nearly true for light making a small angle with this. It is strictly true also for light of only one colour (since the polarizing angle, which depends on the refractive index, is different for differently coloured rays), but if the mean angle be used it is nearly true for all. We shall frequently allude to this apparatus: we shall then call A the *polarizing plate* and B the *analyzing plate.*

98. Now in the experiment of (46) or (57), (fig. 49 and 50) if a plate of tourmaline be placed in each of the pencils of light supposed to start from G and H, the plates of tourmaline being cut from the same large plate which has been carefully worked to uniform thickness, it is found that the existence of the fringes of interference depends entirely on the relative position of the axes of the tourmaline plates. If both axes be parallel, whatever be their position, the fringes of interference

* Instead of reflection from an unsilvered glass, transmission through a plate of tourmaline may be used. Still more convenient than a plate of tourmaline is the "Nicol's Prism," a combination of two prisms cut out of a block of Iceland spar with edges parallel to the crystalline axis, and united with their edges in opposite directions, with an interposed transparent medium (Canada balsam) of such refractive index that the Ordinary ray is totally reflected at its surface, while the Extraordinary ray is transmitted. See (115) &c.

are seen well, and the dark bars are perfectly black. If they are not parallel, the dark bars are not so black; and if they are at right angles to each other, the fringes disappear entirely. It appears therefore that pencils of light polarized in planes at right angles to each other cannot interfere (that is cannot destroy each other) in circumstances in which pencils of common light, or pencils of light polarized in the same plane, can destroy each other.

99. From the experiments that we have described, the following general conclusions are drawn.

(1) If from common light we produce, by any known contrivance, light that is polarized in one plane, there is always produced at the same time light more or less polarized in the plane perpendicular to the former.

(2) Light polarized in one plane cannot be made to furnish light polarized in the perpendicular plane.

(3) Light polarized in one plane cannot be destroyed by light polarized in the perpendicular plane.

The first leads at once to the presumption that polarization is not a modification or change of common light, but a resolution of it into two parts equally related to planes at right angles to each other; and that the exhibition of a beam of polarized light requires the action of some peculiar forces (either those employed in producing ordinary reflection and refraction or those which produce crystalline double refraction) which will enable the eye to perceive one of these parts without mixture of the other. This presumption is strongly supported by the phænomena of partially-polarized light. If light falls upon a plate of glass inclined to the ray, the transmitted light, as we have seen, is partially polarized. If now a second plate of glass be placed in the path of the transmitted light, inclined at the same angle as the former plate, but with its plane of reflection at right angles to that of the former plate, the light which emerges from it has lost every trace of polarization; whether it be examined only with the analyzing plate *B*, or by the interposition of a plate of crystal in the manner to be explained hereafter (145). This seems explicable only on the supposition that the effect of the first plate of glass was to diminish that

part of the light which has respect to one plane (without totally removing it), and that the effect of the second plate is to diminish in the same proportion that part of the light which has respect to the other plane; and therefore that, after emergence from the second plate, the two portions of light have the same proportion as before. On considering this presumption in conjunction with the second and third conclusions, we easily arrive at this simple hypothesis explaining the whole:

Common light consists of undulations in which the vibrations of each particle are in the plane perpendicular to the direction of the wave's motion. The polarization of light is the resolution of the vibrations of each particle into two, one parallel to a given plane passing through the direction of the wave's motion, and the other perpendicular to that plane; which (from causes that we shall not allude to at present), become in certain cases the origin of waves that travel in different directions. When we are able to separate one of these from the other, we say that the light of each is polarized. When the resolved vibration parallel to the plane is preserved unaltered, and that perpendicular to the plane is diminished in a given ratio (or vice versa), and not separated from it, we say that the light is partially polarized.

The reader who has possessed himself fully of this hypothesis, will see at once the connection between all the experiments given above.

100. For the general explanation of these experiments, and for the accurate investigation of most of the phænomena to be hereafter described, it is indifferent whether we suppose the vibrations constituting polarized light to take place parallel to the plane of polarization, or perpendicular to it. There are reasons however, connected with the most profound investigations* into the nature of crystalline separation and into the nature of reflection from glass, &c., and confirming each other in a remarkable degree, that incline us to choose the latter: and thus,

* This question has been discussed carefully, and with some difference of opinion, by Fresnel, Cauchy, Professor Stokes, and others. In the text, we adopt the opinion of Fresnel and Stokes.

When we say that light is polarized in a particular plane, we mean that the vibration of every particle is perpendicular to that plane.

Thus, in the undulation constituting the Ordinary ray of Iceland spar, the vibration of every particle is perpendicular to the principal plane of the crystal: in that constituting the Extraordinary ray, the vibration of every particle is parallel to the principal plane. When light falls upon unsilvered glass at the polarizing angle, the reflected wave is formed entirely by vibrations perpendicular to the plane of incidence: the transmitted wave is formed by some vibrations perpendicular to the plane of incidence, with an excess of vibrations parallel to the plane of incidence.

101. The reader will perceive that it is absolutely necessary to suppose, either that there are no vibrations in the direction of the wave's motion, or that they make no impression on the eye. For if there were such, there ought in the experiment of (98) to be visible fringes of interferences: of such however there is not the smallest trace.

102. As we now suppose light generally to consist of two sets of vibrations which cannot interfere with each other, it becomes important to establish some measure of the intensity of the compound light. It seems that this cannot be any other than the sum of the intensities corresponding to the two sets of vibrations. So that if the displacement from one vibration be represented by $a \sin (vt - x + A)$, and that from the other by $b \sin (vt - x + B)$, the intensity of the mixed light will be $a^2 + b^2$. This then is the expression which we ought in strictness to have used in our former investigations. But as in all these (except those relating to reflection from plane glasses and lenses) the quantities a and b have in every part of the operation the same proportion, it is evident that the results, considered as giving the proportion of intensities of light, are in every instance correct.

PROP. 21. To explain on mechanical principles the transmission of a wave in which the vibrations are transverse to the direction of its motion.

103. In fig. 60 let the faint dots represent the original situations of the particles of a medium, arranged regularly in square order, each line being at the distance h from the next. Suppose all the particles in each vertical line disturbed vertically by the same quantity; the disturbances of different vertical lines being different. Let x be the horizontal abscissa of the second row; $x-h$ that of the first, and $x+h$ that of the third: let u, $u_{,}$, and u' be the corresponding disturbances. The motions will depend upon the extent to which we suppose the forces are sensible. Suppose the only particles whose forces on A are sensible, to be

$$B,\quad C,\quad D,\quad E,\quad F,\quad G,$$

(omitting those in the same line, as their attractions are equal and in opposite directions): and suppose them to be attractive, and as the inverse square of the distance: and the absolute force of each $=m$. The whole force tending to pull A downwards is

$$\frac{m\,(h+u-u_{,})}{\{h^2+(h+u-u_{,})^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}+\frac{m\,(u-u_{,})}{\{h^2+(u-u_{,})^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}-\frac{m\,(h-u+u_{,})}{\{h^2+(h-u+u_{,})^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

$$+\frac{m\,(h+u-u')}{\{h^2+(h+u-u')^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}+\frac{m\,(u-u')}{\{h^2+(u-u')^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}-\frac{m\,(h-u+u')}{\{h^2+(h-u+u')^2\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

Expanding these fractions, and neglecting powers of $u-u_{,}$ and $u-u'$ above the first, the force tending to diminish u is

$$\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{\frac{3}{2}}}\right)\frac{m}{h^3}\,(2u-u_{,}-u').$$

Putting for $u_{,}$,

$$u-\frac{du}{dx}h+\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\cdot\frac{h^2}{2},$$

and for u',

$$u+\frac{du}{dx}h+\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\cdot\frac{h^2}{2},$$

we find

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2}=\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{\frac{3}{2}}}\right)\frac{m}{h}\cdot\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}$$

---

* If h is so large with regard to the length of a wave that the terms after h^2

an equation of exactly the same form as that for the transmission of sound (10). The solution therefore has the same form: and therefore the transversal motion of particles supposed here follows the same law as the direct motion of the particles of air: that is, it follows the law of undulation.

104. It seems probable that if we had supposed any other regular arrangement, or taken any other law of force, the same conclusion would have been obtained. And if we suppose the

---

cannot be safely neglected, we may, by assuming a form for the function expressing u, integrate the equation

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} = -\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right)\frac{m}{k^3}(2u - u_, - u').$$

If, as we usually suppose,

$$u = A \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

$$\text{then } \frac{d^2u}{dt^2} = -\frac{4\pi^2v^2}{\lambda^2} A \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

$$u_, + u' = A \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x + h)\right\}$$

$$+ A \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x - h)\right\},$$

$$= 2A \cdot \cos\frac{2\pi h}{\lambda} \cdot \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

$$\text{and } 2u - u_, - u' = 4A \cdot \sin^2\frac{\pi h}{\lambda} \cdot \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\};$$

and by substitution, the equation becomes

$$-\frac{4\pi^2v^2}{\lambda^2} = -4\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \cdot \frac{m}{k^3} \cdot \sin^2\frac{\pi h}{\lambda};$$

$$\text{whence } v^2 = \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \cdot \frac{m}{k} \cdot \frac{\lambda^2}{\pi^2 h^2} \sin^2\frac{\pi h}{\lambda},$$

$$\text{and } v = \sqrt{\left\{\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \cdot \frac{m}{k}\right\}} \frac{\sin\frac{\pi h}{\lambda}}{\frac{\pi h}{\lambda}}.$$

This expression increases as λ increases; that is, undulations consisting of long waves travel with greater velocity than those consisting of short waves. Thus the different refrangibility of differently coloured rays is accounted for. See Article 38. For other modifications of this theory, and their comparison with the observed indices of refraction of different rays in different media, the reader is referred to Professor Powell's treatise *On the Undulatory Theory as applied to the explanation of unequal refrangibility.*

arrangement symmetrical with respect to certain fixed lines, but different in distance of particles, &c. in different directions (as for instance if we suppose every eight adjacent particles to be at the angles of a parallelopiped as in fig. 61), then for vibrations of the particles in different directions the multiplier of $\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}$ will be different, and consequently the velocity of transmission of the wave (which is the square root of the multiplier) will be different. And the velocities of two waves may be different even when they are going in the same direction, provided that one of these waves consist of vibrations in one direction, and the other of vibrations in another direction, as if for instance in fig. 61 the directions of both waves were perpendicular to the paper, but if one set of vibrations were in the direction up and down, and the other in the direction right and left. For the force with which the particles act on each other depends on the distance of the particles in the direction of the waves' motion, and on their distance in the direction of the particles' vibration: and in the case supposed, the latter element is different for the two waves, though the former is the same.

105. If the displacement of a particle, considered as in any direction, be resolved into three displacements in the directions of x, y, z, the variations of force in those directions produced by the alteration of a single particle (and consequently the force produced by the whole system) are the same as if the displacements in those directions had been made independently. From this it easily follows that the sum of any number of displacements causes forces equal to the sum of the forces corresponding to the separate displacements: and then, by the reasoning in (10) and (11), any number of undulations, produced by vibrations in different directions, may co-exist without disturbing each other.

PROP. 22. To explain the separation of common light into two pencils by doubly-refracting crystals: and to account for the polarization of the two rays in planes at right angles to each other.

106. We shall assume for the state of the particles of ether within a crystal, an arrangement similar to that described in

(104), or at least possessing this property, that there are three directions* at right angles to each other, in which if a particle be disturbed, the resultant of the forces acting on it will tend to move it back in the same line in which the displacement is produced. These lines we suppose to be parallel to some lines determined by the form of the crystal.

107. Now in general the displacement† of a particle or a series of particles will not produce a force whose direction coincides with the line of displacement. For suppose the disturbance in the direction of x to be X; that in the direction of y to be Y: and suppose the corresponding forces to be a^2X and b^2Y. The tangent of the angle made by the resultant force with the axis of x is $\frac{b^2Y}{a^2X}$: but the tangent of the angle made by the direction of displacement with the axis of x is $\frac{Y}{X}$: and these are different if a^2 and b^2 are different. In the same manner if we supposed a displacement Z in the direction of z, and if it produced a force c^2Z, the tangents of the angles, made by the projection of the resultant's direction on the planes of xz and yz with the axis of z, would be $\frac{a^2X}{c^2Z}$ and $\frac{b^2Y}{c^2Z}$: while those made by the projection of the line of displacement would be $\frac{X}{Z}$ and $\frac{Y}{Z}$.

---

* M. Fresnel has demonstrated that this must be the case when the small displacement of a particle in the direction of any one of the co-ordinates produces forces in the direction of all, represented by multiples of that displacement. This is apparently the most general supposition that can be made. *Mémoires de l'Institut*, 1824. See also Griffin's *Theory of Double Refraction*.

† We have spoken here of *displacements* as if the forces concerned in the transmission of a wave were thus put in play by *absolute* displacements. It is however plain from (103) that the forces on A really put in play are produced by *relative* displacements: but it is evident that these forces are the same as those that would be put in play by the *absolute* displacement

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(2u - u_{,} - u') \text{ or } \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} \cdot \frac{h^2}{2}.$$

In like manner, when the direction of displacement is any whatever, the quantity $\frac{1}{2}(2u - u' - u_{,})$ in its proper direction may be resolved into the direction of the co-ordinates, and the forces really acting on A will be the forces corresponding to these spaces considered as *absolute* displacements.

108. Now suppose that, in fig. 61, *MN* is the front of a wave: or by the definition of (20) and the assumptions of (99) and (101), all the particles in the plane of which *MN* is the projection are moving with equal motions in that plane. In general the force which acts on these particles in consequence of their displacement, is not in the direction of the displacement, and is not even in the plane *MN*. Resolve it into two, one perpendicular to the plane and one parallel to it. The former of these may be neglected, because it can only produce a motion which, by (101), is not sensible to the eye. The latter, though in the plane, will not generally be in the direction of the displacement. It is impossible then to find what motions will be caused by this displacement without resolving it. If we can resolve it into two, such that the force produced by each displacement is in the direction of that displacement, then we can find for each of these separately the motions that will result from it. It is clear now that we have fallen on a case exactly similar to that of (104), and the conclusion is the same, namely that there will be two series of waves travelling with different velocities.

109. Now in (34) we have found that the refraction in a transparent medium depends on the velocity of the wave within that medium. Consequently the refraction of the two series of waves will be different; and thus is explained the bifurcation of the ray, when common light is incident on a surface of the crystal. And each of these consists of vibrations parallel to one line, that is, by (99), of polarized light: and, as will appear by subsequent investigations, the lines of vibration are perpendicular to each other, and therefore the planes of polarization (which are perpendicular to the lines of vibration) are perpendicular to each other. This explanation may be considered as the most important step in Physical Science since the establishment of the law of gravitation by Newton.

PROP. 23. To investigate the law of double refraction in uniaxal crystals.

110. By *uniaxal crystals* we mean those in which $b^2 = a^2$, while c^2 is not equal to a^2. The investigation, it is seen from

(108) and (109), reduces itself to these two things; the discovery of those directions of displacement in the plane of a wave in which the resolved part of the force parallel to the plane is in the same direction as the displacement, and the investigation of the velocity of transmission for waves whose vibrations are in those directions. Now the force, produced by a displacement in any direction parallel to the plane of xy, is in the same direction as the displacement: and therefore it is indifferent what line in the plane of xy we take for x. Let x then be perpendicular to the intersection of the front of the wave with the plane xy. In fig. 62, let MN be the projection on the paper of the front of the wave (supposed perpendicular to the paper), AM the axis of x, AN the axis of z, which we shall call the axis* of the crystal: θ the angle made by the front of the wave with the plane of xy. Then it is plain, from the symmetry of the forces with respect to z, that a displacement parallel to the line MN will cause a force whose resolved part parallel to the plane MN is in the line MN; and that a displacement in the plane MN perpendicular to the line MN will cause a force also perpendicular to MN. The vibration then of the wave incident on the crystal must be resolved into two vibrations parallel to these, and these vibrations, as in (108), will produce two rays that will travel with different velocities.

111. Now the force put in play by a displacement perpendicular to the paper is represented by $a^2 \times$ displacement. Consequently the wave depending on these vibrations moves with the velocity a whatever be the position of the front of the wave. This is the same law as that assumed in (34) for common refracting media, and the resulting law of refraction is therefore the same. Let any plane passing through the axis of z or the axis of the crystal be called a *principal plane* of the crystal; then this conclusion may be stated thus: the waves consisting of vibrations perpendicular to a principal plane of the crystal are

* This always coincides with the mineralogical axis of the crystal. Thus in Iceland spar it is in the solid angle included by three obtuse angles of the planes of cleavage, and makes equal angles with them; in quartz, tourmaline, beryl, &c. it is the axis of the prism.

refracted according to the ordinary law of refraction. This accounts for the refraction and polarization of the ordinary ray.

112. For the displacement in the plane of the paper: putting D for that displacement, it may be resolved into $D\cos\theta$ parallel to a, and $D\sin\theta$ parallel to z. The resulting forces will be represented by $a^2D\cos\theta$ parallel to x and $c^2D\sin\theta$ parallel to z; and the sum of the resolved parts of these parallel to MN is represented by

$$D\,(a^2\cos^2\theta + c^2\sin^2\theta).$$

The velocity of transmission of the wave perpendicular to its own front is therefore

$$\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2\theta + c^2\sin^2\theta)}.$$

This is not the same in all directions; and hence the waves consisting of vibrations parallel to a principal plane of the crystal are not refracted according to the ordinary law.

113. If now the front of a wave produced by such vibrations have at any time the form PQR, fig. 63, the form of the front at a succeeding time will be determined by taking Pp perpendicular to the surface at P and proportional to the value of

$$\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2\theta + c^2\sin^2\theta)} \text{ there};$$

Qq perpendicular to the surface at Q and having the same proportion to the value of

$$\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2\theta + c^2\sin^2\theta)} \text{ there; \&c.}$$

If the wave were produced originally by an agitation at C, all the successive fronts must be similar; and if we take points of all where their tangents are parallel, that is, points along a radius CQ, the perpendicular distance of each front from the next is proportional to

$$\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2\theta + c^2\sin^2\theta)},$$

and therefore the sum of all, which is the same as the perpendicular on the tangent at Q, must be proportional to

$$\sqrt{(a^2\cos^2\theta + c^2\sin^2\theta)}.$$

Therefore, to find the form of an extraordinary wave diverging

from a point, we must solve this problem: To find the curve where the perpendicular on the tangent is proportional to

$$\sqrt{(a^2 \cos^2\theta + c^2 \sin^2\theta)},$$

θ being the angle made by the tangent with the axis of x. It is well known that this is an ellipse, whose axes in the directions of z and x are in the proportion of $a : c$. Consequently, to discover the path of the extraordinary ray, we must suppose the waves produced by vibrations parallel to a principal plane to diverge in the form of a spheroid of revolution round a line parallel to the axis of z, and must suppose the semi-axes of the spheroid parallel and perpendicular to z to be represented by a and c: and must then proceed as for common light. The radius of the sphere into which the ordinary wave has diverged must at the same time be represented by a.

114. It is easily seen that the motion of an extraordinary wave in the crystal is not generally perpendicular to its front. For let AB, fig. 64, be an aperture through which a small part of an extraordinary wave passes: CD a line parallel to the axis of the crystal. Consider A, a, b, c, &c. as the origins of equal spheroidal waves, the axes of the waves being parallel to CD. It is plain that the part between E and F is the only place in which the waves strengthen each other, as at all points on both sides of this they precede or follow each other by different quantities, and therefore mutually destroy each other, while between E and F the neighbouring waves meet in nearly the same phase. The wave therefore will seem to travel from AB to EF. The general rule therefore is this; describe a spheroid whose axis is parallel to the axis of the crystal, and find the point of its surface where the tangent plane is parallel to the front of the wave; then the motion of the wave is parallel to the radius of that point.

115. The general construction for determining the path of both rays is this. In fig. 65, let the plane of the paper be the plane of incidence, BA' the projection of the surface of the crystal, AB the front of a wave moving in the direction AA'. Let CD be the axis of the crystal, not necessarily in the plane

of the paper. While a part of the wave moves in vacuum from A to A', suppose that the ordinary wave diverging from B will spread into the sphere Fo, and the extraordinary wave into the spheroid Fe (whose axis of revolution = diameter of sphere). Through the line, of which A' is the projection, draw a plane touching the sphere in o; this plane is the front of the ordinary wave, and Bo represents the direction and velocity of its motion. Through the same line draw a plane touching the spheroid in e; this plane is the front of the extraordinary wave, and Be represents the direction and velocity of its motion. If the axis of the spheroid does not lie in the plane of the paper, and is not perpendicular to the plane of the paper, the point e will not be in the plane of the paper: and thus the direction of the extraordinary ray will not lie in the plane of incidence. The demonstration of this construction is exactly similar to that of (34).

The course of an extraordinary ray after internal reflection is to be found in a manner analogous to that of (32). Thus in fig. 65, suppose that the extraordinary wave whose front is $A'e$ moves in the direction $A'G$ and is wholly or partially reflected at the surface GH. When the part A' has arrived at G, suppose the part e to be at I on its way to H. Then when I reaches H, the small wave caused by the disturbance at G will have extended into a spheroid similar and equal to that which must be described from the center I to pass through H. Let KH be this spheroid (the axis being always parallel to CD), and LM the spheroid equal to it whose center is G: let HL be the tangent plane passing through the line projected in H. Then, as in (32), HL is the front of the reflected wave, and, as above, GL is the direction of the reflected ray. Here the angle of reflection is not generally equal to the angle of incidence, and the angles of incidence and reflection are not generally in the same plane.

116. If we consider the extent of refraction to be determined by the change in the position of the front of the wave (which is sometimes the most convenient way), and if the spheroid be oblate, as it is for Iceland spar, beryl, tourmaline, &c., the extraordinary ray is always less refracted than the

ordinary ray, since in fig. 65 the spheroid includes the sphere. If the spheroid be prolate, as in quartz, uniaxal apophyllite, &c. the extraordinary ray is always more refracted than the ordinary ray. The normal to the front of the wave is always in the plane of incidence.

117. A compound prism which produces great angular separation of the two rays is thus constructed. Let a prism A be cut from Iceland spar with its edge parallel to the axis, and another prism B of equal angle with its edge perpendicular to the axis, and let them be placed as in fig. 66. The vibrations parallel to the plane of the paper will furnish the ordinary ray of A and the extraordinary ray of B; that is, this wave will be most refracted by A towards C, and least by B towards D, and it will therefore on the whole pass towards C. In a similar manner, the wave produced by vibrations perpendicular to the paper will be least refracted by A towards C, and most refracted by B towards D, and it will therefore on the whole pass towards D. If the prisms be cut from quartz, the separation is in the opposite direction; it is smaller also, as the prolate spheroid of quartz differs less from a sphere than the oblate spheroid of Iceland spar.

PROP. 24. To investigate the law of double refraction in biaxal crystals.

118. By *biaxal crystals* are meant those in which a^2, b^2, c^2, are all different. Our limits will not allow us to go through the whole of this investigation, and we shall merely give the principal steps, referring for details to the *Mémoires de l'Institut*, 1824; the *Annales de Chimie*, 1828; the *Cambridge Transactions*, Vol. VI. p. 85; and Mr Griffin's *Theory of Double Refraction;* and generally to the *Memoirs* of the principal scientific societies, especially those of the Royal Irish Academy, to the *Cambridge Mathematical Journal*, and to the *Philosophical Magazine.*

119. The first thing to be done, as in (108), is to find two directions in the front of a plane wave in which a displacement produces a force in the same direction, neglecting that force which is perpendicular to the front. As we shall only have to

calculate the forces in the directions possessing this property, we shall at once resolve the whole force of displacement into two, one parallel to the direction of displacement, the other perpendicular to it (not necessarily perpendicular to the front of the wave), and shall neglect the latter. If the direction of displacement make angles X, Y, Z, with the axes of x, y, z, this resolved force, as in (111), is

$$\text{displacement} \times (a^2 \cos^2 X + b^2 \cos^2 Y + c^2 \cos^2 Z).$$

Construct a surface of which the latter factor is the radius, which we shall call the surface of elasticity; it is easily seen that the radius is the squared reciprocal of the radius in the ellipsoid whose axes are $\frac{1}{a}, \frac{1}{b}, \frac{1}{c}$.

120. Make a section by the plane front of the wave through the center of this surface; the radius vector of the section will be the square of the reciprocal of the radius vector in the corresponding section of the ellipsoid, that is in an ellipse; and this section of the surface of elasticity will therefore be a curve symmetrical with respect to its greatest and least diameters, which are at right angles.

121. The radius vector of this section in any direction represents the resolved part, in that direction, of the force produced by displacement in that direction, the neglected part being perpendicular to that direction and not necessarily perpendicular to the front of the wave. If now we examine the direction of displacement in which the neglected part is perpendicular to the front of the wave, it is found that the greatest and least diameters above alluded to are the only ones which satisfy this condition. Consequently the vibrations must be resolved into two, parallel respectively to these diameters; and these will produce the two waves. Their velocities will be represented by the square roots of the values of those semi-diameters.

122. In two positions of the front of the wave, and no more, the section becomes a circle. Whatever then is the direction of vibration in that front, the velocity of transmission is the same, and there is no separation of fronts of waves, though there may

be separation into two or many rays. The two lines perpendicular to these circles are called the *optic axes*.

123. The difference between the squares of the velocities of the two waves is proportional to the product of the sines of the two angles made by the front of the wave with the two circular sections, or to the product of the sines of the angles made by the normal to the front with the two optic axes.

124. The plane of polarization of one ray bisects the angle made by the two planes which pass through the normal and the two optic axes: and the plane of polarization of the other is perpendicular to it. This is easily shewn thus: where the front of the wave cuts the two circular sections, the radii in the section by the front must be equal to the radii of the circles, and therefore must be equal to each other, and therefore must make equal angles on both sides of the longest or shortest diameter: and therefore if the planes be projected on a sphere concentric with the surface of elasticity, the point which is the projection of the longest or shortest diameter will bisect one side of the spherical triangle. Construct the spherical triangle whose angles are the poles of those sides: then the circle drawn from the bisection to the pole of that side (which is the projection of one plane of vibration) will bisect the angle made by the sides joining that pole, or the pole of the front, with the optic axes, inasmuch as those sides are equally inclined to the quadrants joining that pole with the two angles of the first triangle where the front of the wave meets the circular sections.

125. The form into which the wave must be supposed to diverge is determined as in (113), by finding the forms of the surfaces where the perpendicular to the tangent plane is proportional to one of the velocities found in (121). After a very troublesome algebraical process it is found that the equation expressing the two surfaces (which are in fact one continuous surface) is

$$(x^2+y^2+z^2)\,(a^2x^2+b^2y^2+c^2z^2)-a^2\,(b^2+c^2)\,x^2$$
$$-b^2\,(a^2+c^2)\,y^2-c^2\,(a^2+b^2)\,z^2+a^2b^2c^2=0.$$

This cannot be resolved into factors, and therefore cannot express a sphere and any other surface, as in (111) and (113). Consequently neither of the rays is subject to the law of ordinary refraction. This conclusion might also have been drawn from the observation that neither of the velocities found in (121) is constant. The direction, &c. of the two rays when light is incident on a surface of the crystal are found exactly as in (114), using the surface above mentioned instead of the sphere and spheroid, and finding the two positions of the tangent plane passing through the line projected in A', fig. 65.

The properties of this wave-surface are however so important, and one of the deductions from them so singular, that we shall devote some subordinate articles to a statement of them, referring for complete discussion to the *Transactions of the Royal Irish Academy*, Vol. XVII.

125 (*a*). If in the equation above we make $z = 0$, we find for the section in the plane of xy

$$(x^2+y^2)(a^2x^2+b^2y^2) - c^2(a^2x^2+b^2y^2) - a^2b^2(x^2+y^2) + a^2b^2c^2 = 0;$$

or
$$(x^2+y^2-c^2)(a^2x^2+b^2y^2-a^2b^2) = 0.$$

That is, the curve of intersection of the plane of xy with the surface is in fact two separate curves: one a circle whose radius is c, the other an ellipse whose semi-axes are a and b. In like manner, the curves of intersection with yz will be, a circle whose radius is a, and an ellipse whose semi-axes are b and c: and the curves of intersection with xz will be, a circle whose radius is b, and an ellipse whose semi-axes are a and c.

125 (*b*). Suppose now that a is greater than b, and b greater than c. Then, on the plane yz, the circle of radius a will completely inclose without touching the ellipse of semi-axes b and c: and, on the plane xy, the ellipse of semi-axes a and b will completely inclose without touching the circle of radius c. But on the plane xz, the ellipse of semi-axes a and c will cut the circle of radius b at four points. These propositions are due to Fresnel.

125 (*c*). When the nature of the wave-surface is examined with particular reference to these four points (which was first

done by Sir W. R. Hamilton) it is found that, as viewed from the outside, there are four conical depressions; and, as viewed from the inside or center, there are four cones projecting towards the outside. The surface, in fact, consists of two quasi-ellipsoidal sheets or surfaces, one completely inclosed within the other; but at these four points, the inner surface is drawn outwards, and the outer surface drawn inwards, so as to establish a connexion between the two surfaces.

125 (*d*). On examining the nature of the ring (very nearly circular) which forms the external base of any one of the depressed cones, it is found that it is in one plane: that, in fact, at that part, a tangent-plane touches the external surface in a ring; and that the plane of the ring and tangent is parallel to one of the circular sections in (122).

125 (*e*). Remarking then the construction for determining the course of a refracted ray in (114) and (115), it will be seen that, if a wave of light enter the crystal with its front normal to the optic axis, or parallel to the circular sections of the surface of elasticity (122), or parallel to the tangent-plane of the conical depression; its front will continue parallel to that tangent-plane; and the direction of the ray will be the direction of a line from the center of the wave-surface to some point of the tangent-ring. At first, there appears to be no reason why the course of the ray should select one point of the ring rather than another; this is determined by the following consideration.

125 (*f*). A construction similar to that of (124) determines the plane of polarization of the ray. It seems that*, in this case, (in which the construction of (124) fails), the plane of polariza-

---

* For a ray which falls *exactly* in any part of the ring, the wave-front is *exactly* normal to the optic axis. But for a ray which falls *by the smallest quantity* external (for instance) to the ring, the front of the wave is inclined as from the centre of the ring. Applying this consideration to the construction of (124); and remarking that the intersection of the front of the wave with the nearest circular section will be determined by bisecting the space between those two intersections; it is easily seen that the rotation of the plane of polarization is half as rapid as the rotation of the intersection with the near circular section; that is, half as rapid as the revolution of the ray round the ring. This amounts nearly to the construction in the text.

tion is thus determined: Draw one plane through the ray and through one optic axis, and draw another plane through the ray and through the other optic axis; and the plane of polarization bisects the angle formed by these two planes. To one plane of polarization thus determined, there corresponds only one ray. Consequently, if polarized light be incident, only one ray is formed: but if common light be incident (which, not improbably, consists of successive series of waves polarized in every conceivable plane), rays will be formed directed to every point of the ring, each ray having the polarization proper to its point of the ring; and a conical sheet of light will be formed within the crystal. On emerging at a plane surface parallel to the surface of entrance, the emergent rays will be parallel to the first incident ray; and a cylindrical sheet of light will be formed in air, still preserving in every part its peculiar polarization.

125 (*g*). This very singular result of the theory of undulations has been verified by Dr H. Lloyd, as regards both the distribution of light and its polarization. And the agreement of the prediction and the observation is undoubtedly one of the most remarkable proofs of the general correctness of the considerations by which the laws of double refraction are determined.

125 (*h*). If a ray of light, consisting of light polarized in different planes, be made to pass through the crystal in the direction of the line from the center of the wave-surface to the vertex of the cones (which will be done by permitting light from all directions to fall upon the crystal, and limiting its course through the crystal by plates with very small holes on its opposite sides), each differently polarized beam will receive a different refraction at the second surface, and an external conical sheet of light will be formed. This also is verified by experiment.

*125. Before leaving this investigation we must remark that this theory is imperfect in the same degree as the explanation of refraction. In every uniaxal crystal, we believe, the axis is the same for all the colours, but the ratio of a to c is not the same for different colours. In biaxal crystals generally the direction of the three axes is the same for different colours, but

the ratio of a, b, c, is not the same, and consequently the position of the optic axes (122) is not the same for different colours, though the optic axes for all colours are in the same plane. And it has been discovered by Sir John Herschel that the direction of the three axes is in some instances different for different colours, and then the optic axes for different colours are not all in the same plane.

PROP. 25. Light polarized in the plane of incidence falls on a refracting surface of glass, &c.: to find the intensity of the reflected and the refracted ray.

126. The three next investigations which we offer to the reader cannot be considered as wholly satisfactory. The extreme difficulty of mathematical investigation into the state of particles at the confines of two media prevents us from making them more complete. It is however gratifying to know that they are fully supported by experiment, and that they have given a law to phænomena, of which some appeared inexplicable, and others would never have been reduced to laws by observation alone.

127. Suppose that the particles of ether, retaining the same attractive force*, are in the inside of glass, &c. loaded with some matter which increases their inertia in the ratio of $1 : n$, without increasing their attraction. The equation of (103) would be changed to this:

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} = \frac{1}{n}\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \cdot \frac{m}{h} \cdot \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}.$$

If the solution before were $u = \phi(vt - x)$, the solution would now be

$$u = \phi(vt - x\sqrt{n}).$$

The velocity of transmission is diminished therefore in the ratio of $\sqrt{(n)} : 1$. But we have supposed that the velocity is diminished in the ratio of $\mu : 1$. Consequently $n = \mu^2$.

---

* Perhaps this supposition is hardly reconcileable with that made in the last proposition.

128. Now suppose that we have a series of equal quantities of the ether in a line, and that a transverse motion is given to the first, which, from the constitution described in (103) it has the power of transmitting to the second, &c. When we arrive at the surface of the glass, we must take volumes of the denser ether, whose dimensions are determined in the direction of the transmission of the wave by lengths proportional to the velocity of transmission, and in the other directions by their correspondence with the quantity of ether which puts them in motion. Thus in fig. 67, if $DF=\frac{BD}{\mu}$, the ether in $ABDC$ may be considered as putting $CDFE$ in motion. Put i for the angle of incidence, i' for that of refraction. The proportion of the lengths in the direction of the ray is $\mu : 1$, or $\sin i : \sin i'$. The proportion of the breadths is $\cos i : \cos i'$. The proportion of densities is $1 : \mu^2$, or $\sin^2 i' : \sin^2 i$. Combining these proportions, the proportion of the masses is

$$\sin i' . \cos i : \sin i . \cos i'.$$

Now if an elastic body impinges on an equal elastic body, it loses its own velocity and communicates to the other a velocity equal to its own: this is similar to the action of one mass of the ether in vacuum on the next. Supposing the similarity of action to apply to the different states of ether at the confines of the medium, we must compare this with the motion of two unequal elastic bodies A and B after the impact of A with the velocity V on B originally at rest. It is known that A retains the velocity $\frac{A-B}{A+B}V$, and that B receives the velocity $\frac{2A}{A+B}V$. Substituting for A, $\sin i' . \cos i$, and for B, $\sin i . \cos i'$, we find for the motion retained by the external ether, $\frac{\sin (i'-i)}{\sin (i'+i)} \times$ its previous motion; and for that communicated to the internal ether, $\frac{2 \sin i' . \cos i}{\sin (i'+i)} \times$ previous motion of external ether. Now by a succession of numerous impulses of this kind, following a given law, a series of waves with any law of displacement may be produced: and every impulse produces

parts in the two media having the proportions given above. If then the original displacement be represented by

$$a \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

that retained by the external ether, and which produces the reflected ray, must be

$$a \frac{\sin (i' - i)}{\sin (i' + i)} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

and that transmitted to the internal ether, and which produces the refracted ray, must be

$$a \frac{2 \sin i' . \cos i}{\sin (i' + i)} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - \mu x)\right\}.$$

These formulæ apply equally to refraction from air into glass, and from glass into air, giving i and i' their proper values. The intensities of the rays will be represented by the squares of the coefficients.

PROP. 26. Light polarized perpendicular to the plane of incidence falls on a refracting surface: to find the intensity of the reflected and the refracted ray.

129. We cannot here use the same kind of reasoning as in (128), because the motion of displacement (being in the plane of incidence and perpendicular to the path of the ray) is not in the same direction for any two of the three rays. To overcome this difficulty, M. Fresnel has adopted the following hypotheses. First he supposes that the law of *vis viva* holds: that is, that the sum of the products of each mass by the square of its velocity is constant. (This is certainly true if as in (128) masses are supposed to act nearly as elastic bodies. And in all cases of mechanical action it is equal to the sum of all the integrals of *force* × *space through which it has acted*, which is constant in all the cases of undulation that we can strictly examine, and is probably constant in this). Next he supposes that the resolved parts of the motion perpendicular to the refracting surface will preserve after leaving the surface the same relation which they have there, and which, if they follow the

same laws as those of the impact of elastic bodies, would be thus connected: the relative motions before and after impact will be equal in magnitude but opposite in sign. (This is confessed by M. Fresnel to be purely empirical.) Adopting these hypotheses, and considering the masses to be as

$$\sin i'' . \cos i : \sin i . \cos i'' ;$$

and representing the displacements in the incident, refracted, and reflected ray, (estimated positive in that direction perpendicular to their respective rays which is nearest to that of a body falling perpendicularly from vacuum on the refracting surface,) by a, b, c; we have the following equations:

$$\sin i' . \cos i . a^2 = \sin i . \cos i' . b^2 + \sin i'' . \cos i . c^2$$

$$a \cos i = b \cos i' + c \cos i.$$

Eliminating b,

$$(\sin 2i'' + \sin 2i)\, c^2 - 2 \sin 2i . ac - (\sin 2i'' - \sin 2i)\, a^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{or } (c - a) \{(\sin 2i'' + \sin 2i)\, c + (\sin 2i'' - \sin 2i)\, a\} = 0.$$

This equation is satisfied by $c = a$: but that would give $b = 0$, and therefore expresses only total reflection, which would require exactly the same mathematical conditions as those that we have used, but would not correspond to the physical circumstances of the problem now before us. The other is the only solution which we want: it gives

$$c = - a \frac{\tan (i'' - i)}{\tan (i'' + i)},$$

$$\text{and } b = a \frac{\cos i}{\cos i''} \left\{1 + \frac{\tan (i'' - i)}{\tan (i'' + i)}\right\}.$$

Hence if the displacement produced by the incident wave is

$$a \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x)\right\},$$

that produced by the reflected wave is

$$- a \frac{\tan (i'' - i)}{\tan (i'' + i)} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x)\right\},$$

and that by the refracted wave is

$$a\frac{\cos i}{\cos i''}\left\{1+\frac{\tan(i''-i)}{\tan(i''+i)}\right\}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-\mu x)\right\}.$$

130. One of the most remarkable inferences from this expression is obtained by making $i''+i=90^0$. The displacement produced by the reflected wave is then $=0$. Suppose now light consisting of transversal vibrations in all directions to be incident at this angle on a surface of glass. Resolve the vibrations into two sets, one parallel to the plane of incidence and the other perpendicular to it. The former (as we have just seen) will furnish no reflected ray: the latter, by (128), will produce a reflected ray. Consequently the reflected light will consist solely of vibrations perpendicular to the plane of reflection. The condition $i''+i=90$ gives

$$\sin i''=\cos i, \text{ or } \frac{\sin i}{\mu}=\cos i, \text{ whence } \tan i=\mu:$$

which (95) defines the polarizing angle. Thus the angle of incidence at which, according to theory, the vibrations of the reflected ray are entirely perpendicular to the plane of incidence, is the same as the angle at which, in experiment, the reflected ray is entirely polarized in the plane of incidence. And we have found from theory in (111) that the ray of a uniaxal crystal which undergoes the ordinary refraction, and which (94) is said to be polarized in the principal plane, is produced by vibrations perpendicular to the principal plane. These are two reasons which induce us to say, as in (100), that light polarized in a particular plane consists of vibrations perpendicular to that plane.

131. Another remarkable inference is this. If the two surfaces of a glass plate are parallel, i and i'' at the second surface are the same as i' and i at the first. Consequently, if the light reflected from the first surface is polarized, or if $i+i'$ at the first surface $=90^0$, $i+i'$ at the second surface also $=90^0$, and therefore the light reflected internally from the second surface is also polarized. This is true in experiment.

Many investigations applying to these problems are to be found in the *Cambridge Transactions* and other *Transactions*, the *Philosophical Magazine*, and the *Comptes Rendus* of the French Academy.

PROP. 27. Light polarized in a plane inclined by the angle α to the plane of incidence falls on the surface of a refracting medium: to find the position of the plane of polarization of the reflected light.

132. The displacement of a particle of ether before incidence may be represented by

$$a \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

in the direction making with the plane of incidence an angle $(90^0 - \alpha)$:

and this may be resolved into

$$a \cos \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

perpendicular to the plane of incidence,

$$\text{and} \quad a \sin \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

parallel to the plane of incidence. And these expressions will apply to the reflected ray, giving x the same alteration in both, and altering the coefficients in the ratios determined in (128) and (129). Hence we shall have after reflection,

Displacement perpendicular to the plane of incidence

$$a \cos \alpha \frac{\sin (i' - i)}{\sin (i' + i)} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

Displacement parallel to the plane of incidence

$$-a \sin \alpha \frac{\tan (i' - i)}{\tan (i' + i)} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

Since these are in the same ratio whatever be the value of x, it follows that the displacement compounded of these is entirely

in one plane, and therefore the reflected light is polarized. And if β is the angle at which the new plane of polarization is inclined to the plane of incidence, or $90^0 - \beta$ the angle at which the new direction of vibration is inclined to the plane of incidence, we have

$$\cot\beta = \frac{a\cos\alpha\,\dfrac{\sin(i''-i)}{\sin(i''+i)}}{-a\sin\alpha\,\dfrac{\tan(i''-i)}{\tan(i''+i)}} = -\cot\alpha\,\frac{\cos(i''-i)}{\cos(i''+i)},$$

$$\text{or } \tan\beta = -\tan\alpha\,\frac{\cos(i''+i)}{\cos(i''-i)}.$$

When i and i'' are both small, β and α have different signs: this shews that the planes of polarization before and after reflection are inclined* on opposite sides of the plane of incidence. If $i+i''=90^0$, that is, if the angle of incidence is the polarizing angle, $\beta=0$, or the plane of polarization of the reflected ray coincides with the plane of incidence: and if i be further increased, β and α have the same signs. These results have been verified by numerous observations and careful measures of M. Arago and Sir David Brewster.

PROP. 28. Light is incident on the internal surface of glass at an angle equal to or greater than that of total reflection; to find the intensity and nature of the reflected ray.

133. The expressions in (128) and (129) become impossible. Yet there is a reflected ray, whatever be the nature of the vibrations in the incident light. And on the principle of *vis viva* the intensity of the reflected ray ought to be equal to that of the incident ray, since there is no refracted ray to consume a part of the *vis viva*. And indeed in the last state of the expressions of (128) and (129) before becoming impossible, that is when $i''=90^0$, each of them becomes $=1$. After this the expression for the coefficient of vibrations perpendicular to the plane of

* The inclinations are considered to be on the same side when (supposing for facility of conception the angle of incidence to be considerable) the upper parts of both planes are on the same side of the plane of incidence.

incidence {putting $\mu \sin i$ for $\sin i''$, and $\sqrt{(-1)}.\sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}$ for $\cos i''$} becomes

$$\frac{\mu \sin i . \cos i - \sin i \sqrt{(-1)} \sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}}{\mu \sin i . \cos i + \sin i \sqrt{(-1)} \sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}},$$

$$\text{or } \cos 2\theta - \sqrt{(-1)} \sin 2\theta,$$

$$\text{where } \tan \theta = \frac{\sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}}{\mu \cos i},$$

and that for the coefficient of vibrations parallel to the plane of incidence becomes

$$\frac{\sin i . \cos i - \mu \sin i \sqrt{(-1)} \sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}}{\sin i . \cos i + \mu \sin i \sqrt{(-1)} \sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}},$$

$$\text{or } \cos 2\phi - \sqrt{(-1)} \sin 2\phi,$$

$$\text{where } \tan \phi = \frac{\mu \sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}}{\cos i}.$$

It is improbable that these formulæ are entirely without meaning: what can their meaning be?

134. M. Fresnel seems to have considered that as the direction of the reflected ray and the nature and intensity of the vibration were already established, there remained but one element which could be affected, namely, the phase of vibration. And it seems not improbable that this may be affected, inasmuch as the incident vibration, though it cannot cause a refracted ray, must necessarily cause an agitation among the particles of the ether outside the glass. It would seem to us most likely that the ray would be retarded (though the phenomena to be hereafter described compel us to admit that it is accelerated): and in all probability differently according to the direction in which the vibrations take place. Nothing then seems more likely than that 2θ and 2ϕ should express these accelerations*:

* M. Fresnel's reasoning is of this kind. In several geometrical cases, the occurrence of an imaginary quantity indicates a change of 90° in the position of the line whose length is multiplied by $\sqrt{-1}$. It is probable then that here the multiplication

and as they are angles, they must be combined with the angles in the expression for the vibration. Thus for instance, if

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

were the expression for the vibrations perpendicular to the plane of incidence on the supposition that they were not accelerated,

$$a \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + 2\theta \right\}$$

would be the expression on the supposition that they were accelerated.

135. The only thing which concerns us experimentally is the difference $2\phi - 2\theta$ (which we shall call δ) of the accelerations, for vibrations perpendicular to and parallel to the plane of incidence. Now

$$\tan (\phi - \theta) = \frac{\cos i \sqrt{(\mu^2 \sin^2 i - 1)}}{\mu \sin^2 i},$$

$$\text{whence } \cos \delta = \frac{1 - \tan^2 (\phi - \theta)}{1 + \tan^2 (\phi - \theta)} = \frac{2\mu^2 \sin^4 i - (1 + \mu^2) \sin^2 i + 1}{(1 + \mu^2) \sin^2 i - 1}.$$

It appears from this expression that $\delta = 0$ when $\sin i = \frac{1}{\mu}$, or when $\sin i = 1$: and that δ is greatest when

$$\sin^2 i = \frac{2}{1 + \mu^2}:$$

---

by $\sqrt{(-1)}$ denotes that the phase of the vibration which it affects is to be altered (suppose increased) by 90°. Thus the expression

$$\{\cos 2\theta + \sqrt{(-1)} \sin 2\theta\} \cdot \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

is to be interpreted as signifying

$$\cos 2\theta \cdot \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\} + \sin 2\theta \cdot \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + 90^\circ \right\},$$

$$\text{or } \cos 2\theta \cdot \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\} + \sin 2\theta \cdot \cos \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\},$$

$$\text{or } \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + 2\theta \right\}.$$

And similarly for the other.

the value of $\cos\delta$ being then

$$\frac{8\mu^2}{(1+\mu^2)^2} - 1.$$

If we assume $\delta = 45°$, we have this equation:

$$\frac{2\mu^2}{(1+\mu^2)\operatorname{cosec}^2 i - \operatorname{cosec}^4 i} = 1 + \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}}:$$

the solution of which, supposing $\mu = 1{,}51$, gives

$$i = 48°.37'.30'', \text{ or } 54°.37'.20''.$$

If then light be incident internally on the surface of crown glass at either of these angles, the phase of the vibrations in the plane of incidence is accelerated more than that of the vibrations perpendicular to the plane of incidence by 45°. If the light be twice reflected in the same circumstances and with the same plane of reflection, the phase of vibrations in the plane of incidence is more accelerated than that of the other vibrations by 90°.

136. If then we construct a rhomb of glass, fig. 68, two of whose sides are parallel to the plane of the paper, and the others perpendicular to the paper and projected in the lines AB, BC, CD, DA; and if the angles at A and C are 54°.37′: then light incident perpendicular to the end at F will be internally reflected at G and H, making at those points angles of incidence 54°.37′, and will emerge at I in the direction parallel to that in which it entered at F. The immersion at F and the emersion at I will produce no alteration in the light, but the effect of the two reflections at G and H will be to accelerate the phases of vibration in the plane of the paper more than those perpendicular to that plane by 90°. A rhomb thus constructed we shall call *Fresnel's rhomb.*

PROP. 29. Polarized light is internally reflected in a refracting medium at an angle of incidence greater that that necessary for total reflection: to find the nature of the reflected ray.

137. Let the plane of polarization make with the plane of incidence the angle α. Then the vibration, represented by

$$a \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

is performed in a direction making the angle $90^\circ - \alpha$ with the plane of incidence. Consequently the resolved vibrations are

$$a \cos \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

perpendicular to the plane of incidence, and

$$a \sin \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

parallel to the plane of incidence. The latter of these, by (135), is more accelerated than the former by δ. If then after reflection we use

$$a \cos \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

to express the vibration perpendicular to the plane of incidence, we must take

$$a \sin \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + \delta \right\}$$

for the vibration parallel to the plane of incidence. The same expression holds if the light is internally reflected any number of times, (the planes of incidence being always the same,) if we take care to give the proper value to δ.

138. Now let us examine the motions of a particle of ether in the reflected pencil. We will take y for the ordinate in the plane of reflection, and z for that perpendicular to it, both measured from the place of rest of the particle, in the plane transverse to the direction of the reflected ray.

(1) Let $\alpha = 45^\circ$, and $\delta = 90^\circ$. (This represents the case of Fresnel's rhomb when the plane of polarization is inclined 45° to that of reflection). Here

$$y = a\sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}} \,.\, \cos \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}, \quad z = a\sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}} \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\},$$

$$\text{and } y^2 + z^2 = \frac{a^2}{2}.$$

That is, every particle describes a circle whose radius is $\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}$.

(2) Let α have any value, δ being $= 90^0$. (This is the general case of Fresnel's rhomb). Here

$$y = a \sin \alpha \,.\, \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},\ z = a \cos \alpha \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

$$\text{and } \frac{y^2}{a^2 \sin^2 \alpha} + \frac{z^2}{a^2 \cos^2 \alpha} = 1.$$

That is, every particle describes an ellipse, whose semi-axes are $a \sin \alpha$ parallel to the plane of reflection, and $a \cos \alpha$ perpendicular to that plane.

(3) In the general case, α and δ having any values,

$$y = a \sin \alpha \left[\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\} \cos \delta + \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\} \sin \delta\right],$$

$$\text{and } z = a \cos \alpha \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

$$\text{Hence } \sin\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) = \frac{z}{a \cos \alpha}:$$

and

$$(y - \tan \alpha \,.\, \cos \delta \,.\, z)^2 = a^2 \sin^2 \alpha \,.\, \sin^2 \delta \,.\, \cos^2\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

$$= a^2 \,.\, \sin^2 \alpha \,.\, \sin^2 \delta \left[1 - \sin^2\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}\right]$$

$$= a^2 \sin^2 \alpha \,.\, \sin^2 \delta - \tan^2 \alpha \,.\, \sin^2 \delta \,.\, z^2:$$

the equation to an ellipse whose axes are inclined to the plane of reflection.

(4) If we compare the expressions for y and z in the first case with the equations to a circular helix (t being considered constant), we find that they exactly coincide. That is, a series of particles which were originally in a straight line, will be at any subsequent time in the form of a circular helix. In the other cases, the position

of the particles will be what may by analogy be called an elliptic helix.

(5) For all values of δ, if $\alpha = 0$, or if $\alpha = 90^\circ$, the reflected light has the same polarization as the incident light.

139. The nature of the light in the reflected ray may then be generally expressed by saying that it is *elliptically polarized:* and in the first case by saying that it is *circularly polarized.* Wherever after this we speak of common polarized light we shall for the sake of distinction call it *plane-polarized* light. From the investigation of the second case it appears that Fresnel's rhomb, by proper adjustment of position with respect to the plane of polarization, is capable of producing elliptically polarized light of every degree of ellipticity. We will therefore suppose that the circularly or elliptically polarized light is produced by Fresnel's rhomb*. For use, it is convenient to have it mounted in a frame which, without stopping the light, admits of its turning round the axis *HI*, fig. 68: this frame may be placed on the board in fig. 59: then the light plane-polarized by *A* is by the rhomb converted into circularly or elliptically polarized light, and emerges from the end *DC* opposite to the analyzing plate *B* in fig. 59. If the mounting be graduated so as to determine the angle made by the plane of polarization with the plane of reflection, then when this angle is 0, 90°, 180°, 270°, the plane-polarized light is not altered: when it is 45°, 135°, 225°, 315°, the emergent light is circularly polarized: when it has any other value, the light is elliptically polarized.

140. Now it is evident that circularly polarized light may be resolved into two vibrations parallel and perpendicular to any arbitrary plane, and that the magnitudes of these vibrations are always the same. Consequently this light, when examined only by the analyzing plate *B*, shews no sign of polarization (97), (99), &c. This is experimentally true. But if elliptically polarized light is resolved in the same way, though neither of

* We shall hereafter mention another contrivance which produces nearly but not exactly the same effect, and which has been used more extensively than Fresnel's rhomb.

the resolved parts ever vanishes, yet their magnitudes vary: and therefore when examined with the analyzing plate it will appear to be partially polarized. This is also true.

141. Between two kinds of circularly polarized light there is an important distinction which we have not yet pointed out. We have seen that if $\alpha = 45^\circ$ in Fresnel's rhomb, the light is circularly polarized: it is also circularly polarized if $\alpha = -45^\circ$. For in the latter case

$$y = -a\sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}}\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

$$z = a\sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}}\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

$$\text{and therefore } y^2 + z^2 = \frac{a^2}{2}.$$

The difference consists in the difference of direction of each particle's motion. In the former case,

$$\frac{z}{y} = \tan\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\};$$

in the latter

$$\frac{z}{y} = -\tan\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

If we suppose the plane of reflection vertical, y measured upwards, and z to the right hand (looking in the direction of the wave's motion), then in the former case the revolution will be in the same direction as that of the hands of a watch, and in the latter case in the opposite direction. In the former case the expressions shew that the particles which were originally in a straight line will be at any time arranged as in a left-handed spiral; in the latter case, as in a right-handed spiral. A similar distinction exists between two kinds of elliptical polarization.

142. One of the most remarkable proofs of the correctness of the theory is this; if a second Fresnel's rhomb be placed to receive the light coming from the first, and if its position be

similar, the emergent light is plane-polarized, but the new plane of polarization is inclined 2α to the former plane of polarization. The theoretical explanation is this; the vibrations in the plane of incidence are accelerated 90° by the first rhomb and 90° again by the second rhomb, more than those perpendicular to the plane of incidence. Consequently {taking up the investigation of (137)}, the vibration perpendicular to the plane of incidence being

$$a \cos \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

that parallel to the plane will be

$$a \sin \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + 180^\circ\right\},$$

$$\text{or } -a \sin \alpha \,.\, \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}.$$

As these are always in the same proportion, the vibration is entirely in one plane, or the light is plane-polarized. But as the tangent of the angle made with the plane of reflection is $-\tan \alpha$, instead of $\tan \alpha$, which was its value before incidence, the plane of polarization is inclined on the side of the plane of reflection opposite to that on which it was before, and by the same angle; the change of position therefore is 2α.

If the second rhomb is placed in a position 90° different from that of the first, the emergent light is similar to the incident light. For, the vibrations which were most accelerated by the first rhomb are least accelerated by the second rhomb, and *vice versâ*, so that the relation of their phases is not altered.

143. It is remarkable that in the only other case of reflection unaccompanied by refraction whose laws are well known to us, namely reflection at the surfaces of metals, the reflected ray appears to possess properties similar to those of light totally reflected within glass: if the incident light is plane-polarized, the reflected light is in fact elliptically polarized, and the difference of the phases varies with the angle of incidence. It is not however certain that we can refer the physical expla-

nation to the same principles: all that we can seem able to conclude from it is that the reflection from metallic surfaces is not strictly analogous to the reflection of sound from a wall, but has a closer relation to reflection from a surface terminating a dense medium*. Whether any explanation could be founded on the supposition that the ether is absolutely terminated at the reflecting surface, or that the ether within the metal is in a rarer state than that external to it, is a point that has not been examined.

ON THE COLOURED RINGS PRODUCED BY INTERPOSING A CRYSTALLINE BODY BETWEEN A POLARIZING PLATE AND AN ANALYZING PLATE.

144. In (97) we have mentioned as one of the fundamental facts of polarization that if the planes of reflection of A and B in fig. 59 are at right angles to each other, the angles of incidence

---

* It appears from Sir David Brewster's experiments that, in reflection from metals, the proportion of the vibrations parallel to the plane of reflection in the reflected ray to those in the incident ray, is less than the proportion of the vibrations perpendicular to the plane of reflection in the reflected ray to those in the incident ray. Consequently, after a great number of reflections from metallic surfaces, the reflections being all performed in the same plane, the vibrations parallel to that plane are diminished in a rapidly-decreasing geometrical series, and are soon insensible, and therefore the light appears to be polarized in the plane of reflection. This happens with a much smaller number of reflections from steel than from silver. It appears also that the alteration of phases of the two sets of vibrations is somewhat different for different metals, and different at different angles of incidence; beginning to be sensible at the incidence 40^0 nearly, and amounting at its maximum (which it has at an incidence of nearly 70^0) to about 90^0: perhaps to more, but Sir D. Brewster's statements leave it doubtful. It is also doubtful whether the phase of the vibrations parallel to the plane of incidence is accelerated or retarded. See Brewster on Elliptic Polarization, *Phil. Trans.* 1830. The nature of elliptically-polarized light had been sufficiently indicated in a few words by Fresnel, and the merit of this valuable paper consists entirely in shewing that the reflection of polarized light at a metallic surface produces light of that kind. The result of these laws, on the principles of the text, may be thus stated. If the incident vibration perpendicular to the plane of incidence is $a \cdot \sin(vt - x + A)$; the multiplier of the coefficient in the reflected ray p: the corresponding quantities for the other vibration $b \cdot \sin(vt - x + B)$ and q: and the acceleration of the latter δ: then after n reflections the vibration perpendicular to the plane of incidence is

$$a \cdot p^n \cdot \sin(vt - x + A),$$

and that parallel to the plane of incidence

$$b \cdot q^n \cdot \sin(vt - x + B + n\delta).$$

at both being the polarizing angles, the light reflected from A is incapable of being again reflected from B. If the eye be placed near B so as to observe the image of A, a very dark spot is seen at its centre, and the whole image, though not quite so black as the central spot, is very obscure.

145. Now if we interpose between A and B a plate which possesses double refraction, the image of A is generally seen bright, but sometimes crossed by one or more dark brushes, and sometimes by rings of circular or more complicated figure, richly coloured. On inclining the plane of the interposed plate, the rings generally shift their places and are succeeded by others; shewing that the peculiar arrangement of colours and brushes depends on the relation of the direction of the rays to some fixed lines in the interposed plate. There are few substances which when interposed present exactly the same phænomena, but nearly all exhibit appearances of the same general character: gorgeous colours, arrayed in symmetrical forms, generally shifting with every change in the position of the interposed plate, and always altering as B is turned round its spindle. This class of phænomena is far the most splendid in Optics.

146. The interposition of a piece of common glass produces no effect. And even a doubly refracting substance produces no effect, if it be placed to receive the light either before it is polarized at A, or after it is analyzed at B. It seems therefore that a doubly refracting substance has generally the power of altering polarized light, in such a manner that the light, either from losing the character of polarization, or from a change in the plane of polarization, acquires according to certain complicated laws the capability of reflection. It appears however that it exerts no influence on common light which makes it incapable of polarization as usual, and that it does not alter polarized light so as to produce any alteration in the impression made on the eye unless it is subsequently analyzed.

PROP. 30. To explain generally the origin of the coloured rings.

147. The general explanation may be given thus. From

experience*, as well from the theory of (106) &c., it appears that, whatever be the nature of light incident on a doubly refracting crystal, the two rays which it produces are polarized, one in one plane, and the other in the plane perpendicular to the former. That is, the vibrations of the incident ray are resolved into two sets, one in one direction and the other in the direction perpendicular to that, which produce waves that describe different paths; and one of these forms the Ordinary ray and the other the Extraordinary ray. And from the theory of (108) it appears that these two sets of waves will pass through the crystal with different velocities, and therefore on coming out of the crystal will be in different phases. Their union therefore will produce a kind of light not necessarily plane-polarized, or not necessarily polarized in the same plane as before passing through the crystal: and therefore their capability of reflection at the analyzing plate is, generally, restored. But, as the positions of the two planes of polarization, as well as the difference of velocity of the two rays, will depend upon the direction of the paths through the crystal, the nature of the light produced by the union of the two emergent streams will vary as the directions vary; and consequently the intensity of the light coming to the eye after analyzation will vary with the direction of the ray. Thus bright patches or curves of different intensity will be seen. The difference of phases, it may be easily conceived, is generally a function of λ, and thus the form or size of the curves may be different for differently coloured light. From the mixture of these differently sized and differently coloured curves, curves will be produced in which the mixture of colours is different at almost every point, as in the fringes of interference and in Newton's rings.

148. We have supposed here that neither plane of polarization of the rays in the crystal coincides with the plane of polarization of the light reflected from A. But conceive that in one direction of the ray, the plane of polarization of the ordinary ray coincides with the plane of polarization of light reflected from A. In that case the light reflected from A will produce in

* Quartz is the only well established exception to this rule. It appears that neither the ordinary nor the extraordinary ray of quartz is strictly plane-polarised.

the crystal only the ordinary ray, (92) and (95), and consequently the crystalline separation of the rays is of no consequence, because only one of the rays exists. The ordinary ray emerges therefore from the crystal just as it entered, unmixed with any other ray, and therefore falls upon B in the same state as if it had not passed through the crystalline plate, and therefore, is not reflected. The same would be true, *mutatis mutandis*, if for another direction of the ray the plane of polarization of the extraordinary ray in the crystal coincided with the plane of polarization of light reflected from A. Thus if we determine all the directions of rays in which the plane of polarization of either the ordinary or the extraordinary ray coincides with the plane of reflection from A, the rays passing in those directions will not be capable of reflection from B, and the appearance presented to the eye by the rays passing in all these directions will be that of one or more black lines not necessarily straight, cutting the coloured curves before mentioned.

149. If B be turned round its spindle till its plane of reflection coincides with that of A, the positions determined by the conditions of (148) will define the directions in which the light is most highly susceptible of reflection from B, and therefore one or more bright lines will be seen cutting the curves. If B be turned to any intermediate position, it will be found in the same way that the directions of rays, which make the plane of polarization of either the ordinary or the extraordinary ray to coincide with the plane of reflection either at A or at B, determine the form of lines which cut all the rings, and in which the intensity of light is uniformly the same as if the crystal were not interposed.

These particular cases are pointed out merely as matters of interest in the general explanation. The determination of the form of the uncoloured curves will be included in the general investigation of the intensity of light reflected in all directions from B.

PROP. 31. A plate of Iceland spar (or other uniaxal crystal, except quartz) is bounded by planes perpendicular to the axis of the crystal: light is incident nearly in the direction of the axis;

to find the position of the front, and the velocity perpendicular to the front, of the ordinary and extraordinary waves: and the retardation of each produced by passing through the plate.

150. First, for the extraordinary ray. In fig. 69 let AB be the normal to the front of the incident wave, or the direction of the incident ray: BC the normal to the front of the extraordinary wave, which is not generally the same as the direction of the extraordinary ray: CD the direction of emergence parallel to AB: i the angle of incidence made by AB, i' the angle of refraction made by BC: v the velocity before incidence, v' the velocity of the extraordinary wave perpendicular to its front: T the thickness of the plate. The time of describing BC is $\frac{T}{v' \cos i'}$; the space which the wave would in the same time have described in air is $\frac{Tv}{v' \cos i'}$. But since the front of the wave at incidence was perpendicular to AB at B, and at emergence perpendicular to CD at C, the whole space which the wave really has advanced is

$$BE = \frac{T \cos (i - i')}{\cos i'},$$

and therefore it has been retarded by a space in air equal to

$$\frac{T}{\cos i'} \left(\frac{v}{v'} - \cos i \cdot \cos i' - \sin i \cdot \sin i' \right).$$

151. Now $\sin i' = \frac{v'}{v} \sin i$. For if GH be a position of the front before incidence and BK after entrance, GB and HK must have been described in the same time; and therefore $GB : HK$ (or $\sin i : \sin i'$) :: velocity of incident wave : velocity of extraordinary wave perpendicular to its surface :: $v : v'$. And as the perpendicular to the refracting surface coincides with the axis of the crystal, we have by (112)

$$v' = \sqrt{(a^2 \cos^2 i' + c^2 \sin^2 i')}.$$

From these equations we find

$$\sin i' = \frac{a \sin i}{\sqrt{\{v^2 - (c^2 - a^2)\sin^2 i\}}},$$

$$\cos i' = \frac{\sqrt{(v^2 - c^2 \sin^2 i)}}{\sqrt{\{v^2 - (c^2 - a^2)\sin^2 i\}}},$$

$$v' = \frac{av}{\sqrt{\{v^2 - (c^2 - a^2)\sin^2 i\}}}.$$

Substituting, the retardation

$$= T\left\{\frac{\sqrt{(v^2 - c^2 \sin^2 i)}}{a} - \cos i\right\}.$$

152. Next for the ordinary ray. This may be deduced from the last by putting a for c. For the expression in (112) is changed to that in (111) by this alteration. Consequently the retardation for the ordinary ray is

$$T\left\{\frac{\sqrt{(v^2 - a^2 \sin^2 i)}}{a} - \cos i\right\}.$$

153. The only quantity that concerns us is the excess* of the latter above the former. Its value is

$$\frac{T}{a}\{\sqrt{(v^2 - a^2 \sin^2 i)} - \sqrt{(v^2 - c^2 \sin^2 i)}\}.$$

When i is small, this is nearly

$$= T\frac{c^2 - a^2}{2av}\sin^2 i.$$

This we shall call I.

154. In estimating then the displacement in the ether produced by these two separate pencils after emergence from the plate of crystal, if we represent that which is produced by the ordinary ray by a multiple of

$$\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

* c is greater than a for Iceland spar, beryl, and all the crystals termed by some writers *negative*; and less than a for some varieties of apophyllite, and all crystals of their *positive* class.

we must represent that produced by the extraordinary ray by a multiple of

$$\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\{vt-(x-I)\}\right\} \text{ or } \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

For, the extraordinary ray is less retarded than the ordinary ray by the space I in air, and therefore the displacement really caused by the extraordinary ray will correspond to that which would have been produced at a space less advanced by I* if they had been equally retarded.

PROP. 32. A plate of Iceland spar &c. bounded by planes perpendicular to the axis of the crystal (as in Art. 150) is placed between the polarizing and analyzing plates, fig. 59: to investigate the intensity of the light in various parts of the image seen after reflection at B.

155. In fig. 70 conceive the direction of any ray to be perpendicular to the paper: let the plane passing through this ray and through the axis of the crystal {which in (111) we have termed the *principal plane* for that ray} make with the plane of first polarization the angle ϕ: and let the plane of polarization at the analyzing plate (which we shall call the *plane of analyzation*) make with the plane of first polarization the angle a. Let the vibration in the rays as first polarized be represented by

$$a\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\},$$

perpendicular to the plane of first polarization. On entering the crystal this is resolved into

$$a\cos\phi\,.\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}$$

* The same expression applies when two plates cut in the same way from crystals either of the same or of different kinds are applied together, I being now the space by which in the combination the extraordinary ray is less retarded than the ordinary ray. If in both plates the extraordinary ray is less retarded than the ordinary ray, or in both more, the effect of the combination is that of a thick plate: if in one it is less and in the other more retarded, the effect is that of a thin plate.

perpendicular to the principal plane (which produces the Ordinary ray), and

$$a \sin \phi \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\}$$

parallel to the principal plane (which produces the Extraordinary ray). The former of these expressions may be assumed to be true after the Ordinary ray has emerged from the crystal, provided that we make the proper alteration in the value of x or t: but then for the Extraordinary ray we must, by (154), take the expression

$$a \sin \phi \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + \frac{2\pi I}{\lambda} \right\}.$$

If the rays entered the eye in this state, there would be no variation of intensity in the light coming in different directions through the crystal. For the intensity of the ordinary wave $= a^2 \cos^2 \phi$, and that of the extraordinary wave $= a^2 \sin^2 \phi$, the sum of which, or a^2, represents the intensity of the united waves (102), and this is constant. Now the analyzing plate being applied, those resolved parts only of the vibrations are preserved which are perpendicular to the plane of analyzation. That* furnished by the ordinary ray is

$$a \cos \phi \,.\, \cos (\phi + \alpha) \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) \right\};$$

and that furnished by the extraordinary ray is

$$a \sin \phi \,.\, \sin (\phi + \alpha) \,.\, \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + \frac{2\pi I}{\lambda} \right\}.$$

The sum of these represents the displacement produced by the wave that enters the eye. Adding them, and expanding

$$\sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} (vt - x) + \frac{2\pi I}{\lambda} \right\},$$

* As the analysing plate does not transmit to the eye the whole of the vibrations perpendicular to its plane of polarization, we ought in strictness to multiply these expressions, in this and similar investigations, by a constant. The omission is of no consequence in comparing the intensities of different parts of the image.

we find for the coefficient of $\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}$,

$$a\cos\phi\,.\cos(\phi+\alpha)+a\sin\phi\,.\sin(\phi+\alpha)\,.\cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda},$$

and for the coefficient of $\cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)\right\}$,

$$a\sin\phi\,.\sin(\phi+\alpha)\,.\sin\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}.$$

The sum of the squares of these coefficients is to be taken for the measure of the intensity {as in (17) and (23)}. This sum is

$$a^2\cos^2.\phi\,.\cos^2(\phi+\alpha)+a^2\sin^2\phi\,.\sin^2(\phi+\alpha)$$
$$+2a^2\sin\phi\,.\cos\phi\,.\sin(\phi+\alpha)\,.\cos(\phi+\alpha)\,.\cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda},$$
$$\text{or }\frac{a^2}{2}\left\{1+\cos2\phi\,.\cos(2\phi+2\alpha)\right.$$
$$\left.+\sin2\phi\,.\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)\,.\cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\},$$
$$\text{or }a^2\left\{\cos^2\alpha-\sin2\phi\,.\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)\,.\sin^2\frac{\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

156. This gives the intensity of the light that enters the eye in a given direction, or the brightness of one point of the visible image. To determine what point of the image it is, we have only to remark that this ray makes the angle i with the ray that passes in the direction of the axis, in a plane that is inclined $\phi+\alpha$ to the plane of analyzation (supposing that we look in the direction of the ray's motion), measuring from the top to the right. By the reflection at the analyzing plate, this course of the rays is inverted with regard to *up* and *down*, while it is not altered with regard to *right* and *left*: but then, as the eye is placed to receive the light in the direction opposite to that in which we look in studying figure 70, there is another inversion with regard to *right* and *left*, but none with regard to *up* and *down*. On the whole therefore, this ray comes from a point whose apparent angular distance from a certain point through which the rays pass parallel to the axis is i, which

distance is measured in a direction that makes the angle $\phi + \alpha$ or ψ with the plane of analyzation, measuring from the upper part of the plane to the right. If a plate of tourmaline or a Nicol's prism were used for analyzing plate, the angular measure would be made from the upper part to the left. In the image presented to the eye, i may be considered as a radius vector, and ψ the angle that it makes with the upper part of the line that represents the plane of analyzation. The brightness, putting ψ for $\phi + \alpha$, is

$$a^2 \left\{ \cos^2 \alpha - \sin (2\psi - 2\alpha) \cdot \sin 2\psi \cdot \sin^2 \frac{\pi I}{\lambda} \right\}.$$

157. Let $\alpha = 90^0$, or let the analyzing plane be in the position in which no light is reflected without the interposition of the crystal. The expression becomes

$$a^2 \sin^2 2\psi \cdot \sin^2 \frac{\pi I}{\lambda}.$$

This is 0, whatever be the value of λ and of I, when $\sin^2 2\psi = 0$: that is, when

$$\psi = 0, \quad \text{or } = 90^0, \quad \text{or } = 180^0, \quad \text{or } = 270^0.$$

This shews that, whatever be the colour of the incident light, there is a black cross, passing through that point of the image which is formed by the light that is parallel to the axis. For all intermediate values of ϕ it vanishes only when

$$\frac{\pi I}{\lambda} = 0, \ \pi, \ 2\pi, \ \&c., \quad \text{or } I = 0, \ \lambda, \ 2\lambda, \ \&c.,$$

$$\text{or } \sin i = 0, \ \sqrt{\frac{2av\lambda}{(c^2 - a^2)T}}, \ \sqrt{\frac{4av\lambda}{(c^2 - a^2)T}}, \ \sqrt{\frac{6av\lambda}{(c^2 - a^2)T}}, \ \&c.,$$

and the light is brightest and $= a^2 \sin^2 2\psi$ when

$$I = \frac{\lambda}{2}, \ \frac{3\lambda}{2}, \ \&c.,$$

$$\text{or } \sin i = \sqrt{\frac{av\lambda}{(c^2 - a^2)T}}, \ \sqrt{\frac{3av\lambda}{(c^2 - a^2)T}}, \ \&c.$$

The four spaces between the arms of the cross are therefore occupied by bright and dark rings, the radii of the bright rings

being as $\sqrt{1}$, $\sqrt{3}$, $\sqrt{5}$, &c. and those of the dark rings as $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt{4}$, $\sqrt{6}$, &c. The radii are inversely as $\sqrt{T}$, and the rings are therefore smaller with a thick plate than with a thin one. The radii are also inversely as $\sqrt{\frac{c^2-a^2}{av}}$*; and as this expression may conveniently be taken as a measure of the doubly refracting power of the crystal, the rings are less with a powerful doubly refracting crystal than with one which has that property in a feeble degree. The radii vary also as $\sqrt{\lambda}$ (considering $\frac{av}{c^2-a^2}$ as independent of λ), and thus are larger for red light than for blue light. This produces exactly the same effect which we have noticed in speaking of interference fringes and Newton's rings, (51), (66), and (72): the rings which at first are black and white have very soon a mixture of colours, different at every successive ring, and finally disappear from the mixture of all in almost equal proportions. If $\frac{av}{c^2-a^2}$ were constant, the proportion of the radii for different colours, and consequently the mixture of colours, would be nearly the same as in Newton's rings. But $\frac{av}{c^2-a^2}$ is generally a function of λ: the radii of rings of different colours vary therefore as $\sqrt{\frac{av\lambda}{c^2-a^2}}$, and the colours are not the same as those of Newton's scale. To such an extent, and so differently in different crystals, does $\frac{av}{c^2-a^2}$ vary with λ, that in one variety of the uniaxal apophyllite Sir John Herschel found that $\frac{av\lambda}{c^2-a^2}$ was almost exactly constant, so that more than 35 rings were visible; while in another variety c^2-a^2 was positive for the rays from one end of the spectrum and negative for those from the other end, and $=0$ for the intermediate rays, and only one or two rings were visible.

* The reader must not infer from this expression that there are no rings when c^2 is less than a^2. On going through the whole of the investigation it will be seen that the very same expressions will apply, putting only a^2-c^2 instead of c^2-a^2.

158. Let $\alpha = 0^\circ$, or the plane of reflection at the analyzing plate, coincide with that at the polarizing plate. The expression for the intensity is

$$a^2\left(1 - \sin^2 2\psi \,.\, \sin^2\frac{\pi I}{\lambda}\right).$$

This expression, added to that discussed in (157), produces a sum a^2. Consequently the intensity at any point of the image in this case is complementary to that in the case of (157). Thus, instead of a black cross interrupting the rings, there is a bright cross interrupting the rings: instead of the dark rings having radii

$$\sqrt{\frac{2av\lambda}{(c^2-a^2)T}},\ \sqrt{\frac{4av\lambda}{(c^2-a^2)T}},\ \&c.,$$

and the bright rings having the radii

$$\sqrt{\frac{av\lambda}{(c^2-a^2)T}},\ \sqrt{\frac{3av\lambda}{(c^2-a^2)T}},\ \&c.,$$

the bright rings have the former and the dark ones the latter.

159. In the general case, there is no variation of the intensity with different values of I or i, (that is, there is a brush of some sort with light of uniform intensity throughout, interrupting the rings), when

$$\sin(2\psi - 2\alpha) \,.\, \sin 2\psi = 0.$$

For, the succession of rings depends on the alteration of values of $\sin^2\frac{\pi I}{\lambda}$: and this is removed by the evanescence of its multiplier. This equation gives

$$\psi = 0,\ \text{or} = 90^\circ,\ \text{or} = 180^\circ,\ \text{or} = 270^\circ,\ \text{or} = \alpha,\ \text{or} = 90^\circ + \alpha,$$

$$\text{or} = 180^\circ + \alpha,\ \text{or} = 270^\circ + \alpha.$$

Consequently there are two rectangular crosses, inclined α to each other, which interrupt the rings. If a Nicol's prism is used, it is easily seen that one of these crosses has respect to the plane of polarization of the polarizing plate, and the other to that of the Nicol's prism. The intensity of the light in these crosses is $a^2\cos^2\alpha$. For the parts between $\psi = 0$, $\psi = \alpha$, or

between $\psi = 90^\circ$, $\psi = 90^\circ + \alpha$, or between $\psi = 180^\circ$, $\psi = 180^\circ + \alpha$, or between $\psi = 270^\circ$, $\psi = 270^\circ + \alpha$, the multiplier of $\sin^2 \frac{\pi I}{\lambda}$ is positive, and the light is therefore greatest when $I = \frac{\lambda}{2}, = \frac{3\lambda}{2}$, &c., and least when $I = \lambda, = 2\lambda$, &c.: these four sectors are therefore occupied by portions of rings nearly similar to those in (157), the intensity for the portions of the bright rings being

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\{1 + \cos(4\psi - 2\alpha)\}, \text{ or } a^2 \cos^2(2\psi - \alpha),$$

and that for the portions of the darker rings $a^2 \cos^2 \alpha$.

But for the parts between $\psi = \alpha$, $\psi = 90^\circ$, &c., the multiplier of $\sin^2 \frac{\pi I}{\lambda}$ is negative: the light is least when $I = \frac{\lambda}{2}, \frac{3\lambda}{2}$, &c., and greatest when $I = \lambda, 2\lambda$, &c.: these sectors therefore are occupied by portions of rings nearly similar to those in (158), the intensity of the portions of the bright rings being $a^2 \cos^2 \alpha$, and that of the fainter rings

$$a^2 \cos^2(2\psi - \alpha).$$

The brighter rings in the last-mentioned sectors have the same radii and the same brightness as the darker rings in those first mentioned: and this brightness is the same as the brightness in the eight rays of the crosses.

PROP. 33. In the last experiment, Fresnel's rhomb is placed between the polarizing plate and the plate of crystal, with its plane of reflection inclined 45° to the plane of polarization, so that the light incident on the crystal is circularly polarized: to find the intensity of the light after reflection from B, and the form of the coloured rings.

160. Resolve the vibration

$$a \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

which is perpendicular to the plane of first polarization,

$$\text{into } \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\},$$

perpendicular to the plane of reflection in the rhomb

$$\text{and } \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

parallel to that plane. The latter of these, by (136), has its phase increased by 90°, and therefore on coming out of the rhomb the vibrations may be represented by

$$\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

perpendicular to the plane of reflection

$$\text{and } \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

parallel to that plane. Resolving these in directions perpendicular and parallel to the principal plane of the crystal, we find;

Vibration which produces Ordinary ray

$$= \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos(45^\circ - \phi) \cdot \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

$$+ \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin(45^\circ - \phi) \cdot \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

$$= \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + 45^\circ - \phi\right\}.$$

Vibration which produces Extraordinary ray

$$= -\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin(45^\circ - \phi) \cdot \sin \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda} vt - x)\right\}$$

$$+ \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos(45^\circ - \phi) \cdot \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x)\right\}$$

$$= \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + 45^\circ - \phi\right\}.$$

On emerging from the crystal, the Ordinary vibration being represented by the same expression, the Extraordinary vibration must be represented by

$$\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos \left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt - x) + 45^\circ - \phi + \frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

The resolved parts of these perpendicular to the plane of analyzation (which are the only parts that reach the eye) are

$$\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos(\alpha+\phi) \,.\, \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+45^\circ-\phi\right\}$$

$$+\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin(\alpha+\phi) \,.\, \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+45^\circ-\phi+\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

Expanding the last term, the coefficients of

$$\sin\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+45^\circ-\phi\right\} \text{ and } \cos\left\{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(vt-x)+45^\circ-\phi\right\},$$

are

$$\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \cos(\alpha+\phi) - \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin(\alpha+\phi) \,.\, \sin\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda},$$

$$\text{and } \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \sin(\alpha+\phi) \,.\, \cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda},$$

and the intensity of the light, or the sum of the squares, is

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\left\{1-\sin(2\alpha+2\phi) \,.\, \sin\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\},$$

$$\text{or } \frac{a^2}{2}\left\{1-\sin 2\psi \,.\, \sin\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

161. Since α does not enter into this expression, the appearance will not be altered on turning B round its spindle. When $\sin 2\psi = 0$, that is when $\psi = 0$, or 90°, or 180°, or 270°, the intensity is $\frac{a^2}{2}$: this shews that there is a cross with light of mean intensity interrupting the rings. When ψ is $> 0 < 90^\circ$, or $> 180^\circ < 270^\circ$, the expression is maximum when

$$\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda} = \frac{3\pi}{2}, \quad \frac{7\pi}{2}, \text{ \&c.}$$

and minimum when

$$\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda} = \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad \frac{5\pi}{2}, \text{ \&c.}$$

or maximum when

$$I = \frac{3\lambda}{4}, \quad \frac{7\lambda}{4}, \text{ \&c.}$$

and minimum when

$$I = \frac{\lambda}{4}, \quad \frac{5\lambda}{4}, \text{ \&c.}$$

When ψ is $> 90^\circ < 180^\circ$ or $> 270^\circ < 360^\circ$, the expression is maximum when

$$I = \frac{\lambda}{4}, \quad \frac{5\lambda}{4}, \text{ \&c.}$$

and minimum when

$$I = \frac{3\lambda}{4}, \quad \frac{7\lambda}{4}, \text{ \&c.}$$

Thus it appears that of the four quadrants into which the cross divides the image, each opposite pair is similar, but each adjacent pair is dissimilar: the bright rings in one quadrant having the same radii as the dark rings in the next quadrant. And on comparing these expressions with those in (157), it will be seen that the effect of placing Fresnel's rhomb has been to push the rings outward by $\frac{1}{4}$ of an order in two opposite quadrants, and to pull them in by $\frac{1}{4}$ of an order in the other two opposite quadrants. At the same time the cross which was perfectly black has now some light. The most important difference of character however which the use of Fresnel's rhomb produces is the unchangeability of appearances as B is turned round.

If we compared the rings produced with the same position of Fresnel's rhomb by two crystals, in one of which c^2 was $> a^2$ and in the other of which c^2 was $< a^2$, then for a given order of rings, that is for those in which the magnitude of $\frac{I}{\lambda}$, without respect to its sign, is the same, $\sin \frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}$ would be positive for the first and negative for the second, or *vice versâ*. Consequently the bright rings of one crystal would correspond to the dark ones of the other. But we have seen that the bright rings of one quadrant correspond to the dark rings of the neighbouring quadrant. Consequently the rings presented by one of the crystals would

be the same as those presented by the other, supposing the latter rings turned round 90°. This affords a convenient method of determining whether the double refraction of a uniaxal crystal is of the same kind as that of a standard crystal (for instance Iceland spar) or of the opposite kind.

PROP. 34. A plate of a biaxal crystal whose optic axes make a small angle with each other (as nitre or arragonite) is bounded by planes perpendicular to the plane passing through the axes and nearly perpendicular to each axis; light is incident at a small angle of incidence: to find the difference of retardation of the two rays.

162. The accurate solution of this problem leads to some rather complicated expressions: and we shall therefore content ourselves with a very approximate solution analogous to that found in (153). We have found there that the difference of retardation was nearly

$$= T\frac{c^2-a^2}{2av}\sin^2 i, \text{ or nearly } = T\frac{v(c^2-a^2)}{2a^3}\sin^2 i',$$

where the difference of the squares of velocities of the two waves was $(c^2-a^2)\sin^2 i'$: or that the difference of retardation was nearly $=\frac{Tv}{2a^3}\times$ difference of squares of velocities of the two waves. As the difference of retardation arises solely from the difference of velocities, we shall suppose the same proportion to be true here. Now by (125) neither of the rays undergoes Ordinary refraction, or has a constant velocity. Still, even in extreme cases, the velocity of one is so nearly a constant $= a$, that in a calculation depending almost wholly on the difference there will be no sensible error in considering one as constant and $=a$. And by (123), putting v' for the velocity of the other,

$$a^2 - v'^2 = Ca^4 . \sin m' . \sin n',$$

where m' and n' are the angles made by the normal to its front with the two optic axes of the crystal (C being always small). Hence the difference of retardations

$$= \frac{TCav}{2}\sin m' . \sin n'.$$

Now let us consider the system of rays in air which on entering the crystal will pass in the directions that we have described. Let m and n be the angles made by the same ray in air with the rays which on entering the crystal will pass in the directions of the optic axes. As all the refracted rays (represented by the normals to the fronts of the waves) are in the same planes perpendicular to the refracting surface as the incident rays, and as all the angles of refraction are very nearly in the same proportion to the angles of incidence, it follows that all the other small angles depending on them, and their sines, are nearly in the same ratio.

Hence

$$\sin m' = \frac{a}{v} \sin m \text{ nearly}, \quad \text{and } \sin n' = \frac{a}{v} \sin n \text{ nearly}:$$

and therefore the difference of retardations is

$$\frac{TCa^3}{2v} \sin m \,.\, \sin n.$$

This as before we shall call I.

PROP. 35. A plate cut from a biaxal crystal, as in (162), is placed between the polarizing and analyzing plates: to investigate the intensity of the light in different points of the image seen after reflection from B.

163. Let ϕ be taken now to represent the angle made by the plane of polarization of either ray with the plane of first polarization, and the expression of (155), which is founded on no supposition except that the planes of polarization of the two rays are perpendicular to each other, will apply to this case. The intensity of light is therefore

$$a^2\left\{\cos^2\alpha - \sin 2\phi \,.\, \sin(2\phi + 2\alpha) \,.\, \sin^2\frac{\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

Conceive fig. 71 to be the projection of the directions of the rays and planes on a sphere (or rather on the tangent plane to a sphere) of which the eye is the center and whose radius is r. Let A, B, thus represent the optic axes, P any ray under consideration, DE the plane of first polarization. Put β for the

angle made by the plane passing through the optic axes of the crystal with the plane of first polarization. Let PQ bisect the angle APB: then, by (124), PQ represents the plane of polarization of one ray, and therefore

$$PQA = \phi + \beta.$$

$$\text{Also } \sin m = \frac{AP}{r} \text{ nearly}, \quad \sin n = \frac{BP}{r} \text{ nearly},$$

and therefore

$$I = \frac{TCa^2}{2vr^2} . AP . BP.$$

164. Now the form of the brushes interrupting the rings will be discovered by making the multiplier of $\sin^2 \frac{\pi I}{\lambda} = 0$. This gives

$$\sin 2\phi = 0, \quad \text{or } \sin (2\phi + 2\alpha) = 0.$$

Consequently

$$\tan (2\phi + 2\beta) = \tan 2\beta, \quad \text{or } = \tan (2\beta - 2\alpha).$$

Now refer P to the point C bisecting AB, by rectangular coordinates, x being measured in the direction CA and y perpendicular to it; let $CA = b$. Then

$$\tan PAF = \frac{y}{x-b}: \quad \tan PBF = \frac{y}{x+b}:$$

whence $\tan (2\phi + 2\beta) = \tan 2PQA = \tan (PBF + PAF)$

(because PQ bisects the angle at P)

$$= \frac{2xy}{x^2 - b^2 - y^2}.$$

Hence the brushes are determined by these equations

$$\frac{2xy}{x^2 - b^2 - y^2} = \tan 2\beta,$$

$$\text{or } (x^2 - b^2 - y^2) \tan 2\beta - 2xy = 0;$$

$$\frac{2xy}{x^2 - b^2 - y^2} = \tan (2\beta - 2\alpha),$$

$$\text{or } (x^2 - b^2 - y^2) \tan (2\beta - 2\alpha) - 2xy = 0.$$

ıd least when

$$I = \frac{\lambda}{2}, \quad \frac{3\lambda}{2}, \text{ \&c.}$$

hen $\phi > 90^\circ - \alpha < 90^\circ$, the brightness is greatest when $I = \frac{\lambda}{2}$,

, &c. and least when $I = 0, \lambda, 2\lambda$, &c,

ıe cases when $\alpha = 0$ or $\alpha = 90^\circ$ will be very easily investigated the reader.

167. It is plain then that the general appearance will be ıgs, interrupted by the brushes, in such a way that the bright ıgs on one side of the brushes correspond to the dark rings on e other side (except $\alpha = 0$ or $\alpha = 90^\circ$, when the number of ushes is diminished, and the rings on opposite sides corre-ond); and that the form of these rings will be determined by e equation $I = \lambda \times$ constant; or, by (163),

$$\frac{TCa^3}{2vr^3} AP.BP = \lambda \times \text{constant},$$

$$\text{or } AP.BP = \frac{2vr^2\lambda}{TCa^3} \times \text{constant},$$

ıere the constant determines the order of the rings. The rves determined by this equation are of the kind called *lemnis-tes*. If the constant is small, they will be nearly circles of ıich A and B are centers. As the constant is increased, the cles become elongated towards C: at last they become a ıgle curve like the figure 8 crossing at C: then a single curve e a ring nipped so as almost to meet in the middle: and erwards a ring slightly flattened. Combining this determina-n with those of (164) and (166) it is seen that, supposing lues of β and α similar to those in figs. 70 and 71, the general pearance is that of fig. 72, where the curves represent the rk rings.

168. Since $AP.BP \propto$ constant that determines the order, radii of the successive rings, when they are small and nearly cular, are as 1, 2, 3, &c. nearly. In this respect they differ

from those of a uniaxal crystal, which are as $\sqrt{1}$, $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt{3}$, &c. (157). And since $AP.BP \propto \frac{1}{T}$, the rings are smaller with a thick plate of a given crystal than with a thin plate. And since $AP.BP \propto \frac{1}{C}$, the rings are smaller with a crystal that produces a great difference in the velocity of the two rays than with one whose energy is feeble. And since $AP.BP \propto \lambda$ or rather $\propto \frac{v\lambda}{Ca^2}$, the curves are *cæteris paribus* larger for red than for blue rays.

169. There is however one difference between the curves for the different colours which in its nature is unlike any thing else that we have yet seen. It is, that the optic axes for different colours do not coincide. In every instance however the alteration of place is symmetrical with regard to the two axes. Thus the two red axes may be less inclined than the two blue axes, or *vice versâ*, but the angle between one red and one blue axis is the same as that between the other red and the other blue. In one or two instances this angle amounts to nearly 10°. The consequence is that the colours are not the same in different parts of the rings of the same order. Suppose for instance (as in nitre) the red axes are less inclined than the blue. As the red rings are larger than the blue, we shall, on taking points exterior to A and B, find positions where all the colours are mixed or all are absent, and therefore the rings are nearly white and black. If we trace the same rings to the positions between A and B, the red rings will very much overshoot the blue rings, and therefore the rings have the colour peculiar perhaps to a high order in Newton's scale.

170. It was till very lately supposed that the axes of the different colours are all in the same plane. Sir J. Herschel has discovered that in some instances (in borax for example) this is not true: the planes, however, as far as yet observed, all pass through the line bisecting the angle formed by the two axes. The reader will have little difficulty in conjecturing the nature of the alteration which this irregularity produces in the colours of the curves.

PROP. 36. In the experiment of Prop. 35, Art. 163, Fresnel's rhomb is interposed between the polarizing plate and the crystal: to find the form, &c. of the coloured curves.

171. As in (160), the intensity of light at any point is

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\left\{1-\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)\,.\,\sin\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}.$$

There is a brush interrupting the rings where

$$\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)=0:$$

this is the same equation as that which determines the second hyperbolas in (164), and which when $\beta=\alpha$ or $=90^0+\alpha$ becomes a cross. When $\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)$ is positive, the intensity is maximum if $I=\frac{3\lambda}{4}$, $\frac{7\lambda}{4}$, &c., and minimum if $I=\frac{\lambda}{4}$, $\frac{5\lambda}{4}$, &c.: and the contrary when $\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)$ is negative. These spaces are separated by the brush: consequently the bright rings on one side of the brush correspond to the dark rings on the other side. The form of the rings is just the same as in (167).

PROP. 37. A plate of uniaxal or biaxal crystal, cut in any direction different from those of (150) and (162), is placed between the polarizing and analyzing plates: to find the appearance presented to the eye.

172. The general expression for the brightness in (155),

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\left\{1+\cos 2\phi\,.\,\cos(2\phi+2\alpha)+\sin 2\phi\,.\,\sin(2\phi+2\alpha)\,.\,\cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\}$$

applies to this case. To confine ourselves to the most important instances we will make $\alpha=90^0$, which reduces the expression to

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\sin^2 2\phi\left(1-\cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right).$$

By I is meant here the space that one ray (which whether in uniaxal or biaxal crystals we shall call the Ordinary ray) is retarded more than the Extraordinary ray, and to which the two expressions in (162) still apply, observing only that in the former i' is the angle made with the axis. The essential difference

between this case and that of (155) and (162) is, that here I is large for all rays which pass nearly perpendicular to the plate.

(1) If the plate be thick, all traces of colours will disappear (as we have seen in several cases of interference where one ray had gained many multiples of λ on another). For, I being considerable, a very small variation of λ will make $\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}$ vary by 2π: and thus, for the various rays included in every small portion of the spectrum, $\cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}$ will have all its values, positive and negative, and the sum of all these values will be $=0$. The intensity of light will therefore be $\frac{1}{2}\sin^2 2\phi \times$ incident light, a proportion which is the same for all the colours. On turning the plate round in its plane, ϕ will vary from 0 to 360°, and the light will disappear four times. It will be greatest when $\phi = 45°, 135°$, &c.

(2) Colours may however be produced by crossing two plates of very nearly the same thickness cut in the same manner from the same crystal. For let I be the retardation of the Ordinary above the Extraordinary ray in the first, I' that in the second; I' will be very nearly equal to I. And, the plates being at right angles to each other, the Ordinary ray of the first will be the Extraordinary ray of the second. I' therefore will be the acceleration in the second plate of the same vibrations for which I was the retardation in the first: and therefore the whole retardation is $I - I'$, and the brightness is now

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\sin^2 2\phi\left\{1-\cos\frac{2\pi(I-I')}{\lambda}\right\},$$

$$\text{or } a^2\sin^2 2\phi \cdot \sin^2\frac{\pi(I-I')}{\lambda}.$$

The space $I - I'$ may be so small that the arc $\frac{\pi(I-I')}{\lambda}$ may differ little (not more than a fraction of π or a small

multiple of π) for differently coloured rays, and then there will be vivid colours.

(3) Colours may also be produced by applying together, with their axes parallel, two plates cut from uniaxal crystals, one of the positive and one of the negative class (as quartz and beryl). For in one of these the Ordinary ray is most retarded, and in the other the Extraordinary ray is most retarded: and as the Ordinary ray in one forms the Ordinary ray in the other, the ray which is most retarded in the first is least retarded in the second, and thus the difference of retardations may be made as small as we please.

(4) From the bodies which crystallize in laminæ it is frequently possible to detach a plate so thin that it will exhibit colours: for instance sulphate of lime, or mica. Both these are biaxal: in the former the axes are in the plane of the laminæ: in the latter they are in a plane perpendicular to it, but widely separated.

(5) In all these cases, the colours do not form small rings, as in the cases that we have treated at length, but are diffused in broad sheets. This arises merely from the circumstance that the expression for I or $I - I'$ varies very slowly with the variation of incidence. In sulphate of lime, for instance, a ray perpendicular to the laminæ makes

$$m = 90^0, \qquad n = 90^0:$$

a ray inclined to this will produce very little alteration in $\sin m' . \sin n'$ on which I depends. The same is true in mica, where the ray makes equal angles with the two axes. If it be inclined in the plane of the axes, $\sin m' . \sin n'$ is diminished: if perpendicular to that plane, $\sin m' . \sin n'$ will be increased.

173. If the thickness of a lamina of sulphate of lime or mica is such that, for a ray perpendicular to the lamina, $I = \frac{\lambda}{4}$ for mean rays, the lamina may be used instead of Fresnel's rhomb. For here the light which is incident is resolved into two sets of vibrations at right angles to each other, and one of these

is retarded in its phases by 90° more than the other; which is precisely the effect of Fresnel's rhomb. There is however this difference between them. In Fresnel's rhomb, whatever be the colour of the light, the retardation of the phase is exactly 90°, or the corresponding retardation in space is exactly $\frac{\lambda}{4}$ whatever* the value of λ may be. In the crystallized plate, on the contrary, the retardation for mean rays is exactly $\frac{\lambda}{4}$, but it is greater than $\frac{\lambda}{4}$ for blue rays, and less than $\frac{\lambda}{4}$ for red rays. This is seen most distinctly on putting several such laminæ together, when the light which is reflected from the analyzing plate is coloured: whereas on putting together several Fresnel's rhombs, there is no such colour. It is plain that, in substituting such a lamina for Fresnel's rhomb, the plane of vibration of that ray which is least retarded corresponds to the plane of reflection in the rhomb.

If a thicker plate (for instance one that produces a difference of retardations amounting to 6λ for mean rays) be placed with its planes of polarization inclined 45° to that of first polarization, the effect on the rings of a uniaxal crystal is very remarkable. In two opposite quadrants, the ray which is most retarded furnishes the Ordinary ray, and in the other two the same furnishes the Extraordinary ray. In two opposite quadrants therefore the difference of the paths of the rays of the uniaxal crystal is increased, and in the others diminished; and therefore in two the colours are those belonging to distant rings, while in the other two the colours of the fifth or sixth ring are pure white and black, as if they were close to the center.

174. The investigations which we have given will apply to all the crystalline bodies whose laws of double refraction are accurately known. Quartz has been mentioned as an exception to the common laws of uniaxal crystals. It appears that the phænomena which it exhibits may be perfectly represented by

* This is not strictly true, as the same angle of incidence in the rhomb does not produce exactly the same effect for all the rays: but it is much more exact than the other.

supposing the Ordinary ray to consist of elliptically polarized light whose greater axis is perpendicular to the principal plane, and the Extraordinary ray to consist of elliptically polarized light whose greater axis is in the principal plane: these two rays having also the difference* mentioned in (141): and the ellipses being changed to circles when the direction of the rays coincides with the axis of the crystal. It is also necessary to suppose that the axis of revolution of the spheroid (prolate for quartz) in which the Extraordinary wave is supposed to diverge (115) is less than the radius of the sphere into which the Ordinary wave diverges. For these investigations we must refer the reader to the *Cambridge Transactions*, Vol. IV.

PROP. 38. In every case where the interposed crystal resolves the light into two rays polarized in planes at right angles to each other, on turning the analyzing plate 90° the intensity of the light at each point is complementary to what it was before.

175. This is seen from the expression of (155). On putting $90^0 + \alpha$ for α, the expression becomes

$$\frac{a^2}{2}\left\{1 - \cos 2\phi \,.\, \cos(2\phi + 2\alpha) - \sin 2\phi \,.\, \sin(2\phi + 2\alpha) \,.\, \cos\frac{2\pi I}{\lambda}\right\},$$

which added to that in (155) makes a^2. Thus if in one case there is black, in the other there will be white: if in one there is an excess of red at any point and an absence of blue, in the other there will be an absence of red at the same point and an excess of blue, &c.

If instead of an analyzing plate we use the doubly refracting prism described in (117), two images are seen at once in different

* The crystal is right-handed or left-handed according as the Ordinary or the Extraordinary ray is of the first of these kinds. Sometimes (as in macled quartz, or amethyst) the two species of quartz are mixed: the optical phænomena which the mixture presents are very remarkable. It is to be observed (as a consequence of what is stated in the text) that in the direction of the axis the two rays, circularly polarized in opposite ways, are transmitted with different velocities: no mechanical theory has yet been formed which will completely account for this. (See however Mr Tovey's papers in the *Philosophical Magazine*.) It is remarkable that several fluids (as turpentine, sugar and water, &c.) possess this property, and even the vapour of turpentine: and apparently in all directions.

positions, every part of one of which is complementary to the corresponding part of the other. For, one pencil emerging from the prism consists only of vibrations perpendicular to the plane of refraction of the prism, and therefore presents to the eye the same image as the analyzing plate in a given position: the other consists only of vibrations in the plane of refraction, and therefore presents the same image as the analyzing plate in the position differing 90° from the former.

PROP. 39. Glass under pressure possesses double refraction.

176. This was experimentally shewn by M. Fresnel in the following manner. A number of prisms were placed as in fig. 73, and to prevent loss of light a fluid of nearly the same refractive power was dropped between the adjacent surfaces. The ends of *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, were then violently pressed by means of screws. On passing a ray of light through the combination it was divided into two, one polarized in the plane of the paper and the other in the perpendicular plane.

177. It is found also that pressure affects the separation of the two rays in crystals which possess the property of double refraction. This leads to the presumption that double refraction is produced generally by a state of mechanical constraint in the particles of bodies.

178. According to our preceding theories, since compressed glass possesses double refraction, it ought, when properly interposed between the polarizing and analyzing plate, to exhibit colours. This may be seen on squeezing by means of a screw a piece of glass and holding it in the apparatus. But it may be best exhibited by taking a thick piece of plate glass which is polished at the edges, and bending it by a weight or a screw pressing the middle, and in that state placing it edgeways between the polarizing and analyzing plates at an angle of 45° to each plane of reflection. A black line is seen along the middle extending the whole length, with stripes more and more coloured on each side: the number of stripes is greatest in the middle of the length (perhaps six dark and as many bright): towards the ends the stripes become broader and fewer, and the ends are

wholly black. It is plain here that the central black line is seen in those parts which suffer no strain; and that those which are extended as well as those which are compressed possess double refraction. On putting a plate of mica across it, with the plane of its axes either parallel or perpendicular to the plane of the glass, and comparing its effects on the fringes with its effects on the rings of Iceland spar, &c., it is found that the double refraction of the compressed parts is of the same kind as that of a negative crystal, and that of the extended parts of the same kind as that of a positive crystal, the axis being supposed to lie in the direction of the length of the glass plate.

179. It is found also that if glass is heated in one part, or if it is heated generally and cooled in one part, or if it is made nearly red hot and suddenly cooled by placing between cold irons, &c., it possesses the property of exhibiting beautiful colours divided by black brushes, &c., when placed between the polarizing and analyzing plates. There is no doubt that the glass is here in a state of mechanical constraint. On turning the glass, the black brushes are seen to pass by turns over every part. This determines the plane of polarization of the rays at every part of the glass, since at that point (172) ϕ must $= 0$, 90^0, &c.: that is, the two planes of polarization are then parallel and perpendicular to the plane of first polarization.

180. Between constrained glass and crystals there is however one important difference. The rings, &c. exhibited by crystals respect a direction which is independent of the size of the specimen or the part from which it is taken. The smallest fragment of crystal properly shaped may be made to exhibit the rings as well as the largest. In constrained glass, on the contrary, the rings and brushes cannot be seen, except the specimen is placed so far from the eye that the whole can be seen at once: and then we perceive an effect, not similar to that produced by rays passing in different directions through the same crystal, but to that produced by a number of crystals of different doubly refractive power arranged in different positions and then united into one system.

181. It may be useful to examine the effects of the three agents which are necessary, and in a particular order, for the exhibition of these appearances: namely the polarizing plate, the analyzing plate, and the interposed crystal. We shall begin with the last.

It is necessary that there should be an interposed body for the purpose of altering the nature of the ray in order to make it reflexible at the analyzing plate. We know of only two ways in which this can be done. One is, by resolving the vibrations into two parts and suppressing one of them. This is done if a plate of tourmaline with its axis inclined 45° to both planes of reflection is interposed; light is then reflected from the analyzing plate. The other is, by resolving the vibrations into two parts and retarding one; the retardation being either constant (measured by its effect on the phases), or varying with the colour of the light and with the direction of the ray. The first of these is done when Fresnel's rhomb is interposed: the second when a crystal or any body possessing double refraction is interposed. In either of these cases, the nature of the light compounded of these two parts as they emerge is different from that of the light which enters. But, in the former case, the change in the nature of the emergent light is sensibly the same for all rays nearly in one direction; in the latter case, it is very different even for rays whose inclinations differ very little. When the planes of reflection at the polarizing and analyzing plate coincide, the same contrivance is necessary in order to make the light less capable or wholly incapable of reflection at the analyzing plate.

It is necessary for the exhibition of coloured rings that there should be an analyzing plate; because, in all the cases of resolution that we know, the intensity of the light produced by the union of the resolved parts, after one of them has been retarded, is constant (155), and equal to that of the light before it was resolved. But by again resolving this united light according to a certain law into two parts, and preserving one, it is probable that in different directions the preserved part will have different values, inasmuch as the nature of the light emerging from the crystal in different directions is different. And this in fact is

the origin of the coloured curves. But there is no necessity that the resolution should be (as we have commonly supposed) into two sets of vibrations at right angles to each other, of which only one is preserved. For instance, if Fresnel's rhomb is interposed between the crystal and the analyzing plate, coloured rings* of a different kind are seen. This artifice amounts to the same as resolving the light when it emerges from the crystal into two rays, both elliptically polarized, of the opposite kinds mentioned in (141), and preserving only one. If any other kind of resolution could be conceived, it would serve as well for exhibiting coloured rings, of forms probably different.

With respect to the necessity for a polarizing plate, there is a little more difficulty. We see from theory, as well as from observation, that light consisting of vibrations parallel to a certain plane will, after passing through the crystal and undergoing analyzation, exhibit coloured rings. But we see also that other kinds of light will do as well. For instance, circularly or elliptically polarized light (of which one has lost all trace of polarization according to the usual tests, and the other has but imperfect traces) will exhibit rings. Common light however will not exhibit rings.

182. It becomes then a matter of interest to inquire what is the difference between common light, and the class comprehending plane-polarized, circularly polarized, and elliptically polarized light. Now for a given colour of light, (that is, where the

* There is no difficulty in investigating their form. Each of the rays emerging from the crystal is to be resolved into two sets of vibrations, one parallel and one perpendicular to the plane of reflection in the rhomb: the phase of the former is to be accelerated 90^0; and the light emerging from the rhomb is to be resolved as usual at the analyzing plate. If the incident light is circularly polarized, and a uniaxal crystal is interposed, the rings are circular without any brush or cross: the center is bright or black according as the two Fresnel's rhombs have their planes of reflection coincident or at right angles to each other. If a biaxal crystal is interposed, the rings are uninterrupted, as there is no brush of any kind. This experiment is worthy of notice, as being the only one (so far as we know) in which the rings, and especially the lemniscates, are seen in their whole extent without interruption. Instead of placing a Fresnel's rhomb between the crystal and the analyzing plate, it is more convenient to use a plate of mica which retards one ray more than the other by $\frac{\lambda}{4}$: and to place it with the plane of its axes inclined 45^0 to the plane of polarization.

length of waves is invariable), and for a given intensity of light (that is, where the coefficient of vibration is invariable), the most general kind of light that we can conceive is elliptically polarized light; inasmuch as the union of any number of vibrations in any directions and following each other at any intervals will produce elliptically polarized light. Common light therefore must be elliptically polarized (including in this term plane and circularly polarized). The phænomena of interference, which are exhibited in every respect as well with common light as with polarized light, require us to allow that many successive vibrations are exactly similar to each other. For instance, on examining Newton's rings, when the incident light is that of a spirit-lamp, or that from any one point of the solar spectrum (which are nearly homogeneous), fifty or sixty rings may be seen very well, and perhaps more in favourable circumstances. Since the sixtieth of these rings is produced by the interference of a wave with the sixtieth following wave, we must conclude not only that sixty successive waves are exactly similar, but that a large multiple of sixty successive waves are exactly similar. The state of the investigation then at present is this. The phænomena of interference, combined with our most general ideas on the nature of light, compel us to suppose that common light consists of elliptic vibrations, many of which in succession are exactly similar. The difference between the phænomena of polarization (with a crystal and an analyzing plate) exhibited by common light and by elliptically polarized light, shews that common light* does not consist of an indefinite succession of similar elliptic vibrations.

183. The only supposition that seems able to reconcile these conclusions is this. *Common light consists of successive series of elliptical vibrations (including in this term plane and*

* We have not mentioned here the law discovered by the French philosophers, that if two streams of common light from the same source were polarized in planes perpendicular to each other, and afterwards brought to the same plane of polarization, they would not interfere; but if two streams of polarized light from the same source were treated in the same way, they would interfere. The fact is, that the observing of rings, &c. in crystals is far the best way of making the experiment: the crystal which has double refraction exhibits the two rays polarized in perpendicular planes and the analyzing plate brings them to the same plane of polarization.

circular vibrations), *all the vibrations of each series being similar to each other, but the vibrations of one series having no relation to those of another. The number of vibrations in each series must amount to at least several hundreds; but the series must be so short that several hundred series enter the eye in every second of time.*

It must be observed that a gradual change in the nature of the vibrations is inadmissible. If, for instance, we supposed the vibrations elliptical, and supposed the ellipse to revolve uniformly about its center, it would be found that the vibrations in each plane could be resolved into two whose lengths of wave were different; and, compounding the corresponding vibrations in perpendicular planes, we should have two rays of elliptically polarized light of different colours.

As a simple instance of our general supposition, suppose 1000 similar vibrations in one plane to be followed by 1000 vibrations, of magnitudes equal to the former, in the plane at right angles to the former plane; then 1000 in the same plane as at first, &c. The succession of similar waves would be sufficient to give all the phænomena of interferences in perfection. At the same time, no colours would be exhibited with a crystal and an analyzing plate. For the first series alone would give rings and colours, but the second would give rings, &c. with intensities exactly complementary* to the former: and as these would enter the eye in such rapid succession that we could not distinguish them, we should only perceive the combined effect, which would be a uniform white.

184. We have always spoken of the *colour* of a ray as if it alone were sufficient to identify the nature of the ray. Perhaps, however, it would have been better to consider a ray as defined by its *refrangibility*. The remarkable experiment of Fraunhofer (84), from which it appears that the interruptions in the spectrum formed by interference correspond exactly to those in the spectrum formed by refraction, seems decisive as to this point, that rays of the same refrangibility are produced by waves of

* This is seen in our expressions (155) by putting $\phi + 90^\circ$ instead of ϕ, and $\alpha - 90^\circ$ instead of α.

the same length. It has, however, long been the opinion of some philosophers that there are rays of different colours which have the same degree of refrangibility, and that there are rays of the same colour with different degrees of refrangibility. Taking this as established, the conclusion seems to be, that colour does not depend on the length of a wave, but probably on some other circumstance, as perhaps the nature of the vibration. The law of vibration may be, not that of a cycloidal pendulum (as we have all along supposed), but something slightly different. It may be that the effect of an absorbing medium is to suppress all that part of the vibration which follows that law, and to allow only the other to pass. These, however, are very vague conjectures, which can scarcely be examined till our knowledge of the subject in question is much more extensive than it is at present.

TABLE of the NUMERICAL VALUES of the INTEGRALS

$$\int_0 \cos\frac{\pi}{2}s^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \int_0 \sin\frac{\pi}{2}s^2$$

[referred to in Article 74].

Limits of integration.	$\int_0 \cos\frac{\pi}{2}s^2$	$\int_0 \sin\frac{\pi}{2}s^2$	Limits of integration.	$\int_0 \cos\frac{\pi}{2}s^2$	$\int_0 \sin\frac{\pi}{2}s^2$
From $s = 0$			From $s = 0$		
to $s = 0,1$	0,0999	0,0006	to $s = 2,9$	0,5627	0,4098
0,2	0,1999	0,0042	3,0	0,6061	0,4959
0,3	0,2993	0,0140	3,1	0,5621	0,5815
0,4	0,3974	0,0332	3,2	0,4668	0,5931
0,5	0,4923	0,0644	3,3	0,4061	0,5191
0,6	0,5811	0,1101	3,4	0,4388	0,4294
0,7	0,6597	0,1716	3,5	0,5328	0,4149
0,8	0,7230	0,2487	3,6	0,5883	0,4919
0,9	0,7651	0,3391	3,7	0,5424	0,5746
1,0	0,7803	0,4376	3,8	0,4485	0,5654
1,1	0,7643	0,5359	3,9	0,4226	0,4750
1,2	0,7161	0,6229	4,0	0,4986	0,4202
1,3	0,6398	0,6859	4,1	0,5739	0,4754
1,4	0,5439	0,7132	4,2	0,5420	0,5628
1,5	0,4461	0,6973	4,3	0,4497	0,5537
1,6	0,3662	0,6388	4,4	0,4385	0,4620
1,7	0,3245	0,5492	4,5	0,5261	0,4339
1,8	0,3342	0,4509	4,6	0,5674	0,5158
1,9	0,3949	0,3782	4,7	0,4917	0,5668
2,0	0,4886	0,3432	4,8	0,4340	0,4965
2,1	0,5819	0,3739	4,9	0,5003	0,4347
2,2	0,6367	0,4553	5,0	0,5638	0,4987
2,3	0,6271	0,5528	5,1	0,5000	0,5620
2,4	0,5556	0,6194	5,2	0,4390	0,4966
2,5	0,4581	0,6190	5,3	0,5078	0,4401
2,6	0,3895	0,5499	5,4	0,5573	0,5136
2,7	0,3929	0,4528	5,5	0,4785	0,5533
2,8	0,4678	0,3913	to $s = \infty$	0,5	0,5

TABLE of the NUMERICAL VALUES of the DEFINITE INTEGRAL

$$\phi(n) = \frac{4}{\pi} \int_w \sqrt{(1-w^2)} \cos nw, \text{ from } w = 0 \text{ to } w = 1,$$

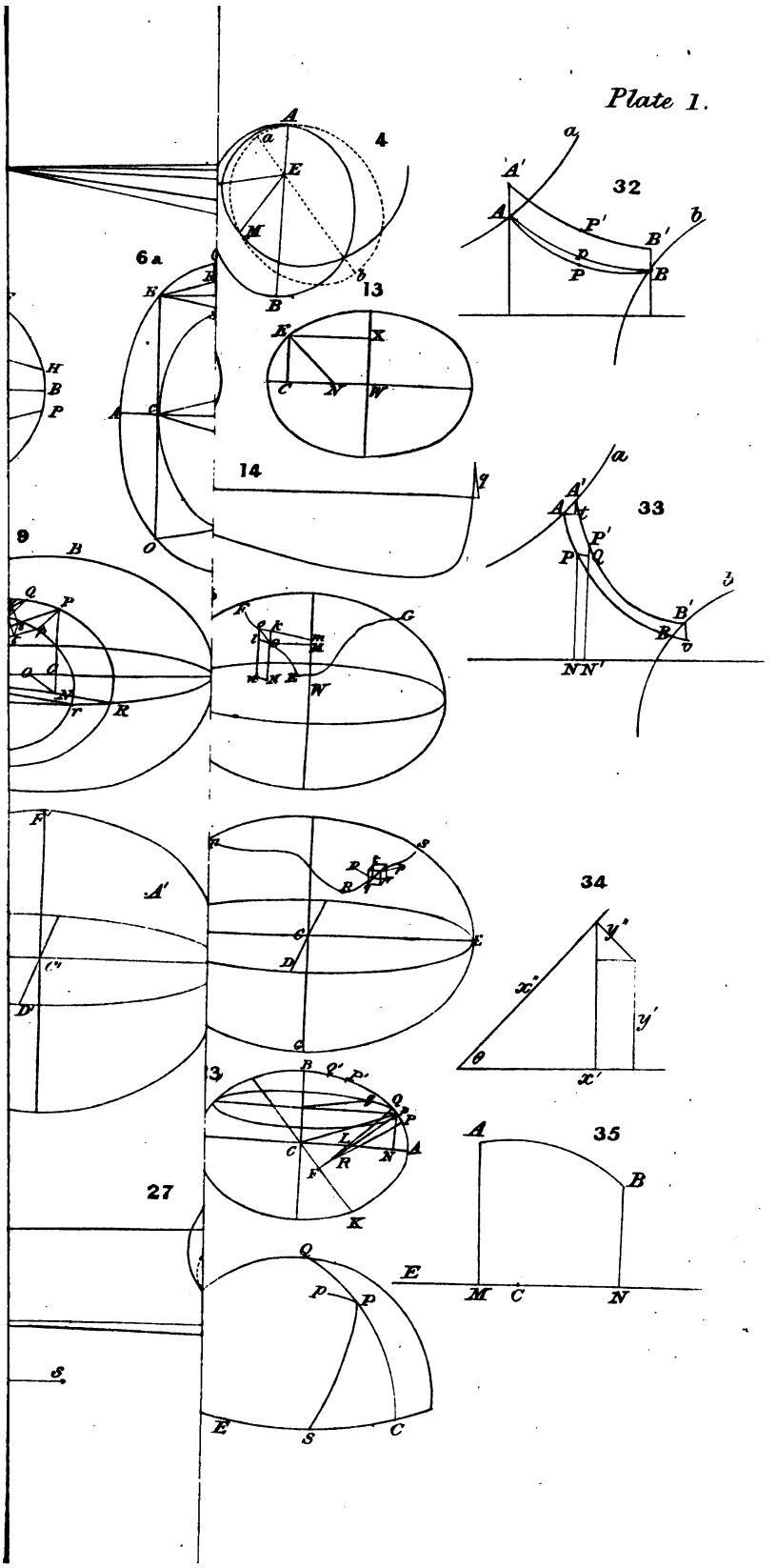
for different values of n;

[referred to in Article 86].

n	$\phi(n)$	n	$\phi(n)$	n	$\phi(n)$
0,0	+ 1,0000	4,0	− ,0330	8,0	+ ,0587
0,2	+ ,9950	4,2	− ,0660	8,2	+ ,0629
0,4	+ ,9801	4,4	− ,0922	8,4	+ ,0645
0,6	+ ,9557	4,6	− ,1116	8,6	+ ,0634
0,8	+ ,9221	4,8	− ,1244	8,8	+ ,0600
1,0	+ ,8801	5,0	− ,1310	9,0	+ ,0545
1,2	+ ,8305	5,2	− ,1320	9,2	+ ,0473
1,4	+ ,7742	5,4	− ,1279	9,4	+ ,0387
1,6	+ ,7124	5,6	− ,1194	9,6	+ ,0291
1,8	+ ,6461	5,8	− ,1073	9,8	+ ,0190
2,0	+ ,5767	6,0	− ,0922	10,0	+ ,0087
2,2	+ ,5054	6,2	− ,0751	10,2	− ,0013
2,4	+ ,4335	6,4	− ,0568	10,4	− ,0107
2,6	+ ,3622	6,6	− ,0379	10,6	− ,0191
2,8	+ ,2927	6,8	− ,0192	10,8	− ,0263
3,0	+ ,2261	7,0	− ,0013	11,0	− ,0321
3,2	+ ,1633	7,2	+ ,0151	11,2	− ,0364
3,4	+ ,1054	7,4	+ ,0296	11,4	− ,0390
3,6	+ ,0530	7,6	+ ,0419	11,6	− ,0400
3,8	+ ,0067	7,8	+ ,0516	11,8	− ,0394
4,0	− ,0330	8,0	+ ,0587	12,0	− ,0372

Cambridge: Printed at the University Press.

Plate 1.



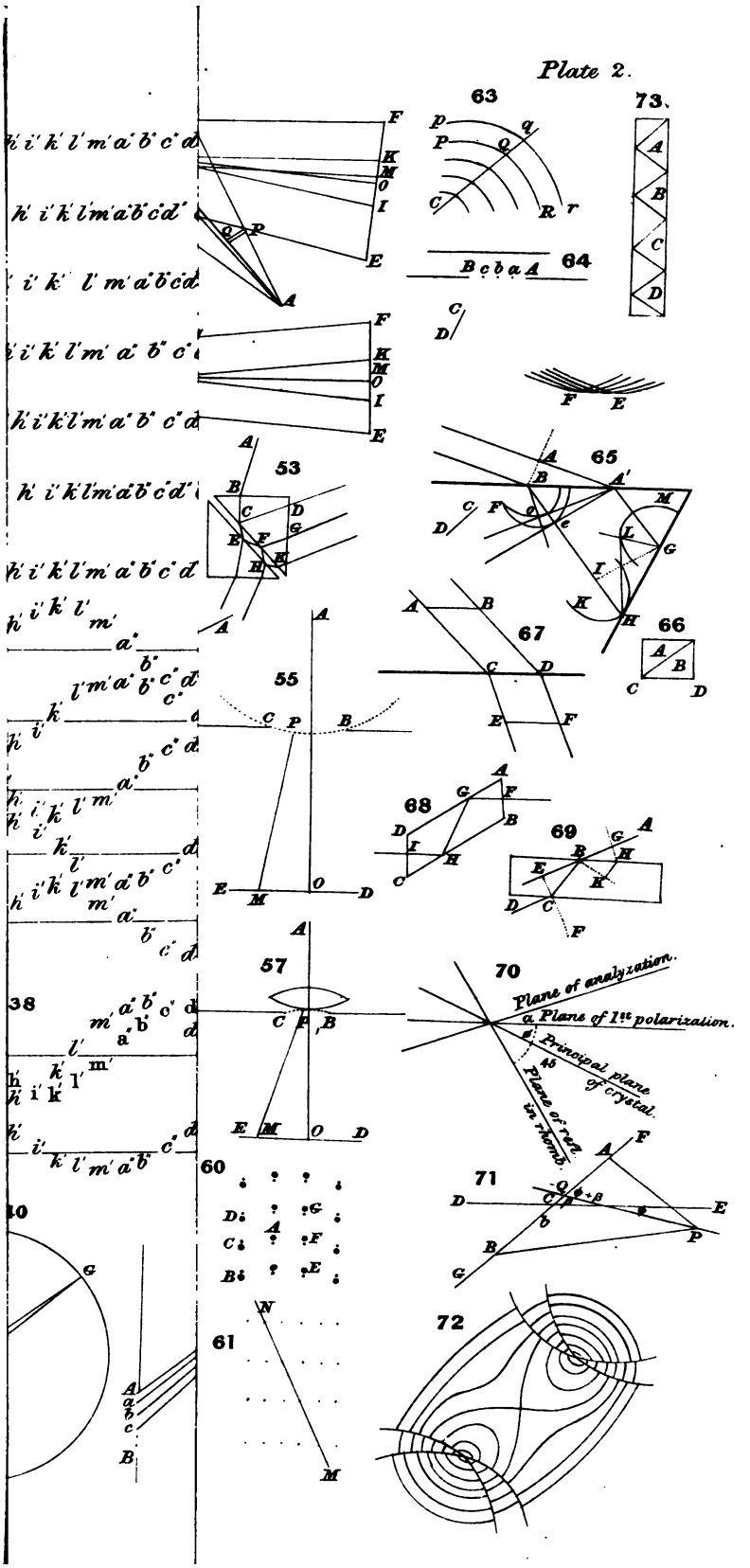


Plate 2.
63
73.
64
65
53
55
66
67
68
69
57
70
Plane of analyzation.
a. Plane of 1st polarization.
e. Principal plane of crystal.
45
Plane of red in rhomb.
71
72
60
61
38
40

LIST OF BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

MACMILLAN AND CO.

Cambridge,

AND 23, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN, LONDON.

ÆSCHYLI Eumenides.
The Greek Text with English Notes, and an Introduction, containing an Analysis of Müller's Dissertations. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

ADAMS.—The Twelve Foundations and other Poems.
By H. C. ADAMS, M.A., Author of "Sivan the Sleeper," &c. Royal 16mo. cloth, 5*s.*

AGNES HOPETOUN'S SCHOOLS AND HOLIDAYS.
The Experiences of a Little Girl. A Story for Girls. By Mrs. OLIPHANT, Author of "Margaret Maitland." Royal 16mo. 6*s.*

AIRY.—Mathematical Tracts on the Lunar and Planetary
Theories. The Figure of the Earth, Precession and Nutation, the Calculus of Variations, and the Undulatory Theory of Optics. By G. B. AIRY, M.A., Astronomer Royal. **Fourth Edition,** revised and improved. 8vo. cloth, 15*s.*

ARISTOTLE on the Vital Principle.
Translated, with Notes. By CHARLES COLLIER, M.D., F.R.S., Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians. Crown 8vo. cloth, 8*s.* 6*d.*

BAXTER.—The Volunteer Movement: its Progress and
Wants. With Tables of all the Volunteer Corps in Great Britain, and of their Expenses. By R. DUDLEY BAXTER. 8vo. 1*s.*

BEASLEY.—An Elementary Treatise on Plane Trigonometry:
with a numerous Collection of Examples. By R. D. BEASLEY, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, Head-Master of Grantham Grammar School. Crown 8vo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

BIRKS.—The Difficulties of Belief in connexion with the
Creation and the Fall. By THOMAS RAWSON BIRKS, M.A., Rector of Kelshall, and EXAMINING CHAPLAIN TO THE LORD BISHOP OF CARLISLE, Author of "The Life of the Rev. E. Bickersteth." Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

BLANCHE LISLE, and Other Poems.
Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

10.10.60.
2,000 dy.

BOOLE.—The Mathematical Analysis of Logic.
By GEORGE BOOLE, D.C.L. Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland. 8vo. sewed, 5*s.*

BOOLE.—A Treatise on Differential Equations.
Crown 8vo. cloth, 14*s.*

BRAVE WORDS for BRAVE SOLDIERS and SAILORS.
Tenth Thousand. 16mo. sewed, 2*d.*; or 10*s.* per 100.

BRETT.—Suggestions relative to the Restoration of Suffragan Bishops and Rural Deans. By THOMAS BRETT (A.D. 1711). Edited by JAMES FENDALL, M.A., Proctor in Convocation for the Clergy of Ely. Crown 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

BRIMLEY.—Essays, by the late GEORGE BRIMLEY, M.A.
Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., Tutor of Trinity College, and Public Orator in the University of Cambridge. With Portrait. **Second Edition.** Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

BROOK SMITH.—Arithmetic in Theory and Practice.
For Advanced Pupils. Part First. By J. BROOK SMITH, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

BUTLER (Archer).—Sermons, Doctrinal and Practical.
By the Rev. WILLIAM ARCHER BUTLER, M.A. late Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Dublin. Edited, with a Memoir of the Author's Life, by the Very Rev. THOMAS WOODWARD, M.A. Dean of Down. With Portrait. **Fifth Edition.** 8vo. cloth, 12*s.*

BUTLER (Archer).—A Second Series of Sermons.
Edited by J. A. JEREMIE, D.D. Regius Professor of Divinity in the University of Cambridge. **Third Edition.** 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

BUTLER (Archer).—History of Ancient Philosophy.
A Series of Lectures. Edited by WILLIAM HEPWORTH THOMPSON, M.A. Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 1*l.* 5*s.*

BUTLER (Archer).—Letters on Romanism, in Reply to Mr. NEWMAN's Essay on Development. Edited by the Very Rev. T. WOODWARD, Dean of Down. **Second Edition,** revised by the Ven. Archdeacon HARDWICK. 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

CAMBRIDGE.—A Cambridge Scrap Book: containing in a Pictorial Form a Report on the Manners, Customs, Humours, and Pastimes of the University of Cambridge. With nearly 300 Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 4to. half-bound, 7*s.* 6*d.*

CAMBRIDGE.—Cambridge Theological Papers. Comprising those given at the Voluntary Theological and Crosse Scholarship Examinations. Edited, with References and Indices, by A. P. MOOR, M.A. of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Sub-warden of St. Augustine's College, Canterbury. 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

CAMBRIDGE SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS and RIDERS, with SOLUTIONS:—

1848—1851.—Problems.	By N. M. FERRERS, M.A. and J. S. JACKSON, M.A. of Caius College. *15s. 6d.*
1848—1851.—Riders.	By F. J. JAMESON, M.A. of Caius College. *7s. 6d.*
1854—Problems and Riders.	By W. WALTON, M.A. of Trinity College, and C. F. MACKENZIE, M.A. of Caius College. *10s. 6d.*
1857—Problems and Riders.	By W. M. CAMPION, M.A. of Queen's College, and W. WALTON, M.A. of Trinity College. *8s. 6d.*
1860—Problems and Riders.	By H. W. WATSON, M.A. Trinity College, and E. T. ROUTH, M.A. St. Peter's College. *7s. 6d.*

CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH PRIZE POEMS, which have obtained the Chancellor's Gold Medal from the institution of the Prize to 1858. Crown 8vo. cloth, *7s. 6d.*

CAMBRIDGE.—Cambridge and Dublin Mathematical Journal. *The Complete Work*, in Nine Vols. 8vo. cloth, *7l. 4s.*

ONLY A FEW COPIES OF THE COMPLETE WORK REMAIN ON HAND.

CAMPBELL.—The Nature of the Atonement and its Relation to Remission of Sins and Eternal Life. By JOHN M'LEOD CAMPBELL, formerly Minister of Row. 8vo. cloth, *10s. 6d.*

CICERO.—Old Age and Friendship.
Translated into English. Two Parts. 12mo. sewed, *2s. 6d.* each.

COLENSO.—The Colony of Natal. A Journal of Ten Weeks' Tour of Visitation among the Colonists and Zulu Kafirs of Natal. By the Right Rev. JOHN WILLIAM COLENSO, D.D. Lord Bishop of Natal, with a Map and Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, *5s.*

COLENSO.—Village Sermons.
Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, *2s. 6d.*

COLENSO.—Four Sermons on Ordination, and on Missions. 18mo. sewed, *1s.*

COLENSO.—Companion to the Holy Communion, containing the Service, and Select Readings from the writings of Mr. MAURICE. Edited by the Lord Bishop of Natal. *Fine Edition*, rubricated and bound in morocco, antique style, *6s.*; or in cloth, *2s. 6d.* *Common Paper*, limp cloth, *1s.*

COOPER.—The Nature of Reprobation, and the Preacher's Liability to it. A Sermon. By J. E. COOPER, M.A., Rector of Forncett St. Mary, Norfolk, 8vo. *1s.*

COTTON.—Sermons and Addresses delivered in Marlborough College during Six Years by GEORGE EDWARD LYNCH COTTON, D.D., Lord Bishop of Calcutta, and Metropolitan of India. Crown 8vo. cloth, *10s. 6d.*

COTTON.—Sermons: chiefly connected with Public Events of 1854. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, *3s.*

COTTON.—Charge delivered at his Primary Visitation, September, 1859. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

CROSSE.—An Analysis of Paley's Evidences.
By C H. CROSSE, M.A. of Caius College, Cambridge. 12mo. boards, 3*s.* 6*d.*

DAVIES.—St. Paul and Modern Thought:
Remarks on some of the Views advanced in Professor Jowett's Commentary on St. Paul. By Rev. J. LL. DAVIES, M.A. Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Rector of Christ Church, Marylebone. 8vo. sewed, 2*s.* 6*d.*

DAYS OF OLD: Stories from Old English History of the
Druids, the Anglo-Saxons, and the Crusades. By the Author of "Ruth and her Friends." Imp. 16mo. cloth, 5*s.*

DEMOSTHENES DE CORONA.
The Greek Text with English Notes. By B. DRAKE, M.A. late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. **Second Edition,** to which is prefixed AESCHINES AGAINST CTESIPHON, with English Notes. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

DEMOSTHENES.—Demosthenes on the Crown.
Translated by J. P. NORRIS, M.A. Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools. Crown 8vo. cloth, 3*s.*

DREW.—A Geometrical Treatise on Conic Sections, with
Copious Examples from the Cambridge Senate House Papers. By W. H. DREW, M.A. of St. John's College, Cambridge, Second Master of Blackheath Proprietary School. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

FARRAR.—Lyrics of Life.
By FREDERIC W. FARRAR, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Author of "Eric," &c. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

FISHER.—The Goth and the Saracen: a Comparison
between the Historical Effect produced upon the Condition of Mankind by the Mahometan Conquests and those of the Northern Barbarians. By E. H. FISHER, B.A. Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

FORD.—Steps to the Sanctuary; or, the Order for Morning
Prayer, set forth and explained in Verse. By JAMES FORD, M.A., Prebendary of Exeter Cathedral. Crown 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

FROST.—The First Three Sections of Newton's Principia.
With Notes and Problems in illustration of the subject. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus College. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

GILL.—The Anniversaries. Poems in Commemoration of
Great Men and Great Events. By T. H. GILL. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

GODFRAY.—An Elementary Treatise on the Lunar Theory.
With a brief Sketch of the History of the Problem up to the time of Newton. By HUGH GODFRAY, M.A. of St. John's College, Esquire Bedell in the University of Cambridge. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.* 6*d.*

GRANT.—Plane Astronomy.
Including Explanations of Celestial Phenomena, and Descriptions of Astronomical Instruments. By A. R. GRANT, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools, late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. boards, 6*s.*

HAMILTON.—On Truth and Error: Thoughts, in Prose and Verse, on the Principles of Truth, and the Causes and Effects of Error. By JOHN HAMILTON, Esq. (of St. Ernan's), M.A. St. John's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, *5s.*

HARE.—Charges delivered during the Years 1840 to 1854. With Notes on the Principal Events affecting the Church during that period. By JULIUS CHARLES HARE, M.A. sometime Archdeacon of Lewes, and Chaplain in Ordinary to the Queen. With an Introduction, explanatory of his position in the Church with reference to the parties which divide it, 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, *1l. 11s. 6d.*

HARE.—Miscellaneous Pamphlets on some of the Leading Questions agitated in the Church during the Years 1845—51. 8vo. cloth, *12s.*

HARE.—The Victory of Faith.
Second Edition. 8vo. cloth, *5s.*

HARE.—The Mission of the Comforter.
Second Edition. With Notes. 8vo. cloth, *12s.*

HARE.—Vindication of Luther from his English Assailants.
Second Edition. 8vo. cloth, *7s.*

HARE.—Parish Sermons.
Second Series. 8vo. cloth, *12s.*

HARE.—Sermons Preacht on Particular Occasions.
8vo. cloth, *12s.*

*** The two following Books are included in the Three Volumes of Charges, and may still be had separately.

HARE.—The Contest with Rome.
With Notes, especially in answer to Dr. Newman's Lectures on Present Position of Catholics. **Second Edition.** 8vo. cloth, *10s. 6d.*

HARE.—Charges delivered in the Years 1843, 1845, 1846. Never before published. With an Introduction, explanatory of his position in the Church with reference to the parties which divide it. *6s. 6d.*

HARE.—Portions of the Psalms in English Verse.
Selected for Public Worship. 18mo. cloth, *2s. 6d.*

HARE.—Two Sermons preached in Herstmonceux Church, on Septuagesima Sunday, 1855, being the Sunday after the Funeral of the Venerable Archdeacon Hare. By the Rev. H. VENN ELLIOTT, Perpetual Curate of St. Mary's, Brighton, late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the Rev. J. N. SIMPKINSON, Rector of Brington, Northampton, formerly Curate of Herstmonceux. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

HARDWICK.—Christ and other Masters.
A Historical Inquiry into some of the chief Parallelisms and Contrasts between Christianity and the Religious Systems of the Ancient World. With special reference to prevailing Difficulties and Objections. By the Ven. ARCHDEACON HARDWICK. Part I. INTRODUCTION. PART II. THE RELIGIONS OF INDIA. Part III. THE RELIGIONS OF CHINA, AMERICA, AND OCEANICA. Part IV. RELIGIONS OF EGYPT AND MEDO-PERSIA. 8vo. cloth. *7s. 6d.* each part.

HARDWICK.—A History of the Christian Church, during the Middle Ages and the Reformation. (A.D. 590–1600.)
By Archdeacon Hardwick. Two vols. crown 8vo. cloth, 21*s.*

Vol. I. History from Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. With Maps.

Vol. II. History of the Reformation of the Church.

Each volume may be had separately. Price 10*s.* 6*d.*

*** These Volumes form part of the Series of Theological Manuals.

HARDWICK.—Twenty Sermons for Town Congregations.
Crown 8vo. cloth, 6*s.* 6*d.*

HAYNES.—Outlines of Equity. By FREEMAN OLIVER HAYNES, Barrister-at-Law, late Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.*

HEDDERWICK.—Lays of Middle Age, and other Poems.
By JAMES HEDDERWICK. Fcp. 8vo. 5*s.*

HEMMING.—An Elementary Treatise on the Differential and Integral Calculus. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A. Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. **Second Edition.** 8vo. cloth, 9*s.*

HERVEY.—The Genealogies of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, as contained in the Gospels of St. Matthew and St. Luke, reconciled with each other and with the Genealogy of the House of David, from Adam to the close of the Canon of the Old Testament, and shown to be in harmony with the true Chronology of the Times. By Lord ARTHUR HERVEY, M.A. Rector of Ickworth. 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

HERVEY.—The Inspiration of Holy Scripture.
Five Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge. 8vo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

HOWARD.—The Pentateuch; or, the Five Books of Moses.
Translated into English from the Version of the LXX. With Notes on its Omissions and Insertions, and also on the Passages in which it differs from the Authorised Version. By the Hon. HENRY HOWARD, D.D. Dean f Lichfield. Crown 8vo. cloth. GENESIS, 1 vol. 8*s.* 6*d.*; EXODUS AND LEVITICUS, 1 vol. 10*s.* 6*d.*; NUMBERS AND DEUTERONOMY, 1 vol. 10*s.* 6*d.*

HUMPHRY.—The Human Skeleton (including the Joints).
By GEORGE MURRAY HUMPHRY, M.D. F.R.S., Surgeon to Addenbrooke's Hospital, Lecturer on Surgery and Anatomy in the Cambridge University Medical School. With Two Hundred and Sixty Illustrations drawn from Nature. Medium 8vo. cloth, 1*l.* 8*s.*

HUMPHRY.—On the Coagulation of the Blood in the Venous System during Life. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

INGLEBY.—Outlines of Theoretical Logic.
Founded on the New Analytic of SIR WILLIAM HAMILTON. Designed for Text-book in Schools and Colleges. By C. MANSFIELD INGLEBY, M.A., of Trinity College, Cambridge. In fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

JAMESON.—Analogy between the Miracles and Doctrines of Scripture. By F. J. JAMESON, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s*.

JAMESON.—Brotherly Counsels to Students. Four Sermons preached in the Chapel of St. Catharine's College, Cambridge. By F. J. JAMESON, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. limp cloth, red edges, 1*s*. 6*d*.

JUVENAL.—Juvenal, for Schools.
With English Notes. By J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A. Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s*. 6*d*.

KINGSLEY.—Two Years Ago.
By CHARLES KINGSLEY, F.S.A. Rector of Eversley, and Chaplain in Ordinary to the Queen. **Second Edition.** 3 vols. crown 8vo. cloth, 1*l*. 11*s*. 6*d*.

KINGSLEY.—"Westward Ho!" or, the Voyages and Adventures of Sir Amyas Leigh, Knight of Burrough, in the County of Devon, in the Reign of Her Most Glorious Majesty Queen Elizabeth. **New and Cheaper Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 6*s*.

KINGSLEY.—Glaucus; or, the Wonders of the Shore.
New and Illustrated Edition, corrected and enlarged. Containing beautifully Coloured Illustrations of the Objects mentioned in the Work. Elegantly bound in cloth, with gilt leaves. 7*s*. 6*d*.

KINGSLEY.—The Heroes: or, Greek Fairy Tales for my Children. With Eight Illustrations, Engraved by WHYMPER. **New Edition,** printed on toned paper, and elegantly bound in cloth, with gilt leaves, Imp. 16mo. 5*s*.

KINGSLEY.—Alexandria and Her Schools: being Four Lectures delivered at the Philosophical Institution, Edinburgh. With a Preface Crown 8vo. cloth, 5*s*.

KINGSLEY.—Phaethon; or Loose Thoughts for Loose Thinkers. **Third Edition.** Crown 8vo. boards, 2*s*.

KINGSLEY.—The Recollections of Geoffry Hamlyn.
By HENRY KINGSLEY, Esq. 3 Vols. 1*l*. 11*s*. 6*d*.

LATHAM.—The Construction of Wrought-Iron Bridges, embracing the Practical Application of the Principles of Mechanics to Wrought-Iron Girder Work. By J. H. LATHAM, Esq. Civil Engineer. 8vo. cloth. With numerous detail Plates. 15*s*.

LECTURES TO LADIES ON PRACTICAL SUBJECTS.
Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s*. 6*d*. By Reverends F. D. MAURICE, CHARLES KINGSLEY, J. LL. DAVIES, ARCHDEACON ALLEN, DEAN TRENCH, PROFESSOR BREWER, DR. GEORGE JOHNSON, DR. SIEVEKING, DR. CHAMBERS, F. J. STEPHEN, Esq., and TOM TAYLOR, Esq.

LITTLE ESTELLA, and other TALES FOR THE YOUNG. With Frontispiece. Royal 16mo. extra cloth, gilt leaves, 5*s*.

LUDLOW.—British India; its Races, and its History, down to 1857. By JOHN MALCOLM LUDLOW, Barrister-at-Law. 2 vols. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 9*s*.

LUSHINGTON.—La Nation Boutiquière: and other Poems, chiefly Political. With a Preface. By the late HENRY LUSHINGTON, Chief Secretary to the Government of Malta. **Points of War.** By FRANKLIN LUSHINGTON, Judge in the Supreme Courts of the Ionian Isles. In 1 vol. fcap 8vo. cloth, 3*s*.

LUSHINGTON.—The Italian War 1848-9, and the Last Italian Poet. By the late HENRY LUSHINGTON, Chief Secretary to the Government of Malta. With a Biographical Preface by G. S. VENABLES. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6*s*. 6*d*.

MACKENZIE.—The Christian Clergy of the first Ten Centuries, and their Influence on European Civilization. By HENRY MACKENZIE, B.A. Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6*s*. 6*d*.

MANSFIELD.—Paraguay, Brazil, and the Plate. With a Map, and numerous Woodcuts. By CHARLES MANSFIELD, M.A. of Clare College, Cambridge. With a Sketch of his Life. By the Rev. CHARLES KINGSLEY. Crown 8vo. cloth, 12*s*. 6*d*.

M'COY.—Contributions to British Palæontology; or, First Descriptions of several hundred Fossil Radiata, Articulata, Mollusca, and Pisces, from the Tertiary, Cretaceous, Oolitic, and Palæozoic Strata of Great Britain. With numerous Woodcuts. By FREDERICK M'COY, F.G.S., Professor of Natural History in the University of Melbourne. 8vo. cloth, 9*s*.

MASSON.—Essays, Biographical and Critical; chiefly on the English Poets. By DAVID MASSON, M.A. Professor of English Literature in University College, London. 8vo. cloth, 12*s*. 6*d*.

MASSON.—British Novelists and their Styles; being a Critical Sketch of the History of British Prose Fiction. By DAVID MASSON, M.A. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s*. 6*d*.

MASSON.—Life of John Milton, narrated in Connexion with the Political, Ecclesiastical, and Literary History of his Time. Vol. I. with Portraits. 18*s*.

MAURICE.—Expository Works on the Holy Scriptures.
By FREDERICK DENISON MAURICE, M.A., Chaplain of Lincoln's Inn.

I.—**The Patriarchs and Lawgivers of the Old Testament.** **Second Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 6*s*.

This volume contains Discourses on the Pentateuch, Joshua, Judges, and the beginning of the First Book of Samuel.

MAURICE.—Expository Works on the Holy Scriptures.
By FREDERICK DENISON MAURICE, M.A., Chaplain of Lincoln's Inn.

II.—The Prophets and Kings of the Old Testament.
Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

This volume contains Discourses on Samuel I. and II., Kings I. and II., Amos, Joel, Hosea, Isaiah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel.

III.—The Gospel of St. John; a Series of Discourses.
Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

IV.—The Epistles of St. John; a Series of Lectures on Christian Ethics. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—Expository Works on the Prayer-Book.

I.—The Ordinary Services.
Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.* 6*d.*

II.—The Church a Family. Twelve Sermons on the Occasional Services. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—What is Revelation? A Series of Sermons on the Epiphany; to which are added Letters to a Theological Student on the Bampton Lectures of Mr. MANSEL. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—Sequel to the Inquiry, "What is Revelation?"
Letters in Reply to Mr. Mansel's Examination of "Strictures on the Bampton Lectures." Crown 8vo. cloth, 6*s.*

MAURICE.—Lectures on Ecclesiastical History.
8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—Theological Essays.
Second Edition, with a new Preface and other additions. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—The Doctrine of Sacrifice deduced from the Scriptures. With a Dedicatory Letter to the Young Men's Christian Association. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—The Religions of the World, and their Relations to Christianity. **Third Edition.** Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

MAURICE.—On the Lord's Prayer.
Third Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—On the Sabbath Day: the Character of the Warrior; and on the Interpretation of History. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—Learning and Working.—Six Lectures on the Foundation of Colleges for Working Men, delivered in Willis's Rooms, London, in June and July, 1854. Crown 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

MAURICE.—The Indian Crisis. Five Sermons.
Crown 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—Law's Remarks on the Fable of the Bees.
Edited, with an Introduction of Eighty Pages, by FREDERICK DENISON MAURICE, M.A. Chaplain of Lincoln's Inn. Fcp. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

MAURICE.—Miscellaneous Pamphlets:—

I.—Eternal Life and Eternal Death.
Crown 8vo. sewed, 1*s.* 6*d.*

II.—Death and Life. A Sermon. In Memoriam C. B. M.
8vo. sewed, 1*s.*

III.—Plan of a Female College for the Help of the Rich and of the Poor. 8vo. 6*d.*

IV.—Administrative Reform.
Crown 8vo. 3*d.*

V.—The Word "Eternal," and the Punishment of the Wicked. Fifth Thousand. 8vo. 1*s.*

VI.—The Name "Protestant:" and the English Bishopric at Jerusalem. Second Edition. 8vo. 3*s.*

VII.—Thoughts on the Oxford Election of 1847.
8vo. 1*s.*

VIII.—The Case of Queen's College, London.
8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

IX.—The Worship of the Church a Witness for the Redemption of the World. 8vo. sewed, 1*s.*

MAYOR.—Cambridge in the Seventeenth Century.
2 vols. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 13*s.*
Vol. I. Lives of Nicholas Ferrar.
Vol. II. Autobiography of Matthew Robinson.
By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A. Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

*** The Autobiography of Matthew Robinson may be had separately, price 5*s.* 6*d.*

MAYOR.—Early Statutes of St. John's College, Cambridge.
Now first edited with Notes. Royal 8vo. 18*s.*

*** The First Part is now ready for delivery.

MAXWELL.—The Stability of the Motion of Saturn's Rings.
By J. C. MAXWELL, M.A. Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Aberdeen. 4to. sewed, 6*s.*

MOORE.—A New Proof of the Method of Algebra commonly called "Greatest Common Measure." By B. T. MOORE, B.A., Fellow of Pembroke College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6*d.*

MORGAN.—A Collection of Mathematical Problems and Examples. Arranged in the Different Subjects progressively, with Answers to all the Questions. By H. A. MORGAN, M.A., Fellow of Jesus College. Crown 8vo. cloth, *6s. 6d.*

MORSE.—Working for God, and other Practical Sermons. By FRANCIS MORSE, M.A. Incumbent of St. John's, Ladywood, Birmingham. **Second Edition.** Fcap. 8vo. cloth, *5s.*

NAPIER.—Lord Bacon and Sir Walter Raleigh. Critical and Biographical Essays. By MACVEY NAPIER, late Editor of the *Edinburgh Review* and of the *Encyclopædia Britannica*. Post 8vo. cloth, *7s. 6d.*

NORWAY AND SWEDEN.—A Long Vacation Ramble in 1856. By X and Y. Crown 8vo. cloth, *6s. 6d.*

OCCASIONAL PAPERS on UNIVERSITY and SCHOOL MATTERS; containing an Account of all recent University Subjects and Changes. Three Parts are now ready, price 1*s.* each.

PARKINSON.—A Treatise on Elementary Mechanics. For the Use of the Junior Classes at the University, and the Higher Classes in Schools. With a Collection of Examples. By S. PARKINSON, B.D. Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, *9s. 6d.*

PARKINSON.—A Treatise on Optics. Crown 8vo. cloth, *10s. 6d.*

PARMINTER.—Materials for a Grammar of the Modern English Language. Designed as a Text-book of Classical Grammar for the use of Training Colleges, and the Higher Classes of English Schools. By GEORGE HENRY PARMINTER, of Trinity College, Cambridge; Rector of the United Parishes of SS. John and George, Exeter. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, *3s. 6d.*

PEROWNE.—"Al-Adjrumiieh." An Elementary Arabic Grammar. By J. J. S. PEROWNE, B.D. Lecturer in Divinity in King's College, London, and Examining Chaplain to the Lord Bishop of Norwich. 8vo. cloth, *5s.*

PHEAR.—Elementary Hydrostatics. By J. B. Phear, M.A. Fellow of Clare College, Cambridge. **Second Edition.** Accompanied by numerous Examples, with the Solutions. Crown 8vo. cloth, *5s. 6d.*

PHILOLOGY.—The Journal of Sacred and Classical Philology. Vols. I to IV. 8vo. cloth, *12s. 6d.* each.

PLAIN RULES ON REGISTRATION OF BIRTHS AND DEATHS. Crown 8vo. sewed, *1d.*; *9d.* per dozen; *5s.* per 100.

PLATO.—The Republic of Plato. Translated into English, with Notes. By Two Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge, (J. Ll. Davies M.A., and D. J. Vaughan, M.A.) **Second Edition.** 8vo. cloth, *10s. 6d.*

PRAYERS FOR WORKING MEN OF ALL RANKS:
Earnestly designed for Family Devotion and Private Meditation and Prayer Fcap. 8vo. cloth, red leaves, 2*s.* 6*d.* Common Edition, 1*s.* 9*d.*

PRINCIPLES of ETHICS according to the NEW TESTAMENT. Crown 8vo. sewed, 2*s.*

PROCTER.—A History of the Book of Common Prayer: with a Rationale of its Offices. By FRANCIS PROCTER, M.A., Vicar of Witton, Norfolk, and late Fellow of St. Catherine's College. **Fourth Edition,** revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*
*** This forms part of the Series of Theological Manuals.

PUCKLE.—An Elementary Treatise on Conic Sections and Algebraic Geometry. With a numerous collection of Easy Examples progressively arranged, especially designed for the use of Schools and Beginners. By G. HALE PUCKLE, M.A., Principal of Windermere College. **Second Edition,** enlarged and improved. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

RAMSAY.—The Catechiser's Manual; or, the Church Cate-chism illustrated and explained, for the use of Clergymen, Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. of Trinity College, Cambridge. 18mo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

REICHEL.—The Lord's Prayer and other Sermons.
By C. P. REICHEL, B.D., Professor of Latin in the Queen's University; Chaplain to his Excellency the Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland; and late Donnellan Lecturer in the University of Dublin. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

ROBINSON.—Missions urged upon the State, on Grounds both of Duty and Policy. By C. K. ROBINSON, M.A. Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. Catherine's College. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3*s.*

ROWSELL.—THE ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES AND THE ENGLISH POOR. Sermons Preached before the University of Cambridge. By T. J. ROWSELL, M.A. Incumbent of St Peter's, Stepney. Fcap. 8vo. cloth limp, red leaves, 2*s.*

RUTH AND HER FRIENDS. A Story for Girls.
With a Frontispiece. **Third Edition.** Royal 16mo. extra cloth, gilt leaves, 5*s.*

SALLUST.—Sallust for Schools.
With English Notes. **Second Edition.** By CHARLES MERIVALE, B.D.; late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge, &c., Author of the "History of Rome," &c. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

"THE JUGURTHA" AND "THE CATILINA" MAY BE HAD SEPARATELY, price 2*s.* 6*d.* EACH IN CLOTH.

SANDARS.—BY THE SEA, AND OTHER POEMS.
By EDMUND SANDARS, of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

SCOURING OF THE WHITE HORSE; or, The Long Vacation Ramble of a London Clerk. By the Author of "Tom Brown's School Days." Illustrated by DOYLE. **Eighth Thousand.** Imp. 16mo. cloth, elegant, 8*s.* 6*d.*

SELWYN.—The Work of Christ in the World.
Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge. By the Right Rev. GEORGE AUGUSTUS SELWYN, D.D. Bishop of New Zealand, formerly Fellow of St. John's College. **Third Edition.** Crown 8vo. 2*s*.

SELWYN.—A Verbal Analysis of the Holy Bible.
Intended to facilitate the translation of the Holy Scriptures into Foreign Languages. Compiled for the use of the Melanesian Mission. Small folio, cloth, 14*s*.

SIMPSON.—An Epitome of the History of the Christian Church during the first Three Centuries and during the Reformation. With Examination Papers. By WILLIAM SIMPSON, M.A. **Third Edition.** Fcp. 8vo. cloth, 5*s*.

SMITH.—City Poems.
By ALEXANDER SMITH, Author of "A Life Drama," and other Poems. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. 5*s*.

SMITH.—Arithmetic and Algebra, in their Principles and Application: with numerous systematically arranged Examples, taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers. By BARNARD SMITH, M.A., Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. **Seventh Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s*. 6*d*.

SMITH.—Arithmetic for the use of Schools.
New Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s*. 6*d*.

SMITH.—A Key to the Arithmetic for Schools.
Crown 8vo. cloth, 8*s*. 6*d*.

SNOWBALL.—The Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry. By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. **Ninth Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s*. 6*d*.

SNOWBALL.—Introduction to the Elements of Plane Trigo- nometry for the use of Schools. **Second Edition.** 8vo. sewed, 5*s*.

SNOWBALL.—The Cambridge Course of Elementary Mechanics and Hydrostatics. Adapted for the use of Colleges and Schools. With numerous Examples and Problems. **Fourth Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 5*s*.

SWAINSON.—A Handbook to Butler's Analogy.
By C. A. SWAINSON, M.A. Principal of the Theological College, and Prebendary of Chichester. Crown 8vo. sewed, 2*s*.

SWAINSON.—The Creeds of the Church in their Relations to Holy Scripture and the Conscience of the Christian. 8vo. cloth, 9*s*.

SWAINSON.—THE AUTHORITY OF THE NEW TESTA- MENT; The Conviction of Righteousness, and other Lectures, delivered before the University of Cambridge. 8vo. cloth, 12*s*.

TAIT and STEELE.—A Treatise on Dynamics, with nume- rous Examples. By P. G. TAIT, Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College, Belfast, and W. J. STEELE, late Fellow of St. Peter's College. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s*. 6*d*.

TAYLOR.—The Restoration of Belief.
By ISAAC TAYLOR, Esq., Author of "The Natural History of Enthusiasm." Crown 8vo. cloth, 8*s*. 6*d*.

THEOLOGICAL Manuals.

CHURCH HISTORY: DURING THE MIDDLE AGES AND THE REFORMATION (A.D. 590—1600). By ARCHDEACON HARDWICK. With Four Maps, 2 vols. Crown 8vo. cloth, price 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

THE COMMON PRAYER: ITS HISTORY AND RATIONALE. By FRANCIS PROCTER. **Fourth Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

HISTORY OF THE CANON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. By B. F. WESTCOTT. Crown 8vo. cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*

*** Others are in progress, and will be announced in due time.

THRING.—A Construing Book.

Compiled by the Rev. EDWARD THRING, M.A. Head Master of Uppingham Grammar School, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

THRING.—The Elements of Grammar taught in English.

Third Edition. 18mo. bound in cloth, 2*s.*

THRING.—The Child's Grammar.

Being the substance of the above, with Examples for Practice. Adapted for Junior Classes. **A New Edition.** 18mo. limp cloth, 1*s.*

THRING.—Sermons delivered at Uppingham School.

Crown 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

THRING.—School Songs.

A Collection of Songs for Schools. With the Music arranged for four Voices. Edited by EDWARD THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School, and H. RICCIUS. Small folio, 7*s.* 6*d.*

THRUPP.—Antient Jerusalem: a New Investigation into the History, Topography, and Plan of the City, Environs, and Temple. Designed principally to illustrate the records and prophecies of Scripture. With Map and Plans. By JOSEPH FRANCIS THRUPP, M.A. Vicar of Barrington, Cambridge, late Fellow of Trinity College. 8vo. cloth, 15*s.*

THUCYDIDES, BOOK VI. With English Notes, and a Map.

By PERCIVAL FROST, Jun. M.A. late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

TODHUNTER.—A Treatise on the Differential Calculus.

With numerous Examples. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. **Third Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

TODHUNTER.—A Treatise on the Integral Calculus.

With numerous Examples. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

TODHUNTER.—A Treatise on Analytical Statics, with numerous Examples. **Second Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

TODHUNTER.—A Treatise on Conic Sections, with numerous Examples. **Second Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 10*s.* 6*d.*

TODHUNTER.—Algebra for the use of Colleges and Schools.

Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.* **Second Edition.**

TODHUNTER.—Plane Trigonometry for Colleges and Schools. Crown 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

TODHUNTER.—A Treatise on Spherical Trigonometry for the Use of Colleges and Schools. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

TODHUNTER.—Examples of Analytical Geometry of Three Dimensions. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s.*

TOM BROWN'S SCHOOL DAYS.
By AN OLD BOY. **Seventh Edition.** Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

TRENCH.—Synonyms of the New Testament.
By The Very Rev. RICHARD CHENEVIX TRENCH, D.D. Dean of Westminster. **Fourth Edition.** Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

TRENCH.—Hulsean Lectures for 1845—46.
CONTENTS. 1.—The Fitness of Holy Scripture for unfolding the Spiritual Life of Man. 2.—Christ the Desire of all Nations; or the Unconscious Prophecies of Heathendom. **Fourth Edition.** Foolscap 8vo. cloth, 5*s.*

TRENCH.—Sermons Preached before the University of Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

VAUGHAN.—Notes for Lectures on Confirmation. With suitable Prayers. By C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D., Head Master of Harrow School. **Third Edition.** Limp cloth, red edges, 1*s.* 6*d.*

VAUGHAN.—St. Paul's Epistle to the Romans.
The Greek Text, with English Notes. By C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D. 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

VAUGHAN.—MEMORIALS OF HARROW SUNDAYS.
A Selection of Sermons preached in Harrow School Chapel. By C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D. With a View of the Interior of the Chapel. Crown 8vo. cloth, red leaves, 10*s.* 6*d.*

VAUGHAN.—Sermons preached in St. John's Church, Leicester, during the years 1855 and 1856. By DAVID J. VAUGHAN, M.A. Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Incumbent of St. Mark's, Whitechapel. Crown 8vo. cloth, 5*s.* 6*d.*

VAUGHAN.—Three Sermons on The Atonement. With a Preface. By D. J. Vaughan, M.A. Limp cloth, red edges, 1*s.* 6*d.*

WAGNER.—Memoir of the Rev. George Wagner, late of St. Stephen's, Brighton. By J. N. SIMPKINSON, M.A. Rector of Brington, Northampton. **Second Edition.** Crown 8vo. cloth, 9*s.*

WATSON AND ROUTH.—CAMBRIDGE SENATE HOUSE PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. For the Year 1860. With Solutions by H. W. WATSON, M.A. and E. J. ROUTH, M.A. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

WESTCOTT.—History of the Canon of the New Testament during the First Four Centuries. By BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, M.A., Assistant Master of Harrow School; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 12*s.* 6*d.*
*** This forms part of the Series of Theological Manuals.

WESTCOTT. — Characteristics of the Gospel Miracles. Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge. **With Notes.** By B. F. WESTCOTT, M.A., Author of "History of the New Testament Canon." Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

WHEWELL.—THE PLATONIC DIALOGUES FOR ENGLISH READERS. By W. WHEWELL, D D. Vol. I. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7*s.* 6*d.*

WHITMORE.—Gilbert Marlowe and Other Poems.
With a Preface by the Author of "Tom Brown's Schooldays." Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

WILSON.—The Five Gateways of Knowledge.
By GEORGE WILSON, M.D., F.R.S.E., Regius Professor of Technology in the University of Edinburgh. **Second Edition.** Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.* or in Paper Covers, 1*s.*

WILSON.—The Progress of the Telegraph.
Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.*

WILSON.—A Treatise on Dynamics.
By W. P. WILSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's, Cambridge, and Professor of Mathematics in the University of Melbourne. 8vo. bds. 9*s.* 6*d.*

WOLFE.—ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY ORIGINAL PSALM AND HYMN TUNES. For Four Voices. By ARTHUR WOLFE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge. Oblong royal 8vo. extra cloth, gilt leaves, 10*s.* 6*d.*

WORSHIP OF GOD AND FELLOWSHIP AMONG MEN.
A Series of Sermons on Public Worship. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*
By F. D. MAURICE, M.A. T. J. ROWSELL, M.A. J. LL. DAVIES, M.A. and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A.

WRIGHT.—The Iliad of Homer.
Translated into English Verse by J. C. WRIGHT, M.A. Translator of Dante. Crown 8vo. Books I.—VI. 5*s.*

WRIGHT.—Hellenica; or, a History of Greece in Greek,
as related by Diodorus and Thucydides, being a First Greek Reading Book, with Explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. By J. WRIGHT, M.A., of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Head-Master of Sutton Coldfield Grammar School. **Second Edition,** WITH A VOCABULARY. 12mo. cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*

WRIGHT.—David, King of Israel.
Readings for the Young. With Six Illustrations after SCHNORR. Royal 16mo. extra cloth, gilt leaves, 5*s.*

WRIGHT.—A Help to Latin Grammar;
or, the Form and Use of Words in Latin. With Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

WRIGHT.—The Seven Kings of Rome:
An easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of difficult passages, being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3*s.*

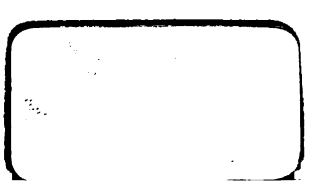
WRIGHT.—A Vocabulary and Exercises on the "Seven Kings of Rome." Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.*

*** The Vocabulary and Exercises may also be had bound up with "The Seven Kings of Rome." Price 5*s.* cloth.

ONE SHILLING, MONTHLY.

MACMILLAN'S MAGAZINE.

EDITED BY DAVID MASSON.

Volume I. is now ready, handsomely bound in cloth, price 7*s.* 6*d.*

R. CLAY, PRINTER, BREAD STREET HILL.